Bit by Bit
كتب فى اللغة الإنجليزية

Hello!
Beyond Words

SECOND TERM

الصف الأول الإعدادي
الفصل الدراسى الثاني



1st PREP

2025

دار غـزة
للطبع والنشر والتوزيع
ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Contents

1st. Prep.

Hello! Beyond Words

Module 3 — Living in the present

Module 4 — Towards a great future

Booklet (free with the book)

A Listening 6 Marks

1.a Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (3 marks)

Students are asked to listen to a text/a dialog from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words and answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. Topics should be related to the Set Books. **(One mark each)**

1.b Listen and complete: (3 marks)

Students are asked to listen to the same text again and complete **THREE (3)** sentences with **ONE (1)** word each. **(One mark each)**

B Reading 9 Marks

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (1 mark)

TWO (2) multiple-choice vocabulary questions based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given.

(Half a mark each)

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2 marks)

An unseen text from **SIXTY (60)** to **SEVENTY (70)** words with **FOUR (4)** deletions is provided. **FIVE (5)** words related to vocabulary are also given in a box. Students are asked to complete each deletion in the text with ONE of the **FIVE (5)** words given in the box. The first sentence should be written in full. **(Half a mark each)**

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions: (6 marks)

An unseen text of from **ONE HUNDRED (100)** to **ONE HUNDRED** and **TWENTY (120)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a blog, an email or social medial posts....etc. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be related to what students have studied before. Students are asked to answer **TWO (2)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each and **FOUR (4)** open-ended questions.

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills:

- **Giving the main idea** **(1 question)**
- **Extracting information** **(2 questions)**
- **Understanding reference** **(1 question)**
- **Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context** **(1 question)**
- **Critical thinking skill** **(1 question)**

(One mark each)

C Writing 15 Marks

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (1 mark)

TWO (2) structure multiple-choice questions based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(Half a mark each)**

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: (4 marks)

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs...etc. related to what students have studied. **(One mark each)**

7 Complete the dialog: (4 marks)

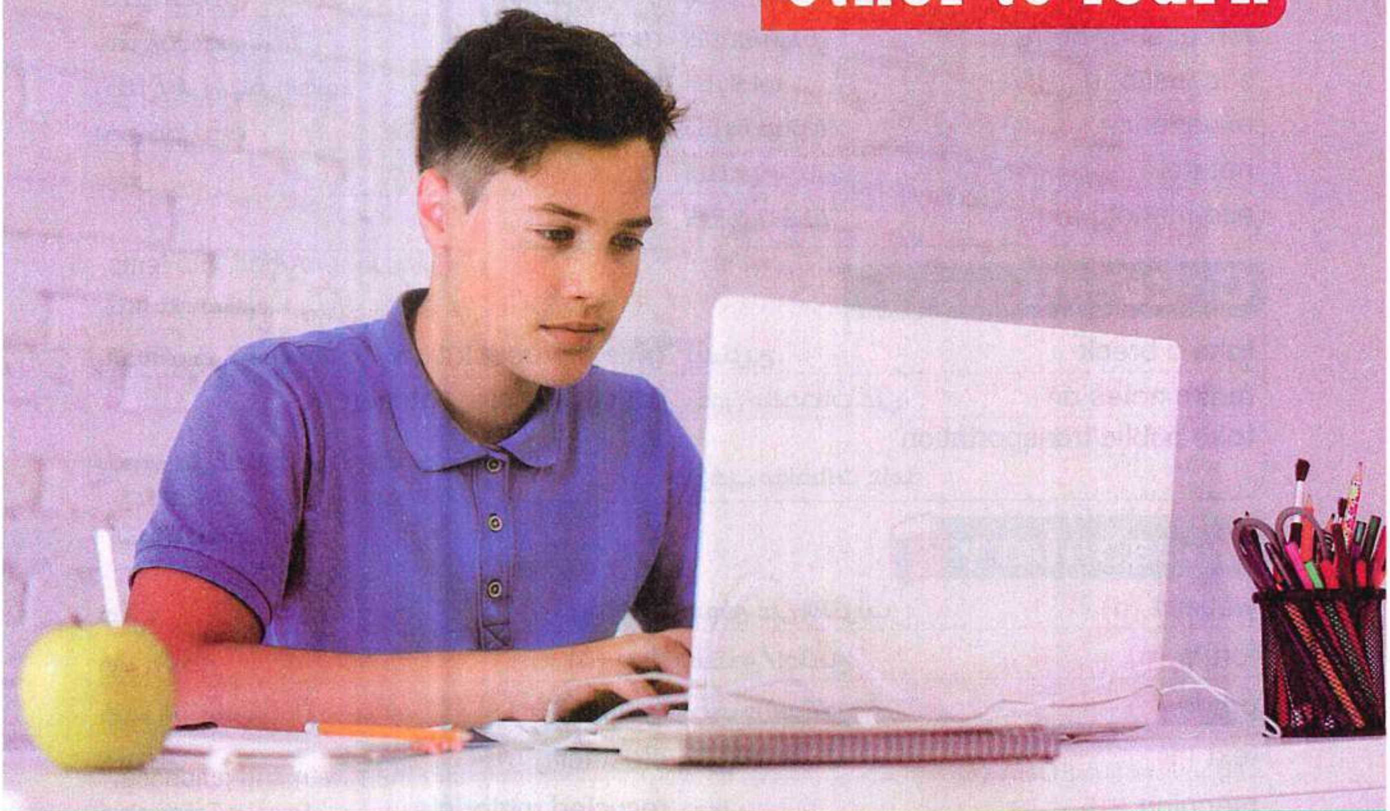
A dialog with **FOUR (4)** deletions (**2** responses & **2** stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the **FOUR (4)** deletions with **ONE** word without providing them with any guidance. The situation in which the dialog takes place is described briefly but clearly. The first sentence is given in full. **(One mark each)**

8 Write a paragraph / social media post / short notes / an informal email of about EIGHTY (80) words on ...: (6 marks)

Students are asked to write a paragraph / social media post / short notes / an informal email from **SIXTY (60) to EIGHTY (80)** words on a specific topic related to what students have studied.

(Two marks for relevance of ideas – One mark for vocabulary – One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation – One mark for grammar)

Unit 7 Helping each other to learn



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- Forum posts about learning in an eco-friendly way, and facts and opinions about how the brain works.

Writing:

- A reflective journal entry.

Listening:

- A conversation about learning something new.

Speaking:

- Talking about learning.

Language:

- Wh- object questions in the present and past; defining relative clauses.

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

tricky (adj)	مخادع/صعب/محير	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
sweet strawberry	حلو الفراولة	reduce (d)	يقلل/يخفض
suggestions (n)	اقتراحات	highlight (ed)	يظلل/يبرز/يلقى الضوء
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية	underline (d)	يضع خط تحت
natural (adj)	طبيعى	focus (ed)	يركز
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة		

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

take a break	يستريح	**give** a presentation	يقدم عرض تقديمى
make notes on	يدون ملاحظات على	**practice** a presentation	يتدرب على تقديم عرض تقديمى
take public transportation	يركب مواصلات عامة		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

website (n)	موقع على الانترنت	energy (n)	طاقة
forum (n)	منتدى/اجتماع	day (n)	وقت النهار
grade (n)	صف دراسى/درجة	sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس
text (n)	نص	electricity (n)	كهرباء
meaning (n)	معنى	recycled materials	مواد معاد تصنيعها
desert (n)	صحراء	nowadays (adv)	الوقت الحاضر/الآن
dessert (n)	حلو/تحلية	pollution (n)	تلوث
idea (n)	فكرة	common mistake	خطأ شائع
main points	نقاط رئيسية	plan (ned)	يخطط
environmentally (adv)	بيئيا	relax (ed)	يسترخى
planet (n)	كوكب	remember (ed)	يتذكر
elementary school	المدرسة الابتدائية	remind (ed)	يُذَكِّر
nervous (adj)	متوتر	link (ed)	يربط
simple tips	ارشادات بسيطة	protect (ed)	يحمى
device (n)	جهاز	exist (ed)	يوجد
choice (n)	اختيار	print (ed)	يطبع
electric lights	لمبات كهربائية	cycle (d)	يركب دراجة

classmate (n)	زميل الفصل	recycle (d)	يعيد تدوير
waste (n)	نفايات/مخلفات/قمامة		

Expressions & Prepositions

think about	يفكر فى	look for	يبحث عن
for example	على سبيل المثال	give advice	يعطى نصيحة
in front of	امام	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
in yellow	باللون الاصفر	remind yourself of	ذكر نفسك بـ
focus on	يركز على	link something to	يربط شيء بـ
thank for	يشكر على	kind of	نوع من
worry about	قلق بشأن	have an effect on	له تأثير على
have problems with	لديه مشاكل مع	get dark	يحل الظلام
write about	يكتب عن	turn off	يطفئ/يوقف تشغيل
		pick up	يلتقط

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
the same	نفس الشيء	alike	different	مختلف
natural	طبيعي	ordinary/usual	artificial/unusual	صناعى/غير معتاد
reduce	يقلل	shorten / lessen	increase/grow	يزداد/ينمو
nervous	متوتر	worried	calm	هادئ
online	متصل بالانترنت	on the internet	offline	غير متصل بالانترنت
simple	سهل/بسيط	easy	difficult	صعب
first	اولا	in the beginning	finally	أخيرا/فى النهاية

Prefixes & Suffixes

بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
eco-	له علاقة بالبيئة	eco-friendly
-ous/-y	تحول الاسم الى صفة	nervous/tricky
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	suggestion
-al	تحول الاسم الى صفة	natural
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	correctly /finally

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
learn	يتعلم	learnt/learned	learnt/learned
find	يجد	found	found
spell	يتهجى	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
take	يأخذ	took	taken
think	يفكر	thought	thought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
meet	يقابل	met	met

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 experience / experiences /experiment

• كلمة experience لها اكثر من معنى كما يلى:

• **experience (U)**
خبرة في مجالات العمل مثل الطب او الهندسة وهنا اسم لا يعد

Ex. She has five years' experience as a computer programmer.

• **experience (C)**
تجربة حياتية وهنا هى اسم يعد

Ex. From my experiences I have some suggestions to help you learn.

• **experiment** تجربة علمية

Ex. His experiment showed that lightning was a kind of electricity.

2 quite / quiet / quit

• **quiet (adj)** هادئ

Ex. I love the country because it's quiet.

• **quite (adv)** الى حد ما / جدا

Ex. My phone is quite new.

• **quit (v)** يترك / يغادر

Ex. She quit her job and went to live in a quiet place.

3 in + color

• نستخدم لون + in بمعنى باللون ... أو مرتديا زى باللون

Ex. I highlighted the new words in yellow.

Ex. She was dressed in a blue cotton dress.

4 while / during

• **while + v.ing**
أثناء / خلال يأتى بعدها فعل مضاف اليه ing

Ex. You can save energy while studying.

• **during + noun**
أثناء / خلال يأتى بعدها اسم

Ex. Try to study during the day so you can use natural sunlight.

5 It (be) + صفة + to + inf. مصدر الفعل / I find it + صفة + to + inf. مصدر الفعل

- **It (be) + صفة + to + inf. مصدر الفعل**
انه من (المفيد) ...... أن

Ex. It is useful to underline new words or highlight them.

- **I find it + صفة + to + inf. مصدر الفعل**
اجد أنه من (السهل/الصعب)......أن

Ex. I find it easy to remember the meaning of the words.

6 tool / device

- **tool** أداة تحملها فى يدك لعمل شئ
(فأس / شاكوش/مقص الخ..)

Ex. Carpenters use tools like hammers and saws.

- **device**
آلة أو جهاز (لعمل وظيفة معينة)

Ex. Scientists use different devices in laboratories.

7 electricity / electric / electronic

- **electricity (n)** a form of energy
الكهرباء

Ex. These panels make electricity using the sun.

- **electric (adj.)** كهربى
- أشياء تعمل بواسطة الكهرباء (الأجهزة/الأدوات).

Ex. Electric cars are good for the environment.

- **electronic (adj.)** اليكترونى (الأجهزة المصممة للعمل بالتيار الكهربى)

Ex. Electronic devices.

Ex. An electronic calculator.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Failing an exam was a bad .... for me.
   a. experiences b. experiment c. experience d. expert
2. He is a .... good football player.
   a. quiet b. quite c. quit d. quietly
3. I usually highlight important information .... red.
   a. in b. at c. on d. of
4. I find it difficult .... new words.
   a. remember b. to remember c. remembers d. to remembering
5. Computers and tablets are .... that we can use while studying.
   a. tools b. instruments c. devices d. advice
6. We need to buy an .... fan.
   a. electricity b. electric c. electronic d. electrical

Reading

SB Page (5)

Read and listen to the two posts from a student forum about learning. In which post does a student...
1. give advice about learning? ....
2. ask for advice about learning? ....

استمع إلى النصوص

A:



I was in Grade 7[1] last year and I really enjoyed it. From my experiences[2] I have some suggestions[3] to help you learn. When you read a text, it is useful to underline[4] new words or highlight[5] them. I find it easy to remember the meaning of the words, but I sometimes find it difficult to remember how to spell[6] them. I read online that you can remind[7] yourself of tricky[8] spelling words by linking them to other words. For example, I always forget the difference between desert and dessert. I tell myself that dessert has two 's' letters, so it reminds of sweet strawberry desserts! Sweet strawberry begins with two 's' letters like the word dessert, which is a sweet food we eat. Desert has only one 's' so it is a piece of land, not a kind of food!

Amr, 14

١. الصف الأول الاعدادى
٢. خبرات
٣. اقتراحات
٤. يضع خط تحت
٥. يظلل
٦. يتهجى
٧. يذكر
٨. مخادع

B:



Hi Amr!

Thank you for your post[1], it was very interesting. I'm not really worried about[2] learning new words, or spelling as this is something I am good at. However, the idea of underlining or highlighting new words is very useful so I will try that this year. What makes me nervous[3] is when I have to give a presentation[4] in class. Can you give me any suggestions about that? What is a good way to practice a presentation? Also, my mom says it is good to take a break[5] when you are tired. What do you think? What did you do in Grade 7 when you needed a break?

Dalia, 13

١. منشور
٢. قلق بشأن
٣. متوتر
٤. عرض تقديمى
٥. يستريح

SB Page (6)

Read and listen to the article.

Studying and the environment[1]

When we are learning, it is important to think about the environment. Everyone knows how important it is to protect[2] our planet[3]. Here are some simple tips[4] to make your learning more eco-friendly[5]. The nice thing is that these ideas are easy to do.

1. First, try to use less paper. Why don't you use a computer or tablet to make notes or to read books?
   This way, you save paper and help the environment. I know these devices[6] are quite new. What did people do in the past? People couldn't use a computer because they didn't exist[7], but today we have a choice. Another thing that is important to think about is what to do when you want to print[8] something. One idea is to print on both sides of the paper to reduce waste[9].
2. When do you usually study? A lot of students study in the evening when it gets dark. But ask yourself this question: How did people study before there were electric lights?[10] You can save energy while studying. Turn off lights and devices when you are not using them. Try to study during the day so you can use natural sunlight[11]. This will help you use less electricity.
3. Next, ask yourself the following: What materials do I use when I study? Pick up[12] a pen and look at it. Is it made from plastic? The answer is probably: yes. Nowadays[13] you can buy pens made from recycled materials[14] and notebooks that use recycled paper.
4. Finally, how do you get to school? Why not walk, cycle[15], or take public transportation[16] to school, to help reduce pollution?



١. البيئة
٢. يحمى
٣. كوكب
٤. ارشادات بسيطة
٥. صديق للبيئة
٦. اجهزة
٧. لم تكن موجودة
٨. يطبع
٩. يقلل النفايات
١٠. مصابيح كهربائية
١١. ضوء الشمس
١٢. يلتقط
١٣. الان
١٤. مواد معاد تصنيعها
١٥. يركب دراجة
١٦. المواصلات العامة

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. We can .... paper by using a computer or tablet.
   a. throw b. save c. waste d. burn
2. People couldn't use a computer because they didn't ....
   a. exist b. print c. support d. behave
3. How can we use less electricity? ....
4. How can we reduce pollution? ....

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. Everyone knows how important it is to protect our planet. يعلم الجميع مدى أهمية حماية كوكبنا.
2. You can save energy while studying. يمكنك توفير الطاقة أثناء المذاكرة .
3. Turn off lights and devices when you are not using them. قم باطفاء المصابيح والأجهزة عندما لا تستخدمها.
4. Try to study during the day so you can use natural sunlight. حاول أن تذاكر أثناء النهار حتى تتمكن من استخدام ضوء الشمس الطبيعي.

Answers:
1. b. save 2. a. exist
3 We can turn off lights and devices when we are not using them.
4. We can walk, cycle, or take public transportation to school.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I plan to study for the next twenty minutes and then I will take a __________ and relax.
   a. break b. park c. sunlight d. waste
2. I want to________ all the new words in the text in yellow so it's easy to see them.
   a. sunlight b. moonlight c. fight d. highlight
3. I read the website and then make __________ on the most important information in my notebook.
   a. notebooks b. notes c. tablet d. public
4. I always __________ the most important words in a sentence so I can focus on them.
   a. delete b. waste c. underline d. clean
5. It's a good idea to think __________ different ways to remember words.
   a. from b. with c. on d. about
6. Why is it good to study __________ the day?
   a. during b. while c. when d. at
7. I need to practice a __________ so I'm ready to give it in front of many people.
   a. translation b. presentation c. pollution d. correction

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. I can't answer some questions because they're __________.
   a. easy b. tricky c. simple d. clear
9. Dalia usually has __________ strawberry for dessert.
   a. salt b. bitter c. sweet d. sweat
10. My mother's __________ for spending the weekend were perfect.
   a. suggestions b. corrections c. translations d. pollution
11. If you want to be healthy, __________ the amount of salt and sugar in your diet.
   a. increase b. underline c. reduce d. print
12. I like to eat at restaurants that use __________ ingredients in their food. This is healthy.
   a. unhealthy b. natural c. useless d. abnormal

13. We should all use .... products because they are good for the environment.
   a. waste b. polluted c. eco-friendly d. dirty
14. I don't like to go to the dentist's because of a bad .... in the past.
   a. experiment b. experiences c. experience d. expert
15. If you want to succeed, ... on your goal and work hard.
   a. focus b. lose c. ignore d. forget
16. You can improve your study habits by following these simple ....
   a. taps b. tips c. tapes d. string
17. This .... provides useful information about the latest technology.
   a. satellite b. waste c. light d. website
18. A mobile is a/an .... that you can use to send text messages.
   a. device b. tool c. instrument d. equipment
19. How do you feel about the new movie? It's .... good.
   a. quit b. quite c. quiet d. quick
20. Yogurt is the best .... for a healthy dinner.
   a. choose b. place c. waste d. choice

Expressions & Prepositions Exercises

21. To improve your grades focus .... your studies.
   a. on b. up c. after d. with
22. Watching too much TV has a bad .... on your eyes.
   a. affect b. reflect c. effect d. waste
23. Turn .... the lights when you leave a room.
   a. on b. in c. of d. off
24. Pick .... rubbish from the street to make it clean.
   a. over b. up c. in d. on
25. Can you .... me some advice?
   a. give b. decide c. notice d. train

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

highlight - notes - remind - underline - break

If you want to study English well, it's important to have a plan. It's useful to make (1) .... on main points. You can (2) .... the important information with a different color. You can also (3) .... the new words. This will help you remember and revise easily. It's important to take a (4) .... every 30-45 minutes to rest your mind. By following these simple tips, you can improve your study sessions and achieve better results.

Language قواعد لغوية

Wh- object questions forms in the present and the past

1- Wh-questions in the present

• للسؤال عن شئ فى زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + do + we / you / they / I / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل ?
كلمة استفهام + does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Ex. When do you usually study? I usually study in the morning.

Ex. How does she get to school? She gets to school by car.

• لاحظ يمكن أن نستخدم can بدلا من do / does فى المضارع البسيط:

Ex. What can you play? Ex. I can play football.

• ويمكن ايضا استخدام فعل يكون (am-is-are) verb to be فى السؤال فى المضارع اذا كنا نسال عن صفة او اسم

Ex. Why are you late?

• يمكن ايضا السؤال باستخدام have / has got فى المضارع

Ex. What have you got? I have got a car.

Ex. What has he got? He has got a bike.

2- Wh-questions in the past

• للسؤال فى زمن الماضى البسيط:

كلمة استفهام + did + كل الضمائر + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Ex. What did people do in the past?

• لاحظ يمكن أن نستخدم could بدلا من did

Ex. What could you do when you were young?

Ex. I could count to ten.

• ويمكن ايضا استخدام فعل يكون (was-were) verb to be فى السؤال فى الماضى اذا كنا نسال عن صفة او اسم

Ex. Where were you? I was at the club.

• تذكر الكلمات الدالة على الماضى:

yesterday / last (week- month - year) / last night / in the past
ago- five hours ago / when / in + سنة ماضية

• لاحظ عند استخدام Who / What اذا كنا نسال عن المفعول نستخدم الصيغة السابقة فى المضارع والماضى اما اذا كنا نسال عن الفاعل نستخدم الاتى فى المضارع

Who / What + verb + s/es/ies + باقى السؤال ?

Ex. Who needs help?

وفى الماضى

Who / What + فعل فى التصريف الثانى + باقى السؤال ?

Ex. Who invented the telephone?

- لاحظ ايضا عند السؤال باستخدام What about/How about فانه ياتى بعدهما verb + ing

Ex. How about going to the park?

- تذكر كلمات الاستفهام

What	ما/ماذا	How many	كم عدد
When	متى	How much	كم كمية/كم سعر
Where	اين	How often	كم مرة
Why	لماذا	How heavy	كم وزن
Who	من (للعاقل)	How long	كم مدة/مسافة
Which	اى (للتخيير)	How tall	كم طول
Whose	لمن/ملك من	How deep	كم عمق
How	كيف	How fast	كم سرعة
How old	كم عمر	How far	كم يبعد

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. When .... you usually study? - I usually study in the evening.
   a. do b. did c. does d. has
2. How .... you get to school? I get to school by bus.
   a. does b. is c. do d. did
3. How .... people study before there were electric lights?
   a. did b. does c. can d. do
4. Where did you ....?
   a. went b. go c. goes d. gone
5. Where do you usually ....?
   a. studies b. studied c. study d. studying
6. When .... you travel to Luxor? - Yesterday.
   a. did b. does c. has d. do
7. .... does Ola like painting? Because it relaxes her.
   a. What b. Where c. Why d. How
8. Where .... you meet? We met in the elementary school.
   a. did b. do c. does d. are

9. How __________ Samir go to school every day? - He takes the bus
   a. do   b. did   c. does   d. are

Bit by Bit Exercises

10. How __________ do you exercise? - Three times a week.
    a. long   b. often   c. many   d. old
11. When did she __________ learning Chinese?
    a. starts   b. started   c. start   d. starting
12. What did you __________ yesterday?
    a. did   b. doing   c. do   d. does
13. Who __________ you the lesson yesterday?
    a. teaches   b. teach   c. taught   d. teaching
14. __________ did you learn the alphabet? - At the age of three.
    a. How   b. Where   c. What   d. When
15. __________ pencil case is this? - It's mine.
    a. Who   b. How   c. Whose   d. Which
16. __________ are you late? - Because of the rain.
    a. How   b. When   c. Why   d. Who
17. What __________ she got?
    a. has   b. have   c. is   d. does
18. What __________ you do when you were young?
    a. can   b. do   c. does   d. could
19. Why __________ you do your homework? - Because I was ill.
    a. did   b. don't   c. didn't   d. do
20. What can you __________?
    a. play   b. playing   c. played   d. plays

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. When __________ (you) go to school?
2. How long do you usually __________ (studied)?
3. How did you __________ (traveled) to school yesterday?
4. Who __________ (do) you meet last night?
5. What __________ (does) you read last week?
6. What did you __________ (studied) yesterday?

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. __________ (When) do you live? I live in Cairo.
8. How old __________ (were) you? I'm ten years old.
9. When __________ (do) you watch TV? Last night.
10. How often do you __________ (ate) fruit?

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about learning

• السؤال والجواب عن التعلم:

Question	Answer
- What do you do to help you remember new vocabulary? ماذا تفعل ليساعدك ان تتذكر الكلمات الجديدة؟	- I always underline the most important words in a sentence. اضع دائما خط تحت اهم الكلمات فى الجملة . - I highlight all the new words in the text in yellow. اظلل كل الكلمات الجديدة فى النص باللون الأصفر.
- Do you keep a vocabulary notebook? هل تحتفظ بكراسة لمعانى الكلمات؟	- Yes, I do .. نعم.
- Why do you think this is a good idea? لماذا تعتقد أنها فكرة جيدة ؟	- Because I make notes on the most important information in it. لاننى ادون ملاحظات باهم المعلومات بها.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It's ___________ hot today. Please turn on the fan.
   a. quite b. quit c. quiet d. quick
2. I'll have the chocolate cake for___________.
   a. desert b. grade c. dessert d. soup
3. ___________ is important for plants and trees.
   a. Moonlight b. Highlight c. Slight d. Sunlight
4. The paper was ___________ into new products.
   a. recycled b. cycled c. wasted d. grow
5. I want to ___________ and have a rest from work.
   a. run b. relax c. tired d. underline
6. Please ___________ me to call my mother.
   a. remember b. rewrite c. remind d. reuse
7. I'm having problems _________ my computer.
   a. with b. for c. by d. back
8. A: What did you _________ for lunch? B: I ate pasta and chicken.
   a. has b. had c. having d. have
9. How _________ your day yesterday?
   a. is b. did c. does d. was
10. What did you _________ for your birthday?
    a. got b. get c. gets d. getting

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

increasing - recycle - natural - reducing - planet

It's important to help the environment. We can help the environment by ❶------ waste. This means we should try not to throw things away so often. We can ❷------ things like paper, plastic, and glass instead of throwing them in the trash. This helps save resources and keeps our ❸------ clean. We can also use ❹------ sunlight for energy by installing solar panels on our homes.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How often did you --------- (traveled) to Aswan?
2. Who --------- (did) your best friend last year?
3. How about --------- (play) football in the park?
4. Why --------- (doesn't) you practice sports?
5. Where --------- (do) you spend the last vacation?

4 Complete the following dialog:

A student is talking to his teacher about learning new vocabulary.

Teacher : Today, we're going to learn some new vocabulary.
Student : Okay, what should I do to ❶ --------------------- new vocabulary?
Teacher : You should keep a vocabulary ❷ ---------------------------.
Student : What should I write in this notebook?
Teacher : You should underline and ❸ --------------------- new words in red.
Student : I'll do that and I will also ❹ --------------- using them in sentences.
Teacher : Excellent! Keep practicing using these new words, and you'll be able to use them in your writing and speaking.
Student : Thank you, teacher.
Teacher : You're welcome. Good luck!

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on.

(مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة)

"How you learn or remember something new"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1- What steps do you follow to learn new things?
2- Where do you write the important notes?
3- What do you use to help you?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

I underline or highlight important words ---------------------------.
I also make notes on the main points and vocabulary in my notebook -------.
I use flashcards to remind myself of ---------------------------------.

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

cell (n)	خلية الكائن الحي	opinion (n)	رأي
active (adj)	نشيط/حيوى/عامل/فعال	connection (n)	اتصال
naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعى	connect (ed)	يتصل/يربط
brain (n)	مخ	explain (ed)	يفسر/يشرح
fact (n)	حقيقة	create (d)	يخلق/ينشئ

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

statements (n)	بيانات/حقائق	sperm (n)	حيوان منوى
kingdom (n)	مملكة	activities (n)	انشطة
Even though	بالرغم من	area (n)	منطقة
complex/complicated (adj)	معقد	patient (n/adj)	مريض/صبور
problem-solving	حل المشكلات	kindness (n)	طيبة/عطف
anytime (adv)	فى اى وقت	grandchild (n)	حفيد
exactly (adv)	بالضبط	possession (n)	ملكية
actually (adv)	فعلا/فى الواقع	location (n)	موقع مكان
technology (n)	التكنولوجيا	rule (n)	قاعدة
sleep (n/v)	النوم/ينام	primary stage	المرحلة الابتدائية
enough (pron.)	كافى	dictionary (n)	قاموس
research (n)	بحث علمى	calculator (n)	الة حاسبة
real life	الحياة الحقيقية	believe (d)	يعتقد
topic (n)	موضوع	agree (d)	يوافق
helpful (adj)	متعاون/مفيد	disagree (d)	لا يوافق/يختلف
habit (n)	عادة	check (ed)	يتأكد/يفحص
truth (n)	حقيقة	belong (ed)	ينتمى/يخص
basic (adj)	اساسى	control (ed)	يتحكم فى
living thing	كائن حى		

Expressions & Prepositions

in fact	فى الحقيقة	hard work	العمل الجاد
connect with	يربط ب	work hard	يعمل بجد
up to	ما يصل الى	proud of	فخور ب
important for	هام ل	belong to	ينتمى ل
agree with	يتفق مع	look up	يبحث فى القاموس
do research	يعمل بحث	in your opinion	فى رأيك
carry on	يستمر/يواصل	The more that I practice, the better I'll get.	
That's kind of you	هذا لطف منك	كلما تدربت كلما تحسنت	

Definitions

explain	يفسر/يشرح	to make something clear or easy to understand
cell	خلية	the smallest basic unit of a living thing
naturally	بشكل طبيعى	something that happens as part of nature
active	نشيط	busy doing something
connect	يوصل/يربط	to link to something else

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
agree	يتفق/يوافق	accept	disagree	لا يوافق / يخالف
false	خطأ	incorrect	true/right	صحيح
helpful	متعاون/مفيد	useful	useless/ helpless	بلا فائدة
active	نشيط	energetic	lazy	كسول
connect	يوصل / يربط	join	disconnect	يفصل/يقطع اتصال
fact	حقيقة	truth	opinion	رأى
complex	معقد	complicated	simple	بسيط

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ness	تحول الصفة الى اسم	kindness
-ful	تحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة	helpful
-ion	تحول الفعل الى اسم	location / connection
-ly	تحول الصفة الى حال	clearly / naturally / actually
dis-	تعطى عكس المعنى	disagree

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
show	يعرض/يبين	showed	shown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
mean	يعنى	meant	meant

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1) connect (with) / contact / communicate

- **connect with** يوصل بـ (يربط شيئين ببعض مثلا)

Ex. The bridge will **connect** many places **with** the city center.

- **contact** يتصل بـ (يراسل أو يتصل تلفونيا أو بالبريد الاليكترونى خصوصا للمرة الاولى لاعطاء او طلب معلومات)

Ex. Neighbors **contacted** the police after seeing a man with a gun.

- **communicate** يتواصل (يتبادل معلومات أو يعمل محادثة مع شخص سواء هاتفيا أو برسالة)

Ex. Now that we live in different cities, we **communicate** by e-mail.

2) research / search

- **(do) research** بحث علمى / دراسة

Ex. The charity raises money for medical **research**.

- **search (for) (v.ed/n)** يبحث عن شئ أو البحث عن شئ

Ex. I'm **searching** for a birthday present for my best friend.

3) sleep / patient

- **sleep** ينام / نوم

- بعض الكلمات تعتبر افعال و اسماء فى نفس الوقت

Ex. You should **sleep** for eight hours every day.

Ex. I don't get enough **sleep** so I'm tired.

- **patient (adj/n)** صبور / مريض

- و بعض الكلمات تعتبر اسماء و صفات فى نفس الوقت

Ex. A good teacher should be **patient**

Ex. Doctors and nurses help **patients** at hospitals.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Can I .... my printer to your computer?
   a. contact b. communicate c. connect d. cancel
2. She's doing some .... on the new disease to find a cure.
   a. search b. research c. problems d. cells
3. I love my dad because he is ....
   a. patient b. a patient c. patience d. kindness

Reading

SB Page (7)

SB Page (7)

استمع إلى النصوص

Hello, everyone! Today, we are going to talk about the brain. The brain is a very important part of our body.

It helps us think, feel, and move. Our brain controls[1] everything we do!

Now, let's look at some statements[2] about the brain. I will tell you if each one is true or false.

Statement 1 We only use about 10% of our brain.

This statement is false. Some people say we only use 10% of our brain, but that is not true. We actually[3] use almost[4] all parts of our brain every day. Different parts of the brain work together to help us do different things, like speaking, moving, and remembering.

Statement 2 A sperm[5] whale's brain is bigger than a person's brain.

This statement is true. The sperm whale has the biggest brain in the animal kingdom[6]. Its brain can weigh about 8 kilograms, while a human brain weighs about 1.4 kilograms. Even though[7] the whale's brain is bigger, our brains are more complex[8]. This makes us good at problem-solving[9] and learning.

Statement 3 There is a lot that we don't know about the brain. This statement is true. Scientists know many things about the brain, but there is still a lot we don't understand. The brain is very complicated[10], and there is much more to discover about how it works.

١. يتحكم فى
٢. حقائق
٣. بالفعل
٤. تقريبا
٥. حيوان منوى
٦. مملكة
٧. على الرغم من
٨. معقد
٩. حل المشكلات
١٠. معقد

SB Page (10)

Grandfather : I need your help with something, Karim.
Grandson : Of course, Grandpa. What do you need?
Grandfather : I got this letter from work, but I don't know what it says. Can you read it to me?
Grandson : Sure, I can help. Why didn't you learn to read and write, Grandpa?
Grandfather : When I was young, I had to work to help my family, so I couldn't go to school. Now, I want to learn, but it's hard.
Grandson : I understand. I can teach you if you want.
Grandfather : That would be great. You are the person whose help I need the most because you're patient.
Grandson : We can start with simple words. Do you remember any words that you learned before?
Grandfather : Yes, I remember some words, but I forget them quickly. The book that I bought last year is still difficult for me.
Grandson : Don't worry, Grandpa. We will go slowly. The important thing is to practice every day.
Grandfather : You're right. The more that I practice, the better I'll get. Thanks for helping me, Karim.
Grandson : Anytime, Grandpa. I'm happy to help.

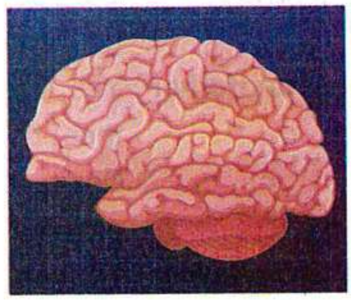
Grandfather : You know, I'm proud of you. You're the one grandchild in the family who works really hard.
Grandson : Thanks Grandpa.
Grandfather : Also, the school which you go to now is one of the best in the area.
Grandson : Thanks, Grandpa, but it's not just the school. I also learn a lot from you.
Grandfather : From me? But I don't know how to read.
Grandson : Yes, but you taught me important lessons, like hard work and kindness, which are more important than anything I learn from books.
Grandfather : That's kind of you to say. I guess we can both learn from each other.
Grandson : Exactly. I'll help you with reading, and you can keep teaching me about life.
Grandfather : Yes, I believe that home is a place where we can all learn a lot from each other!

SB Page (9)

The truth about the brain

Many people think that when we learn our brains make new brain cells(1).
But actually, we create new connections(2) between brain cells we already have. In fact, one brain cell can connect with up to 10,000 others.
In the past, people believed the brain "turned off" when we went to sleep. But with new technology, we now know that some parts of the brain stay active(3) during sleep.
Sleep is very important for learning because it helps us remember things better. In fact, people who get enough sleep can remember about 20% more than those who do not.
For young people, research(4) shows that learning feels more interesting if they know how it can help them in real life. About 85% of students say they learn better when they understand why a topic(5) is useful. So, it's important for teachers to explain(6) why lessons are helpful.
Finally, our brains have a habit(7) of telling us that things we agree with are "facts"(8). When we disagree with something, we see it as an opinion(9). This happens naturally(10), but it's helpful to remember that just because we agree or disagree with something doesn't mean we are right.

١. خلية
٢. اتصال
٣. نشيط
٤. ابحاث
٥. موضوع
٦. يفسر
٧. عادة
٨. حقائق
٩. رأى
١٠. بشكل طبيعى



Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1 People believed the brain ____________ when we went to sleep.
a. turned on b. switched on c. turned off d. opened
2 If you want to remember things better, get enough ____________.
a. sleep b. fire c. salt d. games
3 What do we know about the brain from new technology? ____________
4 Why is it important for teachers to explain why lessons are helpful? ____________

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1 In fact, one brain cell can connect with up to 10,000 others.
في الواقع، يمكن لخلية واحدة من المخ أن تتصل بما يصل إلى ١٠٠٠٠ خلية أخرى.
2 Some parts of the brain stay active during sleep.
تظل بعض أجزاء المخ نشيطة أثناء النوم.
3 Sleep is very important for learning because it helps us remember things better.
النوم مهم جدًا للتعلم لأنه يساعدنا على تذكر الأشياء بشكل أفضل.
4 About 85% of students say they learn better when they understand why a topic is useful.
يقول حوالي 85% من الطلاب إنهم يتعلمون بشكل أفضل عندما يفهمون سبب فائدة موضوع ما.

Answers
1. c. turned off 2. a. sleep
3. We know that some parts of the brain stay active during sleep.
4. Because students learn better when they understand why a topic is useful.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. His grandfather taught him that .... work is important.
   a. hard b. easy c. funny d. cheap
2. To .... is to make something clear or easy to understand.
   a. belong b. disagree c. explain d. find
3. The .... is the smallest basic unit of a living thing.
   a. head b. cell c. brain d. heart
4. When something happens as part of nature, it happens ....
   a. finally b. slowly c. naturally d. easily
5. When someone is .... ,this means he is busy doing something.
   a. lazy b. asleep c. funny d. active
6. To........ is to link to something else.
   a. connect b. believe c. think d. mean
7. What are the most useful tips, ... your opinion?
   a. on b. in c. at d. for

Bit by Bit Exercises

8. Your ...... is the organ inside your head that controls how you think, feel, and move.
   a. heart b. skin c. cell d. brain
9. Doing exercise keeps me .... and energetic all day.
   a. active b. lazy c. asleep d. sad
10. Salt is found .... in sea water.
    a. carefully b. happily c. slowly d. naturally
11. There is a .... between pollution and the death of trees.
    a. correction b. connection c. translation d. collection
12. The plant .... includes all the plants, trees, flowers and seeds we see around us.
    a. kingdom b. team c. game d. screen
13. The government is planning to .... more jobs for young people.
    a. create b. destroy c. sleep d. delete
14. The brain is the most amazing and .... organ in our body.
    a. simple b. complex c. smallest d. unimportant
15. A/An .... is something that is known to be true.
    a. opinion b. fact c. lie d. idea

16. .... are often based on personal experiences and beliefs.
    a. Collections b. Buildings c. Vacations d. Opinions
17. Students should do activities that improve their .... skills.
    a. boring b. sleeping c. swimming d. problem-solving
18. .... is the quality of being friendly and kind.
    a. Kindness b. Happiness c. Business d. Fitness
19. New .... makes it easier for everyone to learn new things.
    a. history b. headphone c. technology d. exercise
20. If you want to stay healthy, you should get enough ....
    a. games b. sleep c. eat d. explain

Expressions and Prepositions Exercises

21. I thought I knew the answer, but .... fact, I was wrong.
    a. on b. for c. at d. in
22. Parents are often proud .... their children's success.
    a. of b. at c. for d. up
23. This book belongs .... me. It's mine
    a. for b. to c. with d. by
24. Students often look .... new words in a dictionary to understand their meaning.
    a. to b. over c. up d. on
25. People should turn .... lights when they go to bed to save energy.
    a. off b. on c. of d. in

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sleep - cells - naturally - connect - agree

The brain is made up of billions of tiny cells. These (1) .... send and receive signals to each other. When you learn something new or think about something, these cells (2) .... with each other. To keep your brain healthy, you need to get enough (3) ....

During sleep, your brain (4) .... repairs itself. So, the next time you're trying to learn something new, remember to get a good night's sleep to help your brain work *its best!*

Language قواعد لغوية

Defining relative clauses عبارات الوصل المعرّفة/المحددة

• يوجد نوعان من عبارات الوصل وهما عبارات الوصل المحددة وغير المحددة وسندرس هنا النوع الاول.

• تستخدم (عبارات / ضمائر الوصل) لتخبرنا عن الاسم الذى نتكلم عنه، وقد يكون هذا الاسم (شخص/شيء/حيوان/مكان/زمان).

1 who (that) — for people

تحل محل اسم عاقل بمعنى (الذى/التى/الذين/اللاتى)

Miss Amal is a teacher. She teaches us English.

Miss Amal is the teacher **who / that** teaches us English.

2 which (that) — for things / animals

تحل محل اسم غير عاقل (شئ - حيوان) بمعنى (الذى/التى/الذين/اللاتى)

That's a horse. It won the race.

That's the horse **which / that** won the race.

3 where — for places

تستخدم للإشارة إلى المكان بمعنى (حيث)

This is a house. My grandfather lived there.

This is the house **where** my grandfather lived.

4 when — for time

تستخدم للإشارة إلى الزمان بمعنى (عندما)

This month is October. I was born in October.

October is the month **when** I was born.

5 whose — for possession

تحل محل اسم مالك الشئ بمعنى (الذى /التى تملك)

That's a boy. — The boy's father is a teacher.

That's the boy whose father is a teacher.

Notes

١- عند استخدام ضمير الوصل لربط جملتين نحذف دائماً الاسم الذى يدل عليه ضمير الوصل:

Ex. This is the table which I bought ~~it~~.

Ex. That is my school where I learn ~~there~~ .

- يمكن استخدام which لتشير الى المكان و الزمان اذا كنا نتحدث عن المكان والزمان كشيء (مفعول) وليس ظرف.

٢- لاحظ استخدام which مكان where :

Ex. This is the house which my father bought.

• استخدمنا which لأنها تعنى (الذى) التى تستخدم للإشارة إلى الأشياء وهنا نتكلم عن (house) كشئ وليس مكان ولذلك لم نستخدم (where).

• لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل in مع المكان نستخدم (which وليس where).

Where = حرف جـــر + which
Where = which .... + حرف جر

Ex. Tanta is the city in which I was born.

Ex. Tanta is the city which I was born in.

٣- لاحظ استخدام which مكان (when).

Ex. Friday is the day which I like.

• استخدمنا which لأنها تعنى (الذى) وتشير إلى الأشياء وهنا نتكلم عن (Friday) ليس كوقت ولكن كشىء ولذلك لم نستخدم when.

• لاحظ أنه إذا جاء حرف جر مثل (in) مع الزمان نستخدم (which وليس when).

When = حرف جـــر + which
When = which .... + حرف جر

Ex. June is the month in which I was born.

Ex. June is the month which I was born in.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Do you remember any words .... you learned before?
   a. who b. that c. where d. whose
2. You are the person .... help I need the most because you're patient.
   a. which b. who c. when d. whose
3. You taught me that hard work and kindness .... are more important than anything.
   a. where b. which c. who d. when
4. I'm proud of you. You're the one grandchild in the family .... works really hard.
   a. who b. whose c. when d. where
5. The school .... you go to now is one of the best in the area.
   a. when b. whose c. which d. where
6. I believe that home is a place .... we can learn a lot from each other!
   a. whose b. who c. when d. where
7. This is the website .... explains grammar rules clearly.
   a. which b. when c. where d. whose
8. This is the school I went to .... I was at the primary stage.
   a. where b. whose c. when d. who

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. My aunt Nagat is a person .... is always very kind to me.
   a. who b. which c. when d. where
10. My dad bought me a watch .... I always wore when I went outside
    a. who b. where c. that d. when
11. I gave my little brother the story .... I read.
    a. who b. when c. where d. which
12. The girl .... skirt is white is my sister.
    a. who b. whose c. where d. which
13. What is the name of the person .... is setting next to you?
    a. who b. where c. which d. what
14. This is the flat .... they live.
    a. when b. who c. where d. which
15. Sarah went to the market .... she could get fruit.
    a. who b. when c. where d. which
16. October is the month .... I was born.
    a. who b. where c. which d. when

17. Spring is the season .... I love most.
   a. when b. where c. that d. whose
18. This is the house .... my dad bought yesterday.
   a. where b. whose c. which d. who
19. The little girl .... doll was lost is sad
   a. who b. where c. when d. whose
20. The T-shirt .... I bought yesterday was expensive.
   a. where b. which c. who d. when

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. That's the boy .... (who) father is a teacher at the school.
2. This is the shop .... (when) I buy all my notebooks.
3. Students .... (which) study every day usually get better grades.
4. I like classmates .... (where) share their notes with me.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. Mohamed Salah is the player .... (which) I love most.
6. This is the village .... (when) my grandma was born.
7. Sally .... (which) helped me is a teacher.
8. Is this the hotel .... (when) you work in?
9. The man .... (who) car is modern won the race.

Speaking

Talking about activities you can do: التحدث عن الأنشطة التي يمكنك القيام بها:

Question	Answer
- Which of these activities can you do? اى من هذه الانشطة يمكنك القيام بها؟	- I can play chess. استطيع لعب الشطرنج.
- How did you learn to do it? كيف تعلمت أن تمارسها؟	- I learned it online. تعلمتها عبر الانترنت.
- How easy was it to learn? ما مدى سهولة تعلمها؟	- It was quite difficult to learn it. كانت صعبة الى حد ما.
- How much practice did you need to learn it? كم احتجت من الممارسة حتى تعلمتها ؟	- I practiced it two hours every day. كنت ادرب عليها لمدة ساعتين يوميا

Make a sentence with a defining relative clause. كون جملة باستخدام عبارات الوصل المحددة.

A: This is something which I use to look up new words
B: Is it a dictionary?
A: Yes, it is.

A: This is something that I use to add and multiply.
B: Is it a calculator?
A: Yes, it is.

A: This is a place where you read and borrow books.
B: Is it a library?
A: Yes, it is.

General Exercises on Lessons 3&4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Try to be .... in cold weather by doing exercise.
   a. lazy b. funny c. active d. helpless
2. I .... the rules of the game to my friend so that he could play with me.
   a. visited b. bought c. ran d. explained
3. The internet is a .... between computers all over the world.
   a. situation b. solution c. pollution d. connection
4. A .... talented person is someone who is good at something without any training or practice.
   a. naturally b. slowly c. quietly d. loudly
5. .... can make the world a better place.
   a. Sadness b. Illness c. Kindness d. Laziness
6. It is a/an .... that water boils at 100 degrees Celsius.
   a. opinion b. lie c. connection d. fact
7. If you are not sure how to .... research, you can ask a librarian or teacher for help.
   a. do b. make c. play d. recycle

8. The .... is responsible for many important functions, such as thinking, learning, remembering, and feeling emotions.
   a. heart b. lungs c. brain d. bone
9. If you are .... you will learn and achieve your goals well.
   a. lazy b. patient c. greedy d. selfish
10. .... has made it possible to communicate more easily.
   a. Pollution b. Elementary c. Technology d. Kindness
11. That's the horse .... won the race.
   a. which b. who c. where d. when
12. The person .... I love most is my mother.
   a. which b. when c. who d. where
13. These are the photos .... I took at the zoo last week.
   a. when b. who c. where d. which
14. Tennis is a sport .... my sister plays every week.
   a. where b. when c. that d. who
15. This is Mr Othman .... son is my friend.
   a. where b. whose c. when d. who

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

senses - thinking - sleeping - hearts - cells

The brain is like a supercomputer inside your head! It controls everything you do, from (1) .... and feeling to moving and talking. It's made up of billions of tiny (2) .... that send messages to each other, like a giant network.

The brain has many different parts, each with a special job. Some parts help you learn and remember, while others control your (3) .... like sight and hearing. Your brain is always working, even when you're (4) ....! It helps you grow and change throughout your life.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Morning is the time .... (where) I learn best. SB
2. The class is the place .... (whose) I meet my friends. SB
3. Do you know .... (when) this bag belongs to? SB
4. The man .... (where) wears a brown jacket is my uncle.
5. This is the museum .... (who) I visited last year.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Hana and Yasin are talking about doing activities.

Hana : What activities can you do?

Yasin : I can play ❶ -- tennis.

Hana : Why did you choose to learn table tennis?

Yasin : My friends played it and it looked fun.

Hana : How ❷ -- was it to learn?

Yasin : It was very easy to learn.

Hana : How much ❸ ---------------------------- did you need to learn it?

Yasin : I practiced it two hours every day.

Hana : Do you still play table tennis now?

Yasin : Yes, I play with my ❹ ---------------------------- every weekend.

5 Write a blog post of about EIGHTY (80) words on.

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"Tips for students learning new vocabulary"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1- What can I use to learn new vocabulary?

2- What should I read?

3- What else can help learn new vocabulary?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

You can use flashcards to --

Read books, magazines and articles --

Use the words when you speak --

يقوم الطالب بتسميع المفردات فى ملحق الكتاب

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

journal (n)	مفكرة يومية/مذكرات	encourage (d)	يشجع
annoying (adj)	مزعج	represent (ed)	يرمز الى/يمثل
rhythm (n)	ايقاع/تواتر/ تناغم	predict (ed)	يتنبأ
traditions (n)	تقاليد	appreciate (d)	يقدر/يثمن
proud (adj)	فخور	behave (d)	يتصرف/يسلك
patience (n)	صبر	symbolize (d)	يرمز

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

necklace (n)	عقد	society (n)	مجتمع
beads (n)	حبات الخرز	regular pattern	نمط منتظم
result (n)	نتيجة	rich (adj)	ثرى/غنى
craft (n)	حرفة	diverse (n)	تنوع
Senegalese culture (n)	الثقافة السنغالية	mind map (n)	خريطة ذهنية
strength (n)	قوة	A reflective journal	مفكرة تأملية
courage (n)	شجاعة	thoughts (n)	افكار
peace (n)	سلام	feelings (n)	مشاعر
hope (n)	امل	success (n)	نجاح
perfect (adj)	مثالى/رائع	successful (adj)	ناجح
handicrafts (n)	حرف يدوية	recently (adv)	مؤخرا/حديثا
value (n)	قيمة	category (n)	تصنيف
importance (n)	اهمية	extra wheels	عجلات اضافية
confidence (n)	ثقة	central (adj)	مركزى
action plan (n)	خطة عمل	pedal (ed)	يبدل (يستخدم دواسة الدراجة)

process (n)	عملية	drop (ped)	يسقط
African (adj)	افريقى	continue (d)	يواصل
scared (adj)	خائف/مرعوب	describe (d)	يصف
center (n)	مركز / منتصف	include (d)	يشمل
support (ed/n)	يدعم/يشجع/دعم		

Definitions

patience	صبر	the ability to keep trying to do something and not give up
encourage	يشجع	to talk or behave in a way that gives someone confidence
tradition	تقليد	something that a group of people, or a society, started doing a long time ago and still do now
proud	فخور	to have a good feeling about something you do
rhythm	ايقاع/تواتر	a regular pattern of movements
annoying	مزعج	make you feel angry
reflective journal	مفكرة تأملية	a diary where you write about your thoughts, feelings, and learning experiences.

Expressions & Prepositions

A friend in need is a friend indeed	الصديق وقت الضيق	find out	يعرف/يكتشف
		A bit nervous	متوتر قليلا
keep going	واصل التقدم	At first/At the start	فى البداية
give up	يستسلم	The back of the bike	مؤخرة الدراجة
It takes time to.....	يستغرق الامر وقت لـ	After a while	بعد وقت قصير
enjoy myself	استمتع	let go of	دعه ينطلق
learn from	يتعلم من	fall down	يسقط
in the end	فى النهاية	shout to	يصيح فى
the meaning behind	المعنى من	make notes about	يدون ملاحظات عن

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
annoying	مزعج	disturbing	pleasant	ممتع
encourage	يشجع	assist/support	discourage	يثبط
quick	سريع	fast	slow	بطئ
success	نجاح	achievement	failure	فشل
nervous	متوتر	worried	calm	هادئ

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
en-	تحول الاسم الى فعل	encourage
-ing	تحول الفعل او الاسم الى صفة	annoying
-ese	تشير الى الاشخاص او لغة مكان ما	Senegalese/Chinese
-an	تشير الى شخص او شئ منتمى لمكان ما	African
re-	تعنى مرة اخرى/يعيد عمل	represent

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي وقت/يصرف مالا	spent	spent
keep	يحتفظ بـ/يبقى	kept	kept
give up	يستسلم	gave up	given up
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
hold	يمسك	held	held
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
let	يدع	let	let
get back	يرجع/يعود	got back	got/gotten back

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 fall / drop

- **fall** يسقط (دون تعمد أو قصد-تستخدم مع الاشخاص بمعنى يقع)

Ex. He fell off his bike and broke his leg.

- **drop** يسقط (يمكن أن تكون بتعمد او بدون- لا تأتى مع الاشخاص وتاتى مع الاشياء)

Ex. She dropped the pen onto the desk.

2 verbs + v.ing / verbs + to + inf.

- هناك بعض الافعال ياتى بعدها الفعل مضاف اليه ing وافعال اخرى يأتى بعدها to + inf.
وهناك افعال يأتى بعدها الشكلين:

Verbs + v.ing	Verbs + to + inf.	Verbs + v.ing / to + inf.
keep going	encourage to	like
practice ....playing	want to	start
enjoy ....doing	help to	continue
	learn to	

3 in the end / at the end

- **In the end = Finally** اخيرا

غالبا يأتى بعدها (comma) ثم جملة كاملة (فاعل + فعل)

Ex. We worked hard, and in the end, we achieved our goal.

- **At the end** فى نهاية (of) + noun

غالبا ياتى بعدها (of) ثم اسم

Ex. I pay the phone bill at the end of each month.

4 It takes time to + inf. يستغرق وقت حتى
show / teach me how to + inf. ارنى/علمنى كيف
make someone + inf. يجعل شخص ...

- **It takes time to + inf.** يستغرق وقت حتى

Ex. It takes time to make something very beautiful.

- **show / teach me how to + inf.** ارنى/علمنى كيف ....

Ex. She showed me how to make a necklace from different colored beads.

- **make someone + inf.** يجعل شخص ...

Ex. Her words made me think about how I always want quick results.

5 Spend time + v. ing / takes time to +inf.

Ex. We spend time trying to learn something new.

Ex. It takes time to learn a new language.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed .... down the stairs.
   a. fell   b. dropped   c. felt   d. failed
2. Don't give up and keep ....
   a. go   b. to go   c. goes   d. going
3. .... the end, I won the race.
   a. In   b. At   c. On   d. From
4. My sister taught me .... a bike.
   a. how ride   b. ride   c. rode   d. how to ride
5. It's not good to spend much time .... video games.
   a. play   b. to play   c. playing   d. played

Reading

SB Page (12)

An afternoon with my grandmother

استمع إلى النصوص

١. السنغال	٢. الخرز
٣. مزعج	٤. شجعت
٥. نتائج	٦. اكملت
٧. ايقاع/تناغم	٨. حرفة
٩. الثقافة السنغالية	
١٠. يمثل	١١. قوة
١٢. شجاعة	١٣. السلام
١٤. يقدر	١٥. تقاليد
١٦. حرف يدوية	١٧. الصبر
١٨. خطة عمل	١٩. عملية

Date: October 22, 2024

Today, I spent the afternoon with my grandmother who is from Senegal[1]. She showed me how to make a necklace from different colored beads[2]. The beads were very small and I kept dropping them which was annoying[3]! I wanted to give up but my grandmother encouraged[4] me to keep going, saying, "It takes time to make something very beautiful." Her words made me think about how I always want quick results[5] and don't spend enough time trying to learn something new. As I continued[6], I found a rhythm[7], and I started to really enjoy myself.



My grandmother shared stories about how she learned this craft[8] from her mother. She explained that each color bead has a different meaning in Senegalese culture[9]. For example, red represents[10] strength[11] and courage[12]; blue means peace[13]; yellow is for money, and green is for hope or nature.



Now, I appreciate[14] my culture. Making the necklace helped me to connect with the traditions[15] of the women in my family. In the end, my necklace wasn't perfect, but I felt proud. I learned that handicrafts[16] represent our connection to tradition, culture, and our values. This experience taught me patience[17], the importance of practice, and the meaning behind what we make.

Action Plan[18]: Next time I will focus on staying patient and asking my grandmother more about the meanings behind the beads. I want to enjoy the process[19] and continue connecting with African culture and traditions.

SB Page (14)

June 22, 2024

1. Today, I spent the afternoon with my dad. My dad was teaching me how to ride a bike. I was a bit nervous at first, but I really wanted to learn. I kept saying, "I want to ride like all my friends!"
2. At the start, my dad held the back of the bike so I wouldn't fall. I tried to pedal, but I almost fell a few times. I was scared but didn't give up. My dad kept telling me, "It's okay. Keep trying."
3. After a while, my dad let go of the bike for a few seconds, and I rode a little by myself! I was so happy, and I was proud of myself. I fell once, but I got back up and tried again.



4. In the end, I could ride for a few seconds without my dad's help. I think I learned that if you keep trying, you can do anything! Today was fun, and I was really happy to learn how to ride my bike.

SB Page (15)

Using a mind map to think of ideas

A mind map(1) is a good way to make quick notes about ideas(2) you can include(3) in your writing. Start with the main topic(4) and write this in the center(5) of the mind map. Then think of some categories(6) connected to the main idea.
Write these in boxes with lines connecting them to the central(7) box. In each category write two or three ideas.
Remember to keep it simple.

١. خريطة ذهنية
٢. افكار
٣. يشمل
٤. موضوع رئيسى
٥. منتصف
٦. اقسام
٧. مركزى

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Do you think it's important to learn about ___________ in your culture?
   a. traditions b. pollution c. journals d. forests
2. ___________ is the ability to keep trying to do something and not give up.
   a. Failure b. Kindness c. Patience d. Peace
3. A friend ___________ need is a friend indeed.
   a. on b. in c. at d. from
4. A ___________ map is a good way to make quick notes about ideas.
   a. kind b. mind c. heart d. bead
5. ___________ is a regular pattern of movements.
   a. Nature b. Hope c. Rhythm d. Peace
6. A reflective ___________ is a diary where you write about your thoughts.
   a. journal b. magazine c. movie d. program
7. If something is ___________ you, it makes you feel angry.
   a. pleasing b. annoying c. helpful to d. good for
8. To ___________ is to talk or behave in a way that gives someone confidence.
   a. discourage b. annoy c. destroy d. encourage

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. Our team manager will ___________ us in the meeting.
   a. represent b. rewrite c. repair d. recycle
10. I write in my ___________ every day to record my thoughts and feelings.
    a. exam b. journal c. bike d. necklace
11. Studying hard and getting good grades make me feel ___________
    a. proud b. lazy c. asleep d. sad
12. The coach ___________ the team to play their best.
    a. discouraged b. encouraged c. disagreed d. wrote
13. I am learning to be more ___________ in difficult situations.
    a. patient b. helpless c. greedy d. funny
14. Scientists ___________ that it will be a hot summer.
    a. hope b. support c. behave d. predict
15. I ___________ the support of my family and friends.
    a. appreciate b. destroy c. hate d. delete

16. I find it .... when people speak loudly on their phones in public.
 a. interesting b. annoying c. amazing d. exciting
17. Our country has amazing wedding...........
 a. traditions b. competition c. journal d. map
18. She used colorful .... to make bracelets.
 a. mud b. phones c. beads d. notebooks
19. I gave my mother a/an .... for her birthday. She wore it around her neck.
 a. ring b. necklace c. earrings d. bracelet
20. The .... of the exams was amazing as I got full mark.
 a. history b. cause c. technology d. result
21. .... are often made by hand using traditional ways.
 a. Handicrafts b. Spacecraft c. Laptops d. Calculators

Expressions and Prepositions Exercises

22. The teacher encouraged the students to .... going, even if they made mistakes.
 a. keep b. stop c. hold d. fall
23. Don't .... achieving your goals, no matter how difficult they are.
 a. think about b. give up c. look for d. stay up
24. .... first, learning to ride a bike was difficult, but I succeeded to learn.
 a. In b. On c. With d. At
25. .... the end, the team won the championship.
 a. At b. In c. Up d. On
26. Try to learn .... your mistakes and try to do better the next time.
 a. off b. on c. of d. from

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

encouraged - proud - traditions - showed - forget

Today was a special day because I spent it with my grandmother. She (1)....... me how to make an apple pie. We talked about (2)....... of our country and how important it is to learn about them. She (3)....... me to learn more about our history and to be (4)....... of my country. Spending time with her reminded me of the importance of family and the value of preserving our traditions.

Speaking

Useful language to write about a topic صيغ لغوية مفيدة للكتابة عن موضوع

Language	Examples
- Today, / Yesterday, / Last Saturday, I spent ... اليوم/بالامس/السبت الماضى قضيت وقت فى	- Last Saturday, I spent many hours studying because I was preparing for the exam.
- At first, ... فى البداية	- At first, I found it difficult to remember new vocabulary.
- In the end, ... فى النهاية	- In the end I managed to remember the new words.
- I think what helped me succeed / be successful was ... اعتقد الشئ الذى ساعدنى لاكون ناجح	- I think what helped me succeed is hard work.
- Next time, I will.... فى المرة القادمة سوف	- Next time, I will try new learning ways to study well.

General Exercises on Lessons 5&6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To talk or behave in a way that gives someone confidence is to ....
   a. dislike b. discourage c. encourage d. annoy
2. I tried to catch the ball but I .... down.
   a. dropped b. fell c. felt d. succeeded
3. If you want to be successful, you should learn .... your mistakes.
   a. from b. of c. to d. on
4. I .... myself at the party last night.
   a. spent b. decided c. enjoyed d. agreed
5. A .... is something that a group of people, or a society, started doing a long time ago and still do now. SB
   a. tradition b. courage c. memory d. technology
6. After a ...., the children got tired of playing and wanted to go home.
   a. during b. when c. but d. while
7. The child learned to .... a bicycle.
   a. drive b. fly c. pedal d. throw

8. To be __________ is to have a good feeling about something you do.
   a. shy b. careful c. proud d. funny
9. Tourists like to visit Egypt because the weather is __________.
   a. bad b. perfect c. dangerous d. ugly
10. I love to visit the countryside to enjoy the beauty of __________.
   a. nature b. technology c. space d. towers
11. The people in our street are kind and helpful so we live in __________ with them.
   a. danger b. fight c. peace d. race
12. The student was __________ in passing all his exams.
   a. success b. successful c. succeed d. failure
13. Mohammed is polite and kind. He never hurts my __________.
   a. meaning b. results c. feelings d. experience
14. She wore a beautiful __________ made of gold.
   a. printer b. journal c. necklace d. dictionary
15. We are proud of the history and __________ of our country.
   a. rhythm b. culture c. process d. beads

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

traditions - encourages - proud - lazy - patience

My family is very important to me. My dad always (1) ______ us to learn and improve. I am (2) ______ of my family because we always try to do our best. We represent our family with kindness and respect. We also keep our family's (3) ______ and culture. My parents teach me the importance of (4) ______ and hard work. We always try to enjoy spending time together.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Rana and Reem are talking about how to bake a cake.

Rana : Hi Reem, how was your weekend?
Reem : It was great! Yesterday, I (1) ______________________________ the whole day trying to learn how to bake a cake.
Rana : Wow, that sounds amazing! How did it go?
Reem : At (2) __________, it was really difficult. I kept trying and I was about to stop.
Rana : Oh no! Did you (3) ______________________________ up?
Reem : No way! I kept trying. I watched a few more videos and followed the recipe carefully. In the end, the cake actually was delicious!
Rana : That's awesome! I think you can bake it better next time.
Reem : I agree! (4) ______ time, I will try another recipe. Maybe I'll try to decorate it.
Rana : I can't wait to try your next cake!

4 Write an email of 80 words to your friend telling him about.

(مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة)

"Your reflective journal"

Your name is Eyad and your email address is eyad@gmail.com .

Your friend's name is Ali and his email address is ali@yahoo.com

New Message

To : ______________________________ Cc Bcc

From : ______________________________

Subject : ______________________________

Send

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة البريد الإلكترونى:

Where did you go?

What did you learn?

What will you do next time?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

I went to the --

I learned that --

Next time, I will --

Review on Unit 7

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

tricky (adj)	مخادع/صعب/محير	naturally (adv)	بشكل طبيعى
sweet strawberry	حلو الفراولة	brain (n)	مخ
suggestions (n)	اقتراحات	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمى
experience (n)	تجربة حياتية	reduce (d)	يقلل/يخفض
natural (adj)	طبيعي	highlight (ed)	يظلل/يبرز/يلقى الضوء
eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة	underline (d)	يضع خط تحت
journal (n)	مفكرة يومية/مذكرات	focus (ed)	يركز
annoying (adj)	مزعج	encourage (d)	يشجع
rhythm (n)	ايقاع/تواتر / تناغم	represent (ed)	يرمز الى/يمثل
traditions (n)	تقاليد	appreciate (d)	يقدر/يثمن
proud (adj)	فخور	opinion (n)	رأى
patience (n)	صبر	connection (n)	اتصال
cell (n)	خلية الكائن الحي	connect (ed)	يتصل/يربط
active (adj)	نشيط/حيوى/عامل/فعال	explain (ed)	يفسر/يشرح
fact (n)	حقيقة		

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgotten
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
teach	يعلم	taught	taught
spend	يقضى وقت/يصرف مالا	spent	spent
keep	يحتفظ بـ/يبقى	kept	kept
give up	يستسلم	gave up	given up
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen

Language قواعد لغوية

Wh- object questions forms in the present and the past

1- Wh-questions in the present

- للسؤال عن شئ فى زمن المضارع البسيط باستخدام كلمة استفهام نستخدم:

كلمة استفهام + do + we / you / they / اسم جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل ?
كلمة استفهام + does + he / she / it / اسم مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Ex. What do you eat for lunch? I eat meat and rice.

Ex. Where does she live? She lives in Aswan.

- لاحظ يمكن أن نستخدم can بدلا من do/does فى المضارع البسيط:

Ex. What can you ride? Ex. I can ride a bike.

- ويمكن ايضا استخدام فعل يكون (am-is-are) verb to be فى السؤال فى المضارع اذا كنا نسال عن صفة او اسم

Ex. Why are you sad?

- يمكن ايضا السؤال باستخدام have/has got فى المضارع

Ex. What have you got? I have got a car.

Ex. What has he got? He has got a bike.

2- Wh-questions in the past

- للسؤال فى زمن الماضى البسيط:

كلمة استفهام + did + كل الضمائر + inf. مصدر الفعل ?

Ex. How often did you visit the park?

- لاحظ يمكن أن نستخدم could بدلا من did

Ex. What could you do when you were young?

Ex. I could count to ten.

- ويمكن ايضا استخدام فعل يكون (was-were) verb to be فى السؤال فى الماضى اذا كنا نسال عن صفة او اسم

Ex. Where were you? I was at the club.

Defining relative clauses عبارات الوصل المعرفة/المحددة

1 who (that) — for people

تحل محل اسم عاقل بمعنى (الذى/التى/الذين/اللاتى)

The woman who / that visited me in the hospital was very kind.

2 which (that) — for things / animals

تحل محل اسم غير عاقل
(شئ - حيوان) بمعنى (الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى)

I lost the book **which / that** she gave me.

3 where — for places

تستخدم للإشارة إلى المكان بمعنى (حيث)

This is **the school** **where** we learn.

4 when — for time

تستخدم للإشارة إلى الزمان بمعنى (عندما)

October is the month **when** I was born.

5 whose — for possession

تحل محل اسم مالك الشئ بمعنى (الذى / التى تملك)

That's **the boy** **whose** father is a teacher.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about learning

• السؤال والجواب عن التعلم:

Question	Answer
- What do you do to help you remember new vocabulary? ماذا تفعل ليساعدك ان تتذكر الكلمات الجديدة؟	- I always underline the most important words in a sentence. اضع دائما خط تحت اهم الكلمات فى الجملة. - I highlight all the new words in the text in yellow. اظلل كل الكلمات الجديدة فى النص باللون الأصفر.
- Do you keep a vocabulary notebook? هل تحتفظ بكراسة لمعانى الكلمات؟	- Yes, I do .. نعم.
- Why do you think this is a good idea? لماذا تعتقد أنها فكرة جيدة ؟	- Because I make notes on the most important information in it. لاننى ادون ملاحظات باهم المعلومات بها.

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات إنشائية و رسائل بريد إلكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1, 2

To learn something new, I first try to understand it. I underline or highlight important words and phrases to help me focus. I also make notes on the main points and vocabulary in my notebook. I often need to remind myself of things by reviewing my notes and trying to remember the information without looking at them. This helps me understand and remember the meaning of new words. Sometimes, I use flashcards to remind myself of important vocabulary.

Lessons 3, 4

Learning new words can be fun! Here are some easy tips: First, use flashcards. Write the word on one side and the meaning on the other. Next, try to use the word in a sentence. This helps you understand how it's used. Also, read books, magazines and articles. You'll find lots of new words there. Finally, talk to people! Use the new words when you speak. It might be a little difficult at first, but it helps you remember them.

Lessons 5, 6

New Message

To : ali@yahoo.com Cc Bcc
From : eyad@gmail.com
Subject : My reflective journal

Dear Ali,

How are you? I want to tell you about my reflective journal. It's a diary where I write about my thoughts and feelings. Yesterday, I went to the park with my friends. I learned that it's important to share things and be kind to others. I felt proud when I helped my friend find her lost toy. Next time, I will bring my toys to the park so we can play together. In the evening, I read a book about animals. I learned many interesting facts about elephants. I felt proud when I could tell my family about what I learned.

My best wishes

Yours,

Eyad

Send

Al Azhar Test

Recycling is very important for the environment. We can recycle many materials. We can save paper by printing on both sides of the paper. This way we can reduce waste. We should look after the environment.

Test Unit 7

Studying effectively can make learning much easier and more enjoyable. Start by planning your study sessions. Make notes during class, underline and highlight key information. Create mind maps to connect ideas together. This helps you understand and remember information better. Regularly review your notes and take breaks to refresh your mind. Keeping a vocabulary notebook can improve your understanding and communication skills.

Al Azhar Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Eating --------- food gives you the energy you need.
   a. unhealthy b. fast c. junk d. healthy
2. Regular --------- strengthens your heart.
   a. test b. color c. exercise d. life

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Hala and Sara are talking about hobbies.

Hala : Hello! What is your favorite hobby, Sara?

Sara : I like football.

Hala : How ① -- do you practice it?

Sara : I practice it ② -- a week.

Hala : When do you play it ?

Sara : I play it ③ -- the morning.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. --------- can make our lives easier and more comfortable.
   a. Pollution b. Technology c. Unhealthy d. Noise
2. I use my --------- to write about my thoughts and feelings.
   a. journal b. necklace c. waste d. suggestions
3. Our teacher always --------- the lesson in an enjoyable way.
   a. believes b. explains c. stays d. agrees
4. Ten o'clock is the time --------- I go to bed every day.
   a. when b. where c. which d. who
5. How did you --------- to school?
   a. went b. goes c. going d. go

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Technology is very important in our modern life. It makes our life easy and comfortable. Computers, mobile phones, and the internet are examples of modern technology. We can use them to watch videos and play games.

We can also go on the internet and **chat** with our friends. We can send emails and make friends in other countries. The internet can also give us information to help us with our school subjects.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is technology very important in our modern life?

----

2. Modern technology can help us to spend a happy time. How?

----

3. How can modern technology be useful to students?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Modern technology can help people to make --------- in different parts of the world.
   a. videos b. friends c. subjects d. games
5. The underlined word chat means ---------.
   a. talk with b. send to c. look after d. get to

5 Read and correct the underlined word(s):

1. What do you study yesterday? (-----------------)
2. A: How often do you playing tennis? (-----------------)
3. The man who mobile is expensive is rich. (-----------------)
4. The school is the place which we learn. (-----------------)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة)

"Recycling"

Test on Unit 7

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Studying can sometimes feel like a big .... to climb.
   a. mountain b. game c. subject d. story
2. You should find the best .... to learn.
   a. color b. time c. toy d. film
3. Some people study in the morning, while others .... the afternoon.
   a. dislike b. hate c. represent d. prefer

B- Listen and complete:

4. Make sure you have everything you need, like .... and pens,
5. Take short .... for about 20-30 minutes.
6. Choose a .... place where you can concentrate.

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Is there a .... between good health and doing exercise.
   a. correction b. connection c. pollution d. translation
2. The gold medal ....the prize for the winner.
   a. predicts b. damages c. represents d. reduces

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

transportation - reducing - recycle - natural - increasing

We can all help protect our environment by making small changes in our daily lives. We can start by (1) ....waste. This means throwing away less trash. We can also (2) .... paper, plastic, and glass instead of throwing them away. Saving energy is another important step. We can also use (3) .... sunlight to light our homes during the day instead of turning on the lights. Finally, we can choose to walk, cycle, or take public (4) .... to school instead of driving. This helps reduce pollution and keeps our air cleaner.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and it improves our language. You should read in a <u>quiet</u> place. You should read different topics. To remember

what you read, underline or circle the important points with your pen. Try to discuss what you read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for enjoyment just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for **their** study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails and letters that we receive.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The opposite of the underlined word "**quiet**" is ---------.
   a. calm b. good c. better d. noisy
2. Some people read to feel happy. They read for ---------.
   a. enjoyment b. exams c. research d. work

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

----

4. How can you remember what you read?

----

5. Why do people read?

----

6. What does the underlined word "**their**" refer to?

C. Writing

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. This is the park --------- we visited last week.
   a. when b. which c. where d. who
2. Where does he ---------?
   a. living b. lives c. live d. lived

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. That's the teacher --------- (which) teaches us maths.
2. This is my new bag --------- (who) I bought for school.
3. The farmer --------- (who) farm is big is a kind man.
4. Why --------- (are) you late yesterday?

7 Complete the following dialog:

Osama and Hamza are talking about the human body.

Osama : Hi Hamza! What are your reading about?

Hamza : I'm reading about the human ❶ ....

Osama : Wow, the human body is amazing!

Hamza : It really is! It's like a super complex machine.

Osama : What makes it so special?

Hamza : Well, everything starts with tiny ❷ ....
They're building the whole body.

Osama : So, how do all these cells work together?

Hamza : They ❸ .... and communicate with each other, just like a network.

Osama : And what about the ❹ ....?

Hamza : That's the control center! It sends signals to all parts of the body, telling them what to do.

8 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

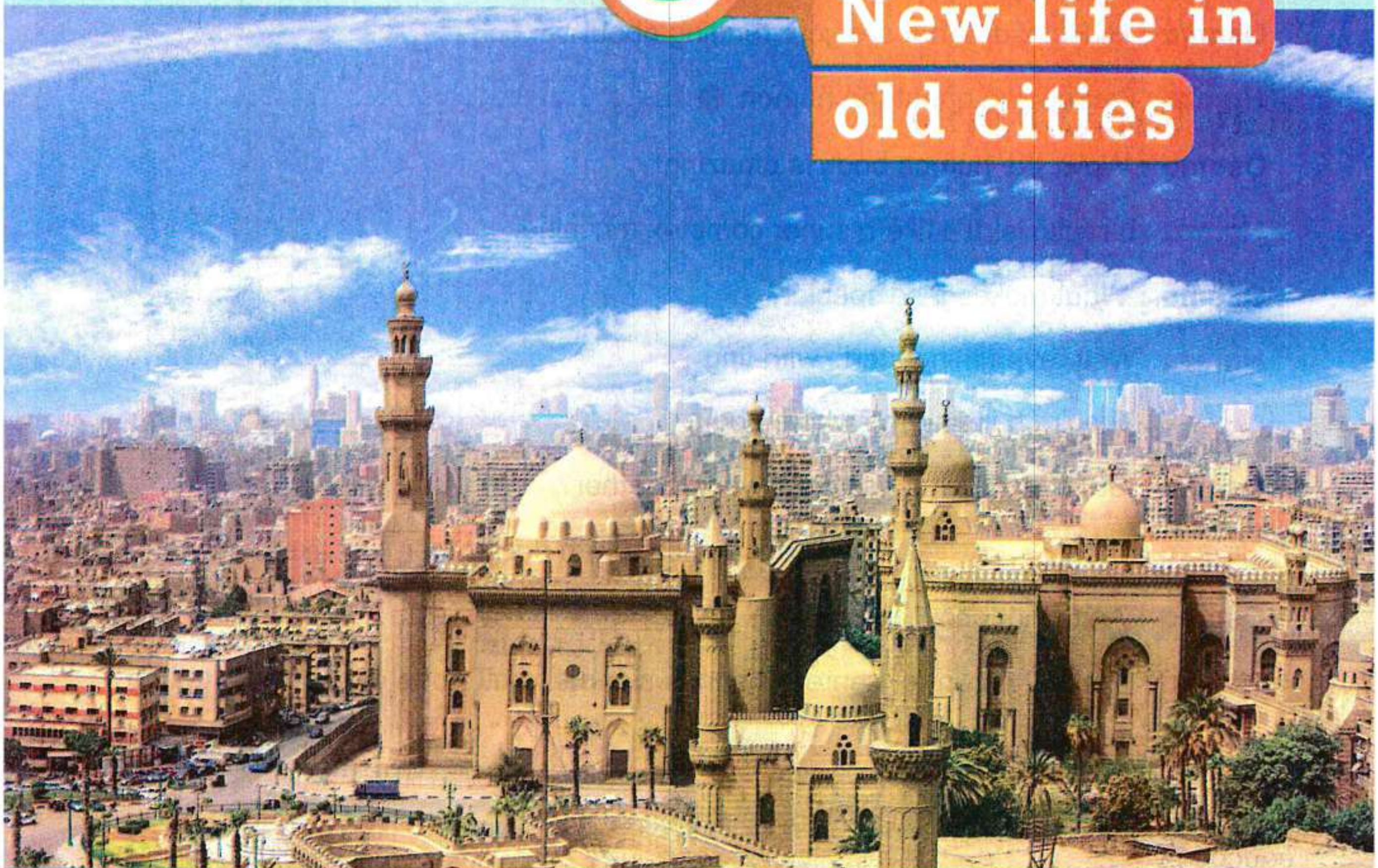
(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"How to study your lessons"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

New Hello! — Beyond Words

Unit 8 New life in old cities



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

- An article about the importance of city planning.
- Blog posts about helping out at different places.
- A story about twins helping their community.

Writing:

A reflective journal entry on the impact of your town or city on the environment.

Listening:

- A conversation about issues affecting cities and towns.
- A conversation about how a street market has changed over 25 years.

Speaking:

Discussing a solution for a problem in your town or city

Language:

- The past simple and the past continuous.
- The past continuous with when and while.

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

countryside (n.)	الريف	planner (n.)	مُخَطِّط / القائم بالتخطيط
facilities (n.)	مَرافق/تجهيزات	leader (n.)	قائد
growth (n.)	نُمو/زيادة	enclosure (n.)	حظيرة محاطه بسياج
construction (n.)	أعمال البناء	hiking path (n.)	ممشًى
population (n.)	السُّكان/تعداد السكان	playful (adj.)	مَرِّح/كثير اللعب
city planning (n.)	تخطيط المُدُن	plan (v. ned / n.)	يخطط/خطة

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

safety (n.)	الأمان/السلامة	monument (n.)	اثر تاريخي
community (n.)	مجتمع	birdhouses (n.)	بيوت الطيور
quality (n.)	نوعية/جودة	shy (adj.)	خجول
education (n.)	التعليم	healthy (adj.)	صِحي/سليم
space (n.)	مساحة	safe (adj.)	آمِن/في أمان
solution (n.)	حل	display (v. ed/n.)	يعرض/عَرض
neighborhood (n.)	منطقة/ضاحية	volunteer (v. ed/n.)	يتطوع/متطوع
tournament (n.)	دورة رياضية/بطولة	protect (v. ed)	يحمي
artifacts (n.)	قِطَع أثرية	respect (v. ed)	يحترم
court (n.)	ملعب	promise (v. d)	يَعِد (يعطي وعدا)
organizer (n.)	منظم/القائم بالتنظيم	last (v. ed)	يستمر (المدة)/يدوم
experience (n.)	خبرة أو تجربة حياتية	discover (v. ed)	يكتشف
article (n.)	مقالة	provide (v. d)	يتيح/يوفر
title (n.)	عنوان (كتاب أو مقالة)	improve (v. d)	يحسن/يطور
program (n.)	برنامج	open (v. ed/adj)	يفتح/مفتوح
confident (adj.)	واثق من نفسه		

Expressions & Prepositions

make sure	يتأكد	home to	موطن ل
feel proud	يشعر بالفخر	don't worry about	لا داعي للقلق بخصوص
make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة	pick up trash	يلتقط القمامة
keep in touch	يبقى على اتصال	as well as	بالاضافة الى
at the same time	في نفس الوقت	take a photo	يلتقط صورة
move to	ينتقل إلى (يعزّل)	Not long after that	بعد ذلك بقليل
nervous about	متوتر بشأن	I can't wait to ...	لا استطيع الانتظار حتى..
close to	قريب من	say goodbye to	يودع

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
growth (n.) نمو/زيادة	increase/rise	decrease/fall انخفاض
construction (n.) بناء	building/creation	destruction/ruining هدم
safe (adj.) آمِن	protected/secure	threatened/endangered مُعرض للخطر
healthy (adj.) صِحي	well	unhealthy غير صحى
last (v.) يدوم/يستمر	continue/remain	stop/end ينتهي

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-th / -ion / -er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	growth
		construction
		leader
		organizer
-ful	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	playful
-y	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	healthy
-ty	تحول الصفة إلى اسم	safety

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
grow	ينمو/يزداد	grew	grown
build	يبني	built	built
become	يصبح	became	become
drive	يقود	drove	driven
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
feed	يُطعِم	fed	fed
lie (lying)	يرقد/يتمدد	lay	lain
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
rise	يشرق	rose	risen

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1) arrive (v. d): يصل

• يليها حروف الجر in / at عندما يأتي بعدها مكان أو زمان كما يلي:

• arrive in

• يستخدم بعدها حرف الجر: in عندما يتبعها إسم دولة او مدينة، أو عندما يليها عام أو شهر :

Ex. I first arrived in London in 2000.

• arrive at

• ويستخدم بعدها حرف الجر at عندما يتبعها مكان صغير مثل مدينة صغيرة او مطار (مبنى)، او توقيت محدد (ساعة):

Ex. We arrived at Cairo airport at 9 pm.

2) Not only .... but also .... ليس فقط ..... ولكن أيضا ....

• إذا بدأت الجملة بالتعبير Not only يأتي بعده صيغة inversion (فعل مساعد يليه فاعل):

Ex. Not only did I help the animals, but I also learned about animal care.

Ex. Not only is he polite, but also he is clever.

Ex. Not only does she sing beautifully, but she also draws very well.

3) hard / hardly

• hard (adj.)

• يمكن استخدم كلمة hard كصفة بمعنى (صَلب /صعب /شاق/ مجد) ويتبعها اسم موصوف:

Ex. I dug a hole in the hard ground.

Ex. These are hard questions

Ex. This job requires hard work.

Ex. Ahmed is a hard worker.

• hard (adv.)

• كما يمكن أن تستخدم أيضا كظرف (يسبقها فعل)، وتكون بمعنى (بِجِد):

Ex. Work hard in order to succeed.

Ex. She ran as hard as she could.

• **hardly (adv.)**

• أما كلمة **hardly** فتستخدم دائما كظرف بمعني (بالكاد / تقريبا لا)، وتعطي معنى منفي في الغالب:

Ex. I can hardly walk any farther.

Ex. I hardly know that man.

4 make + object + adj. / inf.

إذا جاء الفعل **make** متبوعا بمفعول به، يأتي بعد المفعول به إما صفة وإما فعل في المصدر بدون (**to**):

Ex. Her loud voice made me angry.

Ex. My father made me wash the car

5 spend + time / مدة زمنية + v –ing:

- عندما يأتي الفعل **spend** متبوعا بكلمة **time** أو بمدة زمنية، في هذه الحالة يأتي بعده صيغة **v + ing**:

Ex. We spent an amazing day volunteering at a national park.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We arrived -------- 8 a.m. before the museum opened.

   a. to b. in c. on d. at

2. The train arrived -------- Aswan very late at night.

   a. in b. on c. for d. to

3. Not only -------- to bed late, but he also forgot to do his homework.

   a. Ali went b. Ali did go c. did Ali go d. did go Ali

4. When I left for school, it was raining -------- .

   a. hardly b. hard c. hardy d. heavy

5. The teacher made the student -------- the paragraph again.

   a. to write b. writing c. wrote d. write

Reading

SB Page (17)

استمع إلى النصوص

Planning for the future



City planning is very important for small cities in Egypt. It helps city leaders[1] decide how to use land. As the population[2] grows and more people need to live in cities, planning[3] helps towns and cities plan carefully to make sure that all the new people have a good place to live.

One part of city planning is building new homes, schools, and parks. Construction[4] is important: with more people moving to cities, we need more houses. Town and city planners[5] must make sure that new homes are safe[6] for the community[7].

Another important job is creating hospitals, shops, and other community areas, and thinking about where to put them. These facilities[8] help improve[9] the quality[10] of life for the people who live there. For example, parks provide[11] a place for families to relax and play, and schools are needed for education[12].

Many small cities are near beautiful open areas. City planning thinks carefully about the countryside[13]. We need to protect[14] the environment[15] in these spaces as well as build homes and facilities for future population growth[16]. This way we can keep the environment healthy[17] and provide a nice place for people to enjoy nature.

So, city planning[18] is very important for all small cities, not just in Egypt, but everywhere[19]. By planning carefully, cities can become better places to live in and respect[20] the countryside at the same time[21].

١. القادة
٢. السكان
٣. التخطيط
٤. البناء
٥. المخططون
٦. آمن
٧. المجتمع
٨. المرافق
٩. يحسن
١٠. نوعية/جودة
١١. يوفر/يتيح
١٢. التعليم
١٣. الريف
١٤. يحمي
١٥. البيئة
١٦. نمو/ازدياد
١٧. صحي
١٨. تخطيط المدن
١٩. في كل مكان
٢٠. يحترم
٢١. في نفس الوقت

Reading Skill **مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)**

1. Which of the following can be a good title for the text? أي من الآتي يمكن أن يكون عنوانا مناسبا للنص؟
   a. The problem of housing b. The importance of building big cities
   c. The importance of city planning. d. The overpopulation problem.
2. Summarize the third paragraph in one sentence. لخص الفقرة الثالثة من النص في جملة واحدة.
3. From the text, we infer that city planning is very important, especially in ....

Writing Skill **مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد في موضوع الكتابة)**

1. City planning is very important for small cities in Egypt. – إن تخطيط المدن هام جدا للمدن الصغيرة في مصر.
2. Planners must make sure that new homes are safe for the community. – يجب ان يتأكد المخططون من أن المنازل الجديدة آمنة للمجتمع.
3. Good facilities help improve the quality of life for the people. – تساعد المرافق الجيدة على تحسين جودة الحياة للناس.
4. Parks provide a place for families to relax and play. – توفر الحدائق مكانا للعائلات للاسترخاء واللعب.

Answers:
1. c. The importance of city planning.
2. We can make cities and the countryside better places by planning carefully.
3. small cities

SB Page (18)

This week we are sharing our volunteering experiences. Tell us about your experience!



a.

Last summer, I volunteered[1] at the zoo every weekend, through our school volunteer program. I was so excited because I love animals, but I was also nervous[2] about meeting new people. Everyone was friendly though. I started by feeding the monkeys. They were very playful[3]! Here's a photo I took of them. I also helped clean the lions' enclosure[4]. The lions were usually lying in the sun. By the end of the summer, I felt proud[5]. Not only did I get to help the animals, but I also learned a lot about animal care, and made new friends. Saying goodbye to my new friends was hard[6], but we promised to keep in touch[7] and do it again next year.

Elias, Salzburg, Austria[8]

١. تطوّع
٢. متوتر
٣. مَرِح
٤. حظيرة
٥. فخور
٦. صعب
٧. يبقى على اتصال
٨. دولة النمسا



b.

Last week, I volunteered at the museum[1] with my school history club. I love history and helping people, so I was excited! On Saturday, we arrived at 8:00 a.m. before the museum opened, and helped make some museum displays[2]. Then the museum opened! Not long after that, I saw a group of younger kids who needed some help. I helped them draw pictures of their favorite artifacts[3]. Some kids were shy[4] at first, but when they started coloring, they became more confident[5]. By the end of the day, I realized how much I loved helping others discover[6] history. I can't wait to volunteer again!

Lamees, Egypt

١. متحف
٢. عروض
٣. قطع أثرية
٤. خجول
٥. واثق من نفسه
٦. يكتشف



c.

Last term[1], our class spent an amazing[2] day volunteering at a national park. On Saturday, we left really early. The sun was still rising! We drove to the park in our school bus and met the park organizers[3]. Our first job was to clean up the hiking path[4]. There was so much to do, we were still picking up trash[5] at lunchtime! All the trash made me sad, but it also felt great to do something to keep the park beautiful. I learned that our park is home to[6] some important birds, and in the afternoon, we built birdhouses. At the end of the day, the park organizers told us that our work helps protect[7] the wildlife[8] and the environment.

Alex, Canada

١. فصل دراسى
٢. مدهش
٣. منظمون
٤. ممشًى
٥. يلتقط القمامة
٦. موطن لـ
٧. يحمي
٨. الحياة البرية







Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. The .... is a great place to go on vacation.
   a. factory b. station c. countryside d. school
2. There are lots of .... in our town, like a hospital, a swimming pool, and a basketball court.
   a. facilities b. abilities c. population d. leaders
3. The city's .... helped lots of people find jobs in the new markets.
   a. truth b. death c. pool d. growth
4. There is a lot of .... happening in our neighborhood because they are building a new apartment building.
   a. collection b. construction c. function d. vacation
5. India has the largest .... in the world.
   a. pollution b. population c. holiday d. moon
6. City .... is really important to make a city a nice place to live in.
   a. planning b. closing c. pollution d. chemicals
7. We need to plan our towns and cities to make them .... and nice to live in.
   a. dangerous b. safe c. crowded d. polluted
8. City planning is .... for the environment.
   a. bad b. helpless c. good d. careless

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. A good .... is able to guide others and solve problems.
   a. printer b. leader c. countryside d. waiter
10. My cat is very .... and loves to run and play with the kids.
    a. grateful b. painful c. hateful d. playful
11. The city .... designed a new park near our house.
    a. planner b. drawer c. painter d. baker
12. On our farm, the animals are kept in their .... during the day.
    a. environments b. communities c. enclosures d. qualities
13. We enjoyed the view while walking in the .... path in the forest.
    a. touching b. hiking c. planning d. growing
14. The .... of the food at the restaurant is really excellent.
    a. quality b. planning c. growth d. eating
15. Wearing a helmet is important for the construction workers' ....
    a. party b. cruelty c. poverty d. safety
16. The .... worked together to make our city a better place.
    a. planning b. activity c. community d. quality

17. My brother won the first place in the chess __________ last month.
 a. tournament b. course c. champion d. museum
18. Don't go near the animals – it isn't __________.
 a. dangerous b. bad c. safe d. unhealthy
19. My sister decided to __________ at the local charity to help homeless children.
 a. respect b. volunteer c. construct d. organize

Expressions and Prepositions Exercises

20. You should feel __________ of your country; Egypt.
 a. asleep b. ashamed c. shy d. proud
21. Volunteering is a great way to __________ new friends.
 a. hike b. give c. make d. do
22. Before she moved to another city, she promised to __________ in touch with us.
 a. keep b. make c. do d. go

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

facilities - birdhouses - growth - countryside - construction

The population in cities is growing quickly. This means that more (1) ______ is needed to provide homes and other buildings. This growth requires new (2) ______ like schools, hospitals, and parks. While cities get bigger, some people move to the (3) ______ to find more space and a quieter life. Managing this (4) ______ is important to make sure everyone has what they need.

3 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Building new cities"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. What does building new cities involve?
2. Why do we build new cities?
3. Why is it important to plan new cities carefully?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Building new cities is a big project.** ______
- **It involves planning, designing, and constructing homes, roads, and other facilities.** ______
- **Cities are built to provide people with places to live, work, and play.** ______
- **New cities are sustainable and environmentally friendly.** ______

Language قواعد لغوية

The past simple and the past continuous الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Form التكوين

التصريف الثانى للفعل + فاعل (كل الضمائر)

- يتكون الماضي البسيط من الفاعل (مفرد أو جمع) متبوعا بالتصريف الثاني للفعل. وتنقسم الافعال الى افعال منتظمة وافعال غير منتظمة.

اولا : الافعال المنتظمة وهل الافعال التى يضاف اليها d / ed / ied فى التصريف الثانى للفعل كما يلى:

visit ⟶ visited   talk ⟶ talked   start ⟶ started

١. اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) يضاف لها (d) فقط، وليس (ed):

move ⟶ moved   like ⟶ liked

٢. اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوقا بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير في الفعل ثم نضيف له (ed):

stop ⟶ stopped   plan ⟶ planned

٣. اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (y) مسبوقا بحرف ساكن نقوم بتحويل حرف ال (y) إلى (i) ثم نضيف له (ed):

study ⟶ studied   copy ⟶ copied

- أما الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبوقا بحرف متحرك فنضيف لها فقط (ed) دون تغيير حرف ال (y):

play ⟶ played   enjoy ⟶ enjoyed

- أما بالنسبة للأفعال غير المنتظمة فيُحفَظ تصريفها الثاني لاستخدامه في الماضي البسيط، لأنها لا تخضع لقاعدة.

grow ⟶ grew   buy ⟶ bought

Negative النفى

- عند نفي الجملة في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

الفعل في المصدر + did not / didn't + فاعل

Ex. I did not / didn't meet Ali at the club yesterday.

- لاحظ يمكن ان ننفى الجملة فى الماضى ب never قبل الفعل ولكن يبقى الفعل فى التصريف الثانى:

Ex. I never met Ali at the club.

Question السؤال

- عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

? تكملة الجملة + الفعل في المصدر + الفاعل + did + (أداة الاستفهام)

Ex. Where did you meet Ali yesterday?

- يمكن أن نبدا السؤال ب Did كما يلى

Ex. Did you go to the park last Friday?

- Yes, I did. اجابة فى الاثبات - No, I didn't. اجابة فى النفى

الاستخدام

١. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث وقع وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. My father bought a new car last week.

٢. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة الحدوث في الماضي:

Ex. When I was young, I visited my grandparents every weekend.

٣. يستخدم الماضي البسيط عند وجود تعبير زمني أو أي إشارة زمنية تدل على الماضي، مثل:

yesterday / last / ago / أي توقيت زمني سابق

Ex. My father drove to the farm two hours ago.

٤. يستخدم الماضي البسيط عند سَرد أحداث متتابعة وقعت في الماضي:

Ex. On my way to the club yesterday, I fell down and broke my leg.

Past time expressions التعبيرات الدالة على زمن الماضى

- تستخدم الكلمات الزمنية التالية مع زمن الماضي البسيط لتحديد زمن حدوث الفعل:

yesterday	أمس	once	ذات مرة
in the past	فى الماضي	...ago	منذ .... (يأتي قبلها فترة زمنية)
in (2010)	فى عام (٢٠١٠)	this morning	هذا الصباح
last...	... السابق		

Ex. I visited the museum last night.

Ex. We bought a car four years ago.

Past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

Form التكوين

- يتكون الماضي المستمر من:

I / He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + was + v –ing
We / You /They / فاعل جمع + were + v -ing

Ex. She was reading an interesting story the whole night.

Ex. We were playing football when it started to rain.

- اذا انتهى الفعل بحرف e غير منطوق يحذف عند اضافة ing:

make ⟶ making take ⟶ taking

- اما اذا كان حرف e منطوق لا يحذف:

see ⟶ seeing agree ⟶ agreeing

اذا انتهى الفعل بحرفى ie تحذف وتحول الى y :

lie ⟶ lying die ⟶ dying

Negative النفى

• عند نفي جملة في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

فاعل مفرد + was not / wasn't + v –ing

فاعل جمع + were not / weren't + v -ing

Ex. I was not / wasn't sleeping at 4 pm.

Ex. The children were not / weren't watching TV at 5.

Question السؤال

• عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

(أداة الاستفهام) + was + فاعل مفرد + v –ing + تكملة الجملة + ?

(أداة الاستفهام) + were + فاعل جمع + v –ing + تكملة الجملة + ?

Ex. What was your father doing when you arrived?

Ex. Were you sleeping when I called?

Usage الاستخدام

١. يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدوث أثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

Ex. At 7 pm yesterday, the children were doing their homework.

٢. يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث طويل (يستغرق وقتا) كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع أثناءه حدث آخر قصير (لا يستغرق وقتا)، وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم (while أثناء) أو (when عندما) طبقا للصيغة التالية:

While + الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل) + , + الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع)

When + الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع) + , + الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل)

وإذا جاء الرابط when / while في منتصف الجملة، لا نستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين

Ex. The phone rang while we were studying.

Ex. She was driving when I called her.

Notes

١. نستخدم الماضي البسيط وليس الماضي المستمر، مع الأفعال التي لا تستخدم في الاستمرار، وهي الأفعال التي تعبر عن حالة أو شعور وليس عن حدث، ومن امثلة هذه الأفعال:

want / like / hate / need / see

Ex. When I was young, I liked milk. (~~NOT: I was liking~~)

٢. يستخدم الماضي المستمر مع الأفعال التي استغرقت وقتا في حدوثها، أما الأفعال اللحظية التي لا تستغرق وقتا في حدوثها فنستخدم معها الماضي البسيط:

Ex. While he was running after the bus, he dropped his pen.

Ex. While the children were playing with the ball, they smashed my window.

Past simple	Past continuous
يصف فعل بدأ وانتهى فى الماضى	يصف فعل فى منتصف الحدوث فى الماضى
عند وجود فعلين فى الماضى فان الفعل الرئيسى يكون فى الماضى البسيط	والفعل الاخر ماضى مستمر
On Saturday, we woke up really early.	The sun was shining.
يستخدم مع افعال الشعور والتفكير والاحساس like, need, hate, see	لا يستخدم مع هذه الافعال
يستخدم ليعبر عن العادات والافعال المتكررة فى الماضى حدث قصير	لا يستخدم للتعبير عن العادات والافعال المتكررة حدث طويل

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We .... to the park and met the park organizers.
   a. went b. were going c. go d. are going
2. We were still .... up trash at lunchtime!
   a. pick b. picked c. picking d. picks
3. Last Saturday morning, the volunteers .... early at the park.
   a. arrive b. arrived c. were arriving d. were arrived
4. When we woke up, the sun was still ....
   a. risen b. rose c. rise d. rising
5. I .... a group of younger kids who needed some help.
   a. see b. were seeing c. saw d. seen
6. Last year, I .... at our local zoo every weekend.
   a. volunteer b. volunteered c. volunteering d. volunteers

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. I .... a nice film yesterday and enjoyed it very much.
   a. watch b. watches c. was watching d. watched
8. My mother .... read the new magazine last night.
   a. isn't b. didn't c. weren't d. doesn't
9. My sister .... a delicious cake last night. I enjoyed it so much.
   a. made b. was making c. didn't make d. is making
10. I went to the zoo last Friday and .... some animals there.
   a. was feeding b. feed c. fed d. was fed

11. I .... my dinner last night because I wasn't hungry.
    a. had b. didn't have c. was having d. wasn't having
12. Were you .... chess when I called you yesterday afternoon?
    a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
13. My sister .... her bed when I arrived. So I helped her.
    a. was making b. made c. makes d. is making
14. While I was doing my homework last night, the lights .... out.
    a. were going b. go c. went d. was going
15. I .... my friend Ali at the sports club yesterday.
    a. meeting b. was meeting c. meet d. met
16. .... I was working in the garden, it started to rain.
    a. Which b. While c. What d. Where
17. While she was working on her computer, it suddenly .... working.
    a. stopping b. was stopping c. stops d. stopped
18. .... you go to the cinema last Friday?
    a. Did b. Were c. Are d. Do
19. .... she watching TV when her father arrived?
    a. Does b. Is c. Was d. Did
20. Did you see Ali at school yesterday? – No, I ....
    a. didn't b. wasn't c. don't d. weren't

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. I .... (watch) movies on TV all day yesterday.
2. Mariam .... (was having) a cat called Felix when she was a child.
3. We .... (stay) at my uncle's farm last weekend.
4. The tennis tournament .... (last) a week.
5. When the volunteers arrived at the park, it was .... (rained) hard.
6. We went to the mall and .... (were buying) a present for mom's birthday.

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. While I .... (take) a shower, my friend Ahmed called me.
8. I was writing an email to my cousin when you .... (phone).
9. The film was really boring and I .... (not like) it at all.
10. When I woke up, I thought it was raining, but in fact it .... (doesn't).

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your town

• السؤال والاجابة عن مدينتك:

Question	Answer
- What is your town like? كيف تبدو مدينتك؟	- My town, Aswan, is a small city in the south of Egypt. مدينتي أسوان هي مدينة صغيرة في جنوب مصر.
- Is it close to the sea or the mountains? هل هي قريبة من البحر او الجبال؟	- No, it's close to the River Nile. لا. هي قريبة لنهر النيل.
- What's the most famous place, building, or monument in your town? ما هو أشهر مكان أو مبنى أو نُصب تذكاري في مدينتك؟	- We have the temple of Philae and the High Dam. لدينا معبد فيلة والسد العالي.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We have a big .... for the dogs in the backyard of our house.
   a. flat b. enclosure c. apartment d. fort
2. The .... of the new bridge will take two years.
   a. pollution b. question c. destruction d. construction
3. We need to form a .... group to discuss neighborhood problems.
   a. community b. country c. motorbike d. world
4. For your ...., it's important to always wear a seat belt while driving.
   a. display b. account c. safety d. activity
5. The .... of Egypt is over 110 million people.
   a. construction b. population c. information d. education
6. We .... a movie when the phone suddenly rang.
   a. watched b. are watching c. watch d. were watching
7. While my father was working in the garden, he .... a knife in the grass.
   a. found b. was finding c. finds d. is finding
8. My sister .... to school yesterday because she was ill.
   a. wasn't going b. didn't go c. doesn't go d. isn't going
9. Two years ago, I .... to learn French.
   a. am deciding b. decide c. was deciding d. decided

10. I didn't see your message because I ---------- my lessons.
   a. studied   b. am studying   c. was studying   d. study

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

planned - animals - hiking - explore - views

Last weekend, we went on a picnic to the forest. The (1) ------- path was really cool! It went through the forest with pretty (2) ------- of the mountains. There were fun things to see along the way, like (3) ------- and old buildings. The people who (4) ------- the path did a great job! It was a lot of fun to go there with friends, and we laughed and played a lot.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Sami and Hani are talking about their cities.

Sami : Hi! Where are you from?
Hani : Hi! I'm from Cairo. What about you?
Sami : I'm from Alexandria. What's Cairo (1) ------------------------------?
Hani : It has many old buildings and streets. What about Alexandria?
Sami : Alexandria is (2) -------------- to the sea. What do tourists visit in Cairo?
Hani : They visit the Egyptian Museum in Cairo . It has many ancient (3) -------.
Sami : Great! Are there any places to visit in Alexandria?
Hani : Of course. You can (4) --------- the Qaitbay Fort and many other places.
Sami : Thanks. I will go there when I visit Alexandria. Goodbye.
Hani : Goodbye.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on.

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"volunteering"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. What is volunteering?
2. What do you think of volunteering?
3. Where can you volunteer?
4. What can you learn from volunteering?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **Volunteering is a great way to** ------------------------------.
- **You can make a difference in your community** ------------------------.
- **It's a chance to** --.
- **It's a rewarding experience** --------------------------------.

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 20-23

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

sidewalk (n.)	رصيف للمُشاة	sign (n.)	لافتة/علامة
subway station (n.)	محطة مترو أنفاق	underground parking	موقف سيارات تحت الارض
teens (n.)	المراهقون		
teen (n.)	مُراهِق	outdated (adj.)	قديم
pollution (n.)	التلوُّث	bother (v. ed)	يزعِج/يضايق

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

tasks (n.)	مهام	frustrating (adj.)	مسبب للإحباط
basketball court (n.)	ملعب كرة السَّلَّة	frustrated (adj.)	شاعر بالإحباط
apartment buildings (n.)	مباني سكنية	positive (adj.)	إيجابي
activities (n.)	أنشطة	creative (adj.)	مبدع
college (n.)	كُليَّة	creatively (adv.)	بإبداع
open spaces (n.)	مساحات مفتوحة	grocery (n.)	البقالة
customer (n.)	زبون/عميل	store (n.)	محل
market stall (n.)	كُشك بالسوق	souvenir (n.)	هدية تذكارية
owner (n.)	مالِك/صاحب	memory (n.)	ذكرى
interviewer (n.)	مُحاوِر	wish (v. ed)	يتمنى
Europe (n)	اوروبا	mention (v. ed)	يذكُر
solution (n)	حل	suggest (v. ed)	يقترح
mind map (v. / n.)	يخطط ذهنيا/خريطة ذهنية	assign (v. ed)	يحدد/يعيِّن
closed (adj.)	مُغلَق	comment (n. / v. ed)	تعليق/يعلِّق
similar (adj.)	متشابِه	offer (ed)	يقدم

Expressions & Prepositions

there's nowhere to	لا يوجد مكان لكي	hang out	يقضي وقتا بالخارج
It sounds like + جملة	يبدو أن	join in	يشارك
there needs to be	يجب أن يكون هناك	write down	يدوّن
put things right	يصحح الأمور	come over	يأتي في زيارة
create a mind map	ينشئ خريطة ذهنية	over the years	على مر السنين
draw a plan	يرسم خطة	sounds like	يبدو مثل
make a presentation	يقدم عرض تقديمي	(be) able to	قادر على
make lots of money	يجني الكثير من الأموال		

Synonyms & Antonyms الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
outdated (adj.) قديم	old-fashioned	new/modern حديث/مُعاصِر
bother (v. ed) يزعِج/يضايق	upset / disturb	please يُسعِد
frustrating (adj.) محبط	disappointing / discouraging	encouraging /inspiring مُشجِّع
positive (adj.) إيجابي	useful / productive	negative/useless سلبي

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	closed
-ive	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	creative
-ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	building
-ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	transportation
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	exactly

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
know	يعرف/يعلم	knew	known
write	يكتب	wrote	written
come	يأتي	came	come
hang out	يتسكع	hung out	hung out
give	يعطي	gave	given
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
lose	يفقد	lost	lost

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 which ما/الذي

- يمكن استخدام **which** كضمير وصل يعود على الفكرة التي تعبر عنها جملة كاملة تسبقه، ولابد ان تسبقه فاصلة في هذا الاستخدام:

Ex. They're building new apartment buildings everywhere, which is great.

Ex. One of the boys kept making noise, which bothered the teacher.

2 wish + فعل في الماضي البسيط

- عند تمنّي حدوث شيء في المضارع، أو تمنّي تغيير وضع موجود في المضارع، نستخدم فعل في الماضي البسيط بعد الفعل wish:

Ex. I wish we had more parks to hang out in.

Ex. I wish I didn't have to go to school today.

3 there's / there was + اسم + v-ing:

- عندما تبدأ الجملة بالتعبير there's/there was متبوعا باسم، يأتي بعد الاسم صيغة v-ing:

Ex. There's a boy playing in the court.

Ex. There was a sign saying it's not safe.

4 no + اسم = not any + اسم:

- يمكن نفي الجملة باستخدام (اسم + no) مسبوقة بفعل مثبت، أو باستخدام (اسم + any) مسبوقة بفعل منفي:

Ex. I have no money. = I don't have any money.

Ex. There were no students. = There were not any students.

Ex. There's nowhere to play. = There's not anywhere to play.

5 There's nowhere / no time / nothing to + inf.:

- إذا بدأت الجملة بالتعبير (there's/there was) متبوعا بإحدى الكلمات (nothing/nowhere/no time)، فإنه يأتي بعد هذه التعبيرات فعل في المصدر مسبوقا بـ to:

Ex. There's nowhere to play football.

Ex. There's no time to waste.

Ex. There's nothing to care about.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I got top marks in the exam, ... made me very happy.
   a. when   b. who   c. which   d. where
2. I don't have any money. I wish I .... some money.
   a. had   b. have   c. am having   d. was having
3. Listen! There's a bird .... in my window.
   a. is singing   b. sang   c. was singing   d. singing
4. Unfortunately, there's .... to help us here.
   a. any one   b. no one   c. any   d. no
5. Unfortunately, there's .... to help us here.
   a. not anyone   b. not no one   c. no anyone   d. no
6. It was getting late and there was nowhere .... the night.
   a. spending   b. spends   c. to spend   d. spent

Reading

SB Page (20)

استمع إلى النصوص



population growth



facilities



pollution



transportation

Shorouk : Hey, Farida! How's your new life in Europe?

Farida : Hi! It's OK, but I just went to the basketball court [1], and it's closed[2]! There was a sign [3] saying it isn't safe. Now there is nowhere to play basketball.

Shorouk : Oh, no! Here, we have a similar [4] problem. The population is growing every year. They're building new apartment buildings [5] everywhere, which is great, but they are building on the open spaces [6]. I wish we had more parks to hang out [7] in.

Farida : Exactly! I want to meet new friends, so I went to the local community center. It's really old and outdated[8] and doesn't offer many activities [9] for teens [10].

Shorouk : That's frustrating [11]. It sounds like you need better facilities. The thing that bothers [12] me is that people are using their cars too much in the city and park their cars on the sidewalk [13]!

Farida : There needs to be [14] a better solution, like more subway stations [15] or more underground parking [16]. You know what? I think we need to study city planning at college and put things right!

Shorouk : Good idea!

١. ملعب كرة السلة
٢. مُغلَق
٣. لافتة
٤. مشابه
٥. مباني سكنية
٦. مساحات مفتوحة
٧. يقضي وقتا بالخارج
٨. قديم
٩. أنشطة
١٠. المراهقون
١١. مُحبِط
١٢. يزعج/يضايق
١٣. رصيف
١٤. يجب أن يكون
١٥. محطات مترو الانفاق
١٦. موقف سيارات تحت الأرض

SB Page (22)

Interviewer : Thank you for talking to me today for our school newspaper! We would love to hear about what the food market[1] was like in the past. How has it changed[2] over the years?

Man : Well, my stall[3] has been here in this street market for 25 years! Back then,the market was much smaller, and it had a small community feel. While I was selling food, people came to talk, not just[4] buy food. When they were shopping, customers[5] always stopped to have a conversation. People's lives are so busy now, that doesn't happen as much.

Interviewer : It sounds like it was[6] wonderful! What about the things you sell? Are they the same now as they were then?

Man : Well back then every day we were bringing[7] food from farms in the countryside nearby[8]. Everything was fresh! But when the larger grocery stores[9] and supermarkets appeared, everything changed. We lost our customers while the supermarkets were making lots of money. People were choosing faster ways[10] of shopping while their lives were getting busier.

Interviewer : So, did your market get smaller?

Man : Well, no! In fact, it got bigger. There are more tourists now and they come to see the traditional[11] market. We were only selling fresh food when the tourists first arrived. Now we also sell souvenirs[12]! This means that we are now selling more, which is good for everyone.

Interviewer : What do you think the future holds for the market?

Man : I believe the market will continue to grow[13]. As long as we're able to[14] change with the times, I think we'll find new ways to sell to customers, and make our customers happy.

Interviewer : Thank you for sharing your memories[15]! It's clear that the market has a rich history.[16]

Man : Thank you! Now, would you like to try some oranges ...

١. سوق الطعام
٢. تغير
٣. كشك
٤. ليس لمجرد
٥. زبائن
٦. يبدو انه كان
٧. كنا نحضر
٨. الريف بالجوار
٩. محلات البقالة
١٠. طرق اسرع
١١. تقليدي
١٢. هدايا تذكارية
١٣. يكبر
١٤. قادر على
١٥. ذكريات
١٦. تاريخ ثري

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. It bothers me when people park their cars on the ___________.
   a. parking b. garage c. sidewalk d. underground
2. The local community center is really old and ___________.
   a. updated b. modern c. reflected d. outdated
3. There needs to be more underground ___________ in small cities.
   a. learning b. parking c. playing d. sleeping
4. In the basketball court, there's a ___________ saying "It's not safe".
   a. station b. subway c. sign d. book

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. ___________ are young people who are between 13 and 19 years old.
   a. Teens b. Teachers c. Babies d. Customers
6. We arrived at the train ___________ just in time for the train.
   a. center b. parking c. station d. ticket
7. Air ___________ is harmful for the environment. We must solve this problem.
   a. solution b. pollution c. education d. volunteering
8. Don't ___________ your sister. Let her do her homework before she goes to bed.
   a. offer b. please c. help d. bother
9. I take the ___________ to school. It's faster and safer than buses.
   a. subway b. highway c. boat d. bus
10. The summer camp offers many fun ___________ like swimming and hiking.
    a. activities b. teens c. sidewalks d. comments
11. Let's mind ___________ our ideas for the project.
    a. guide b. chart c. plan d. map
12. This market ___________ sells fresh fruits and vegetables.
    a. customer b. stall c. star d. day
13. Many people left nice ___________ on my photos on Instagram.
    a. comments b. decisions c. camps d. signs

14. We are always trying to give all our ___________ the best service possible.
a. stalls b. presentations c. activities d. customers

15. I remember that day very well in my ___________.
a. souvenir b. store c. memory d. factory

16. He went to the gift shop to buy a small ___________ for his sister.
a. bed b. souvenir c. sign d. task

17. Large supermarkets caused small ___________ to lose their customers.
a. stores b. souvenirs c. ways d. memories

18. Our store doesn't get many ________ on Mondays -Saturday is our busiest day.
a. memories b. customers c. souvenirs d. sellers

Expressions and Prepositions Exercises

19. She apologized for the mistake and promised to put things ___________.
a. right b. wrong c. false d. mistaken

20. I'm going to ___________ out with my friends at the club this weekend.
a. take b. give c. look d. hang

21. We are going to do some activities. Would you like to join ___________?
a. on b. in c. to d. with

22. The teacher asked me to ___________ a presentation on climate change.
a. make b. do c. talk d. buy

23. I think that footballers ___________ lots of money from playing football.
a. do b. give c. make d. look

24. I am able ___________ help you with your homework.
a. at b. to c. of d. for

25. It sounds ___________ a fun idea for a party.
a. for b. as c. to d. like

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

activities - presentations - sidewalks - pollution - Subway

"I live in one of the new cities. In my city, (1) ______ are clean and wide, making it easy to walk. (2) ______ stations are close by, helping people travel quickly. There are many (3) ______ for teens, like sports and outdoor games. However, (4) ______ is a problem we need to solve. Parking can be difficult to find, but new garages are being built. Everyone is working to make our city better."

Language قواعد لغوية

Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

- عند استكمال فراغ أو اختيار كلمة لتكملة جملة باللغة الإنجليزية، يجب أن تنظر جيدا في بقية الجملة لتقرر ما نوع الكلمة المفقودة: هل هي اسم، أم فعل، أم صفة، أم ظرف. وإذا كانت اسم، هل هي مفرد أم جمع. ولأخذ فكرة مختصرة جدا عن أجزاء الكلام، اقرأ السطور التالية بعناية:

- تتكون الجملة فى اللغة الانجليزية كالتالى: (بقية الجملة + فعل + فاعل)

1 Nouns الأسماء

- **Nouns are used for a person, place, thing, activity, idea, or feeling.**

- فاعل الجملة يكون اسم وتستخدم الأسماء للإشارة إلى شخص أو مكان أو شيء أو نشاط أو فكرة أو شعور.

2 Verbs الأفعال

- الفعل هو الجزء الثاني من أجزاء الجملة في اللغة الإنجليزية، ويأتي بعد الفاعل مباشرة، ولابد من وجود زمن يوضع فيه الفعل (ماضي او مضارع أو مستقبل):

Ex. She usually goes to school on foot.
Ex. When she was young, she usually went to school on foot.
Ex. My bike is broken, so I will go to school on foot tomorrow.

3 Adjectives الصفات

- الصفة هي كلمة تصف الاسم. وهناك حالات تاتي فيها الصفة قبل الاسم، وحالات أخرى تأتي فيها الصفة بعد الاسم، وحالات ثالثة تأتي فيها الصفة بعد بعض الأفعال، ما يهمنا الآن أن نعلم ان الصفة تصف اسما فقط:

Ex. Ahmed is a clever boy.
Ex. The baby was asleep when I arrived.
Ex. She felt sad when she heard the bad news.

4 Adverbs الظروف

- الظروف هي كلمات تصف الفعل أو الصفة أو تصف ظرفا آخر، وغالبا ما تنتهي بالحرفين (ly):

Ex. I quickly walked to the park.
Ex. She was very happy.

Past continuous with "when" and "while"

- يستخدم الماضي المستمر بعد كلمة (while بينما) للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع أثناءه حدث آخر قصير، بينما يستخدم الماضي البسيط (when عندما) للتعبير عن الحدث القصير الذي قطع الحدث الذي كان مستمرا:

While + الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل) + , + الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع)
When + الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع) + , + الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل)
وإذا جاء الرابط while أو when في منتصف الجملة، لانستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين.

Ex. I dropped my purse while I was running to catch the bus.
Ex. I was running to catch the bus when I dropped my purse.

• يأتي مع while فعلين في الماضي المستمر إذا كان الحدثان قد استمرًا في الحدوث معا في نفس التوقيت:

Ex. While I was doing my homework, my sister was listening to music.

Ex. My sister was listening to music while I was doing my homework.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Customers always .... to have a conversation while they were shopping.
   a. stopped b. were stopping c. stop d. stopping
2. Small shops .... their customers while the supermarkets were making money.
   a. were lost b. are losing c. lost d. losing
3. People were choosing faster ways of shopping while their lives were .... busier.
   a. got b. getting c. get d. gets
4. The market was much crowded in the past. The word crowded is a/an ....
   a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. verb
5. .... I was watching the birds, they suddenly flew away.
   a. Which b. What c. While d. Why
6. We were watching a movie........... the internet stopped working.
   a. while b. when c. where d. which
7. I was reading a book .... my mom called me for dinner.
   a. when b. what c. why d. who
8. She was drawing a picture .... her brother was playing video games.
   a. what b. who c. which d. while
9. While I .... with my family yesterday, I saw you with your parents.
   a. shopped b. shopping c. was shopping d. was shopped
10. What interesting things .... you see while you were visiting the museum?
    a. were b. are c. do d. did
11. .... it started to rain yesterday, I was playing football.
    a. When b. While c. What d. Which

12. I was having breakfast when I ___________ a message from my best friend.

a. was getting b. get c. got d. getting

13. While we were playing in the tournament, I ___________ my leg.

a. was breaking b. broke c. break d. breaking

Bit by Bit Exercises

14. What ___________ when the light went out?

a. you did b. are you doing c. do you do d. were you doing

15. While we were waiting for the train, it ___________ to rain.

a. start b. starting c. started d. is starting

16. I ___________ on a banana peel while I was walking home.

a. slip b. was slipping c. slipping d. slipped

17. One of the thieves was robbing the store while his friend ___________ outside.

a. was watching b. watches c. is watching d. watching

18. While mother was watching TV, she ___________ asleep.

a. was falling b. falls c. fell d. is falling

19. Were you ___________ anything when I called you?

a. did b. doing c. do d. done

20. I was looking out of the window when the accident ___________.

a. was happening b. happens c. happening d. happened

21. I had a delicious cake last night. The word had is a/an ___________

a. noun b. adverb c. adjective d. verb

22. I crossed the street carefully, looking left and right. The word carefully is a/an __________.

a. noun b. adverb c. verb d. adjective

23. The soldier showed great courage. The word "courage" is a/an ___________

a. adverb b. noun c. verb d. adjective

24. The cat ___________ on the mat when we arrived.

a. sleeps b. was sleeping c. sleeping d. sleepy

25. The baby cried loudly when he felt hungry. The word "hungry" is a/an ___________.

a. adverb b. noun c. verb d. adjective

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You need to .... (creation) a mind map.
2. .... (What) my father was driving, his cell phone rang.
3. My alarm .... (go off) while I was sleeping.
4. The mouse was running across the room .... (while) the cat saw it.
5. While my father .... (read) the newspaper, mother was preparing dinner.
6. .... (While) she finished her homework, she went to the park.
7. The little girl sang .... (amazing) well.
8. The old woman walked .... (slow) to open the door.
9. She was wearing a .... (beautifully) dress.
10. .... (Read) is my favorite hobby.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about a market stall:

• السؤال والجواب بين مُحاوِر ومالك كُشك بالسوق:

Question	Answer
- What's the best part about working in a market? ما هو أفضل شيء بخصوص العمل بالسوق؟	- I think it's talking to the customers and learning how their day is going. أعتقد أنه التحدث مع الزبائن ومعرفة كيف يكون يومهم.
- That sounds nice! Do you often see regular customers? جميل! هل غالبا ما ترى زبائن منتظمين؟	- Yes, many customers come back every week. نعم. كثير من الزبائن يأتون كل أسبوع.
- What kind of products do you sell here? ما نوع المنتجات التي تبيعها هنا؟	- I sell fresh fruits and vegetables. أبيع فواكه وخضروات طازجة.
- Do you find it hard to work outside all day? هل تجد انه من الصعب ان تعمل بالخارج طوال اليوم؟	- Sometimes it can be tough if the weather is bad. أحيانا يكون صعبا عندما يكون الطقس سيئا.
- What's the hardest part of your job? ما هو أصعب جزء من وظيفتك؟	- The hardest part is carrying heavy boxes of fruit in the morning. أصعب جزء هو حَمل صناديق الفاكهة الثقيلة كل صباح.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Public .... is a great way to get around the city.
   a. education b. transportation c. information d. celebration
2. It's very difficult to find .... spaces in the city center. So I take the bus instead of driving my car.
   a. marketing b. marking c. working d. parking
3. The new park has a basketball .... for everyone to use.
   a. court b. fort c. sport d. short
4. Mr. Salman is a .... teacher who creates new teaching ways to help us.
   a. creative b. negative c. lazy d. general
5. She wrote a positive comment on my photo. "Positive" is an antonym for ....
   a. useless b. expensive c. productive d. negative
6. We add the suffix "..........." to word "exact" to make the adverb.
   a. -ation b. -ive c. -ly d. -in
7. These two shirts are very .... in color; they are almost the same.
   a. different b. similar c. general d. public
8. My brother lives in one of the tall .... buildings in the New Capital City.
   a. apartment b. document c. development d. entertainment
9. It .... like you had a great time at the party!
   a. listens b. hears c. sounds d. speaks
10. You should come .... to my house and have lunch with us this weekend.
    a. up b. over c. after d. above
11. Please, write .... your phone number on this form.
    a. for b. to c. down d. bottom
12. I prefer to spend the next weekend at home. "The word "prefer" is a/an ....
    a. verb b. noun c. adverb d. adjective
13. I was working on my school project when Ali .... a WhatsApp message.
    a. sending b. sent c. is sending d. will send
14. Sorry, I wasn't paying attention .... you started to speak.
    a. while b. where c. which d. when
15. While I was walking my dog, I .... Mr. Ahmed, my friend's father.
    a. saw b. was seeing c. see d. seeing
16. She was walking in the street when the neighbor's dog .... her.
    a. was attacking b. attacks c. attacked d. attacking

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

cause - bothers - outdated - stations - share

"In big cities, public transportation can be a problem. Many buses and trains are ❶....... and slow. This ❷....... many people who need to get to work or school quickly. One solution is to update the old systems and build new ❸........ Another idea is to encourage people to ❹....... cars. This could reduce traffic and make the system less crowded."

3 Complete the following dialog:

A customer is talking to a market stall owner:

Customer: Excuse me, how much are these apples?

Seller : They're 30 ❶ .... per kilo.

Customer: Can I have two ❷ ...., please?

Seller : Sure, that'll be 60 pounds.

Customer: Here's your money.

Seller : Thank you. Do you want any ❸ .... else?

Customer: No, thank you. I just need the apples.

Seller : ❹ .... Have a nice day.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on.

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Street markets in the past and nowadays"

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. **How were street markets in the past?**
2. **Where did the sellers get the food they sold in the past?**
3. **How are the customers different now?**

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **In the past, the market was much smaller.** ....
- ***The sellers used to get the food they sold from the countryside.***
....
- **In the past, the customers came not only to buy but also to have a conversation.** ....

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

twins (n.)	توأمان/توائم	process (n.)	إجراء/عملية
excitement (n.)	متعة / إثارة	fascinated (adj.)	مفتون/منبهر
swing (n.)	أرجوحة	contribute (v. d)	يساهم
climbing structure (n.)	هيكل التسلق		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

apartment (n.)	شقَّة	impact (n. / v. ed)	تأثير/يؤثر
slide (n.)	منزَلَق (زحليقة)	peaceful (adj.)	هادئ/مُسالِم
gate (n.)	بَوَّابة	giant (adj.)	ضخم/عملاق
teamwork (n.)	العمل الجماعي	reflect (v. ed)	يتأمل/يتدبر
bench (n.)	مقعد طويل	try (v. ied)	يجرِّب/يحاول
context (n.)	سياق/موقف	nod (v. ded)	يومئ بالموافقة
discovery (n.)	اكتشاف	describe (v. d)	يصف
field (n.)	حقل	realize (v. d)	يدرك
crowd (n.)	حشد/مجموعة	notice (v.d)	يلاحظ
the front (n.)	الأمام/المقدمة	explore (v. d)	يستكشف
neighborhood (n)	حى/جوار	chat (ted)	يدردش
playground (n)	فناء	step (ped) back	يتراجع

Definitions

twins (n.)	توائم	two children who are brothers and/or sisters born at the same time.
excitement (n.)	إثارة	a feeling of happiness and interest
climbing structure (n.)	هيكل التسلق	something that children can climb and have fun on
process (n.)	إجراء/عملية	actions you need to take in order to do something
swing (n.)	أرجوحة	something you can sit on and move up and down by using your legs
fascinated (adj.)	مفتون/منبهر	very interested in something
contribute (v.)	يساهم	to give something

Expressions & Prepositions

can't wait to = eager to	متشوق لـ	small actions make big changes	الافعال الصغيرة تحدث تغييرات كبيرة
have fun	يستمتع	over time / over the years	بمرور الوقت/السنوات
make changes	يُحدِث تغييرات	on the top floor	في الطابق العُلوِي
feel part of	يشعر بانه جزء من	find out	يكتشف/يعرف
do a good job	يقوم بعمل جيد	give clues about	يعطي أدلة حول
set up	ينشئ	take (something) over	يسيطر أو يستولي على
contribute to	يساهم في	(be) full of	مليء بـ
under construction	تحت الإنشاء	slow down	يبطئ/يتأنى
try (something) out	يجرِّب شيء	live in a tree	يعيش في شجرة
reflect on	يتأمل/يتدبر	impact on	تأثير أو يؤثر على
point at	يشير الى	feel about	يشعر تجاه أو بخصوص
on their way home	فى طريقهم للمنزل	(be) going on	يَحدُث/يجري
back then	فى ذلك الوقت		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
peaceful هادئ	calm	noisy مزعج
giant ضخم	huge	tiny صغير جدا
nod يوافق	agree	refuse يرفض
fascinated (adj.) منبهر	attracted / interested	bored/indifferent غير مهتم
contribute (v.) يساهم	donate / give	take/receive يتلقى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي/ينفق	spent	spent
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left
build	يبني	built	built
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
mean	يعني	meant	meant
do	يفعل/يؤدي	did	done
lie	يرقد	lay	lain

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 discover / explore / invent

• explore (v. d) يستكشف

- يستخدم الفعل **explore** للتعبير عن الذهاب او السفر إلى مكان ما والنظر حوله لمعرفة المزيد عنه:

Ex. We are going to **explore** the city this weekend.

• discover (v. ed) يكتشف

- يستخدم الفعل **discover** عند التعبير عن شيء كان موجودا بالفعل ولكنه لم يكن معروفا أو يتم العلم بوجوده لأول مرة

Ex. Columbus **discovered** America in 1492.

• invent (ed) يخترع

- ينشئ شئ لم يكن موجودا

Ex. Graham Bell **invented** the telephone..

2 tall / high / long

• high (adj.) مرتفع (عن سطح الأرض)

- وتستخدم لوصف ارتفاع قمة الأشياء عن سطح الأرض، مثل الجبال والحوائط والأسوار والأرفف:

Ex. This mountain is very **high**.

Ex. The shelf is very **high**.

• tall (adj.) طويل (رأسيا)

- وتستخدم غالبا لوصف الأشخاص والحيوانات والأشجار والمباني:

Ex. The Eiffel Tower is a very **tall** metal structure.

• long (adj.) طويل (أفقيا)

- وتستخدم لوصف الأشياء التي تمتد أفقيا على سطح الأرض وليس لها ارتفاع، مثل الطرق والأنهار:

Ex. The River Nile is very **long**.

وتستخدم لوصف اجزاء الجسم

Ex. She has **long** hair.

3 reach / arrive

- يستخدم الفعلين **reach** / **arrive** بمعنى (يصل إلى مكان)، ولكن الفعل **arrive** لابد وأن يأتي بعده حرف جر، (ما عدا مع كلمة **home** فلا يستخدم قبلها حرف جر مع **arrive**)، أما الفعل **reach** فلا يتبعه حرف جر في هذا السياق:

Ex. The train **arrived at** the station at 5 PM.

Ex. After a long walk, I finally **reached** the top of the hill.

4 maybe / may be

• maybe (adv.) = perhaps / possibly
رُبما/من الممكن

- تستخدم كلمة **maybe** كظرف بمعنى (ربما / من الممكن)، ويأتي بعدها أو قبلها جملة كاملة:

Ex. Maybe it will rain tomorrow. = It will rain tomorrow, maybe.

• may be (v.) = might be رُبما يكون

- أما **be may** (المنفصلة) فتستخدم كفعل بمعنى (ربما يكون)، وتأتي بعد الفاعل في الجملة:

Ex. She may be at home.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She loves to .... new cities when she travels.
   a. create b. invent c. explore d. discover
2. When I got home, I .... that I lost my purse.
   a. discovered b. decided c. wanted d. explored
3. My sister is 180 cm .... She plays basketball.
   a. long b. high c. wide d. tall
4. We .... in Cairo after midnight.
   a. arrived b. reached c. got d. went
5. My father .... sleeping now. I'm not sure.
   a. maybe b. may be c. may be is d. is may

Reading

SB Page (24)

استمع إلى النصوص

A day out playing at the park

1- In the new city, twins [1] Adam and Amira lived in a small apartment [2] on the top floor of a tall building. Outside in the city were the sounds of cars, and the noise of the construction of new apartment buildings and facilities.

2- One sunny Saturday, Amira and Adam wanted to explore their neighborhood. "Let's see what's *happening at the park!" Amira suggested to their* parents, with excitement [3]. The park was across the street, and they often played there on Saturday mornings, but today they wanted to see the new playground that was under construction [4].



١. التوأمان
٢. شقة
٣. إثارة
٤. تحت الإنشاء

3- As they walked along with their parents, they noticed the busy workers setting up swings [5] and slides. "Wow, look at that!" Adam shouted, pointing at a giant climbing structure [6]. "I can't wait to try it out [7]!"

4- When they reached the park gates, they found a small crowd [8] of people looking at the construction through the gates [9]. They wanted to find out [10] what was going on [11], so the twins went to the front [12]. A friendly worker named Mr. Ragab noticed them and smiled. "Hey there! Do you want to see how we build playgrounds?"

5- Amira and Adam nodded [13] with excitement. Mr. Ragab explained the process [14] of construction, showing them how they carefully put each piece to make sure it was both safe and fun. The twins were fascinated [15]. They learned about teamwork [16], planning, and the importance of creating spaces for everyone to enjoy.

6- After the playground construction was finished and safe, Mr. Ragab invited families to help with a small task. "We need to paint the benches [17]. Would you like to help?" The twins looked at each other, and agreed. The family spent an hour painting bright colors on the benches, laughing, and chatting with the other volunteers.

7- Amira and Adam stepped back to look at their work. The new benches looked wonderful and bright. "We did a good job!" Adam said. Amira agreed, her heart was full of [18] happiness. "We can be proud that [19] we helped make our city better!"

8- On their way home, the twins and their parents talked about how important it was to contribute to [20] their community. "Today, I understood that it's not just about having fun at the park," Amira said. "It's about making it a nice place for everyone too."

9- That night, as they lay in bed, the twins realized [21] that even small actions [22] make big changes [23]. They felt part of [24] a community, and that meant working together to create a better place for everyone.

٥. أرجوحة
٦. هيكل التسلق
٧. يجرب
٨. حشد
٩. بوابات
١٠. يعرف
١١. يحدث
١٢. أمام
١٣. يومئ بالموافقة
١٤. إجراء
١٥. منبهر
١٦. العمل الجماعي
١٧. مقاعد
١٨. مليئ بـ
١٩. فخور بأن
٢٠. يساهم في
٢١. أدرك
٢٢. الأفعال
٢٣. تغييرات
٢٤. يشعر أنه جزء من

Reading Skill **مهارة القراءة (الإجابة بالاسفل)**

1. The best title for the story would be "............"
   a. A day at the park b. Building a new playground
   c. Helping the community d. A day of construction
2. How did Amira and Adam help with the playground construction?
   a. They helped build the swings. b. They helped plant trees.
   c. They helped paint the benches. d. They helped clean up the park.
3. Summarise the last paragraph in one sentence.

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. One sunny Saturday, Amira and Adam wanted to explore their neighborhood.

في أحد أيام السبت المشمسة، أرادت أميرة وآدم استكشاف حيهما.

2. They wanted to see the new playground that was under construction.

أرادوا رؤية الملعب الجديد الذي كان تحت الإنشاء.

3. The twins realized that even small actions make big changes.

أدرك التوئمان أن الأفعال الصغيرة يمكن أن تُحدِث تغييرات كبيرة.

Answers:

1. a. A day at the park
2. c. They helped paint the benches.
3. Feeling part of a community means working together to create a better place for everyone

SB Page (26)

Nabil's journal entry post





January 25th, 2025

Today, my grandma showed me some old photos of our city. It was a town back then (1)! She could walk to the sea from her house – across fields (2)! There were lots of green spaces, and it looked so peaceful in the photos. Now, there's hardly (3) any open land left. It's all been taken over (4) by construction. The population has grown so much that there are apartment buildings from here to the sea. I love my city but now there are not enough trees for the birds to live in. I started thinking about how the town has changed over the years (5). We've built more houses and roads, but there is not enough countryside anymore. There's too much pollution (6) and too many buildings. Maybe we need to slow down (7) and think more about the future – especially the future of the environment.

١. في ذلك الوقت
٢. الحقول
٣. بالكاد
٤. تم استغلاله
٥. بمرور السنوات
٦. التلوث
٧. يتأنى

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. Two children who are brothers or sisters born at the same time are __________.
   a. swings b. parks c. twins d. benches
2. __________ is a feeling of happiness and interest.
   a. Excitement b. Environment c. Apartment d. Monument
3. A/An ________ is the series of actions you need to take in order to do something.
   a. access b. process c. happiness d. kindness
4. Something that children can climb and have fun on is a climbing __________
   a. future b. nature c. picture d. structure
5. A ________ is something you can sit on and move up and down using your legs.
   a. swing b. painting c. feeling d. morning
6. To be __________ is to be very interested in something.
   a. uninterested b. peaceful c. fascinated d. frustrated
7. To __________ is to give something to help a person or group.
   a. suggest b. contribute c. explore d. realize
8. In her post, Nabila wanted to __________ on her grandmother's memories. She thought carefully about them.
   a. redo b. protect c. respect d. reflect

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. Amira and Adam wanted to __________ their new neighborhood.
   a. discover b. impact c. explore d. contribute
10. Mona and Hana have the same birthday because they are __________
    a. students b. twins c. sisters d. friends
11. We live in a small __________ that has two bedrooms and a living room..
    a. excitement b. environment c. document d. apartment
12. __________ means working together, in a group, with other people.
    a. Teamwork b. Homework c. Firework d. Framework
13. The students painted the __________ in their classroom with bright colors.
    a. whiteboards b. teachers c. benches d. books

14. The teacher explained the ___________ of pollution on the environment.
a. impact b. action c. structure d. benefit
15. We add the suffix "___________" to the noun "peace" to get the adjective.
a. -hood b. -ful c. -ness d. -ion
16. I ___________ in agreement when she suggested we go to the park.
a. refused b. added c. took d. nodded
17. A large ___________ of customers stood outside the store during the sale.
a. team b. crowd c. band d. couple
18. The teacher asked me to ___________ the main character in the story.
a. contribute b. fascinate c. describe d. give
19. In my village, I enjoy walking through the ___________, seeing animals.
a. fields b. parks c. factories d. movies
20. Always reflect on your mistakes and learn from them. "Reflect on" means _____
a. decide b. agree c. explore d. think

Expressions & Prepositions Exercises

21. Our new villa is still ___________ construction. I think it will be ready next month.
a. over b. under c. about d. below
22. The new student quickly began to ___________ part of our community at school.
a. feel b. take c. do d. make
23. He's trying to find ___________ which platform the train leaves from.
a. over b. off c. out d. in
24. They decided to set ___________ their own company in Alexandria..
a. at b. to c. of d. up
25. Well done! You really ___________ a good job.
a. made b. did c. done d. gave

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

feel - excitement - community - twins - swings

Ahmed and Ali's family moved house last month. The two boys were born at the same time; actually, they are ❶ _______. Every weekend, they go to the new park near their house and play on the ❷ _______ and make friends with other children. This made it easier for them to ❸ ______ part of the new ❹ _______.

Language قواعد لغوية

1 too many + اسم جمع

• تُستخدَم too many قبل اسم جمع لتعني «أكثر مما نحتاج أو أكثر مما هو ضروري». وتعطي معنى سلبي:

Ex. I didn't enjoy the party .There were too many people.

Ex. They lost the game because they made too many mistakes.

2 too much + اسم غير معدود

• تُستخدَم too much قبل اسم غير معدود لتعني «كمية كبيرة جدا أكثر مما هو ضروري من». وتعطي معنى سلبي:

Ex. Ugh! There's too much sugar in my tea!

Ex. There's too much noise in the room.

3 so many + اسم جمع

• تُستخدم so many قبل اسم جمع لتعني "عدد كثير جدا من» وهي تساوي كلمة «very» من حيث المعنى، وتستخدم بغرض التأكيد:

Ex. I read so many books about city planning.

Ex. There are so many cars on the roads today.

4 so much + اسم غير معدود

• تُستخدم so much قبل اسم غير معدود لتعني «كمية كبيرة جدا من» وهي تساوي كلمة «very» من حيث المعنى، وتستخدم بغرض التأكيد:

Ex. I have so much work to do today.

Ex. I had so much fun last weekend.

5 enough / not enough + اسم مفرد غير معدود أو جمع

• تستخدم كلمة enough بمعنى «عدد أو كمية كافية من»، ويأتي بعدها اسم مفرد غير معدود أو اسم جمع:

Ex. There isn't enough time to finish the project.

Ex. He doesn't have enough money to buy a car.

Ex. There aren't enough trees for birds to live in.

Ex. We don't have enough benches for the students.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There's .... smoke in here. I can't breathe.
   a. too many b. not enough c. too much d. so many
2. I don't have .... money to buy a new car.
   a. enough b. so many c. too many d. too much
3. She ate .... cakes for dinner last night and felt sick later.
   a. so much b. too much c. not enough d. too many
4. There .... enough people to play a match, so everybody went home.
   a. aren't b. weren't c. didn't d. isn't
5. Sorry, I can't help you. I have .... problems these days.
   a. too many b. so much c. too much d. not enough
6. You don't need to buy anything. I think we have .... food for the picnic.
   a. so many b. not enough c. enough d. too many
7. Many people spend .... time on social media, which is a waste of time.
   a. so many b. too much c. too many d. not enough
8. There are .... mistakes in your paragraph. You need to rewrite it once again.
   a. not enough b. so much c. too much d. too many
9. There's .... salt in this soup. I can't eat it.
   a. too many b. too much c. so many d. enough
10. Nora always asks .... questions during the lesson, which wastes time.
    a. too much b. so much c. enough d. too many
11. You don't need to go to the baker's now. We have .... bread for lunch.
    a. enough b. too many c. so many d. not enough
12. There's .... information in this article. I want to find another one.
    a. too many b. enough c. not enough d. so many
13. I think this new car cost you .... money; but it's worth the cost.
    a. so many b. enough c. too many d. too much
14. You are gaining weight because you don't do .... exercise.
    a. so many b. enough c. too much d. too many
15. You are taking .... suitcases on your trip. We won't need all these things.
    a. too many b. so much c. too much d. not enough
16. There's .... water on the floor. Take care not to slip.
    a. too many b. enough c. too much d. so many
17. Can you pass the salt? There's .... salt in the soup.
    a. too much b. not enough c. so much d. enough
18. I don't like this neighborhood. There .... too much pollution here.
    a. were b. does c. are d. is

19. I can't wait for you. I have __________ tasks to do at the office.
    a. too many b. too much c. not enough d. so much
20. You don't eat __________ fruits and vegetables. You must eat more.
    a. so much b. too much c. enough d. much

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. You're always sleepy because you don't have __________ (many) sleep.
2. There are too __________ (much) books on the desk.
3. Watching __________ (too many) TV isn't healthy.
4. It's not healthy to eat __________ (enough) junk food.
5. I bought too __________ (much) pens.
6. I spend __________ (so many) time on computer. It gives me headaches.
7. He can't sleep as he drank __________ (so many) coffee.
8. There's __________ (too many) pepper in this pizza. It's too spicy.
9. The money I have right now isn't __________ (many) to buy this shirt.

General Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. How do you __________ about the new park? Do you like it?
   a. make b. do c. get d. feel
2. What's going __________ in the street? There's too much noise.
   a. on b. at c. for d. up
3. That basket is full __________ apples. You can help yourself to have one.
   a. in b. on c. of d. to
4. Our apartment is on the top __________ of the building.
   a. road b. slide c. bench d. floor
5. The children love playing on the __________ in the park.
   a. swings b. trees c. lions d. people
6. At the __________ of the class, there is a big whiteboard for the teacher to write on.
   a. top b. bottom c. front d. back
7. Did you __________ the new sign on the gate? It says, "Don't damage plants".
   a. hear b. notice c. listen d. win
8. The elephant is a __________ animal. It's very big.
   a. giant b. tiny c. small d. little
9. I have too __________ homework to do this afternoon.
   a. many b. much c. enough d. so
10. There are too __________ dishes to wash after dinner.
    a. much b. enough c. many d. more

11. Do you have ___________ money right now to buy that book?
   a. enough   b. too much   c. so many   d. too many
12. You're carrying ___________ books in that bag; let me help.
   a. so many   b. too many   c. too much   d. many
13. We have ___________ food for the guests. You don't need to go shopping.
   a. too many   b. so much   c. so many   d. not enough

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

fun - volunteered - climbing - slides - proud

Our neighborhood has changed a lot over the years. There was a small playground, but now we have a big one with swings, (1) _______, and a climbing frame. We feel (2) _______ that our community worked together to build this new playground. Parents and children (3) _______ their time to make it happen. Now, kids have a safe and (4) _______ place to play.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We still have _______ (many) time before the train arrives. Let's wait here.
2. There are _______ (so much) options on the menu. What would you like to drink?
3. There are _______ (so much) people waiting for the bus. It will be very crowded.
4. I don't have _______ (too many) money to buy a birthday present for my friend.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on.

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The changes in my town over time"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. What was different about your town in the past?
2. What is your town like now?
3. How do you feel about the changes?
4. What do you think should happen in your town in the future?

- يمكنك استخدام العبارات الآتية:

- **In the past, my town was small and quiet, with not too many people** _______.
- **Now, it is much busier with too many cars and buildings** _______.
- **I feel sad about the changes because there is not enough green space anymore** _______.
- **I hope there will be more parks and trees** _______.

Review on Unit 8

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

countryside (n.)	الريف	focus on	يركز على
facilities (n.)	مَرافق/تجهيزات	contribute to	يساهم في
growth (n.)	نُمُوْ	make changes	يُحدِث تغييرات
construction (n.)	أعمال البناء	planner (n.)	مخطِّط/القائم بالتخطيط
population (n.)	السُكان	leader (n.)	قائد
city planning (n.)	تخطيط المُدُن	enclosure (n.)	حظيرة محاطة بسياج
sidewalk (n.)	رصيف للمُشاة	hiking path (n.)	ممشَى
subway (n.)	مترو أنفاق تحت الارض	playful (adj.)	مَرِح/كثير اللعب
teens (n.)	المراهقون	plan (v. ned / n.)	يخطط/خطة
teen (adj.)	مُراهِق	pollution (n.)	التلوُّث
station (n.)	محطة	underground (adj.)	تحت الأرض
twins (n.)	توئمان/توائم	outdated (adj.)	قديم
excitement (n.)	اثارة/حماس	parking (n.)	موقف السيارات
swing (n.)	أرجوحة	bother (v. ed)	يزعِج/يضايق
climbing structure (n.)	هيكل التسلق	process (n.)	إجراء/عملية
protect (v. ed)	يحمي	fascinated (adj.)	مفتون/منبهر
discovery (n.)	اكتشاف	contribute (v. d)	يساهم
reflect on	يفكر في	keep in touch	يبقى على اتصال

Language قواعد لغوية

The past simple and the past continuous الماضي البسيط والماضي المستمر

Past simple tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- يتكون الماضي البسيط من الفاعل (مفرد أو جمع) متبوعا بالتصريف الثاني للفعل. ويأتي التصريف الثاني للأفعال المنتظمة بإضافة (ed) للفعل:

study ⟶ studied   buy ⟶ bought

- عند نفي الجملة في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

فاعل + did not / didn't + الفعل في المصدر

Ex. She did not / didn't meet her friend at the club yesterday.

- عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي البسيط نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

(أداة الاستفهام) + did + الفاعل + الفعل في المصدر + تكملة الجملة + ?

Ex. Where did she meet her friend yesterday?

Usage الاستخدام

١. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث وقع وانتهى في وقت محدد في الماضي:

٢. يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادات أو أحداث كانت متكررة الحدوث في الماضي:

٣. يستخدم الماضي البسيط عند وجود تعبير زمني أو أي إشارة زمنية تدل على الماضي، مثل:

yesterday / last / ago / أي توقيت زمني سابق

٤. يستخدم الماضي البسيط عند سَرد أحداث متتابعة وقعت في الماضي.

Past continuous tense زمن الماضي المستمر

- يتكون الماضي المستمر من:

فاعل مفرد + was + v –ing
فاعل جمع + were + v -ing

Ex. We were playing football when it started to rain.

- عند نفي جملة في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

فاعل مفرد + was not / wasn't + v –ing
فاعل جمع + were not / weren't + v -ing

Ex. I was not / wasn't sleeping at 4 pm.

Ex. The children were not / weren't watching TV at 5.

- عند تكوين سؤال في الماضي المستمر نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

(أداة الاستفهام +) was + فاعل مفرد + v –ing + تكملة الجملة + ?
(أداة الاستفهام +) were + فاعل جمع + v –ing + تكملة الجملة + ?

Ex. What was your father doing when you arrived?

Usage الاستخدام

١. للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الحدوث اثناء توقيت محدد في الماضي:

٢. للتعبير عن حدث طويل كان مستمرا في الحدوث عندما قطعه أو وقع أثناءه حدث آخر قصير وللتعبير عن هذه الفكرة نستخدم (while أثناء) أو (when عندما) طبقا للنموذج التالي:

While + الماضي المستمر(الحدث الطويل) + , + الماضي البسيط (الحدث القصير القاطع)

When + الماضي البسيط(الحدث القصير القاطع) + , + الماضي المستمر (الحدث الطويل)

وإذا جاء الرابط / when while في منتصف الجملة، لانستخدم فاصلة بين الجملتين

Ex. The phone rang while we were studying.

Ex. She was driving when I called her.

٣. يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في الحدوث في نفس التوقيت، باستخدام الرابط (while).

too/so many & much / enough

1 too many + اسم جمع

- تُستخدَم too many قبل اسم جمع لتعني «أكثر مما نحتاج أو أكثر مما هو ضروري». وتعطي معنى سلبي:

Ex. There were too many people in the room..

2 too much + اسم غير معدود

- تُستخدَم too much قبل اسم غير معدود لتعني «كمية كبيرة جدا أكثر مما هو ضروري من». وتعطي معنى سلبي:

Ex. - There's too much noise outside.

3 so many + اسم جمع

- تُستخدم so many قبل اسم جمع لتعني "عدد كثير جدا من» وهي تساوي «very» من حيث المعنى، وتستخدم بغرض التأكيد:

Ex. There are so many cars on the roads today.

4 so much + اسم غير معدود

- تُستخدم so much قبل اسم غير معدود لتعني «كمية كبيرة جدا من» وهي تساوي كلمة «very» من حيث المعنى، وتستخدم بغرض التأكيد:

Ex. I have so much work to do today.

5 enough / not enough + اسم مفرد غير معدود أو جمع

- تستخدم كلمة enough بمعنى «عدد أو كمية كافية من»، ويأتي بعدها اسم مفرد غير معدود أو اسم جمع:

Ex. He doesn't have enough money to buy a car.

Ex. There aren't enough trees for birds to live in.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about your town

• السؤال والاجابة عن مدينتك:

Question	Answer
- What is your town like? كيف تبدو مدينتك؟	- My town, Aswan, is a small city in the south of Egypt. مدينتي أسوان هي مدينة صغيرة في جنوب مصر.
- Is it close to the sea or the mountains? هل هي قريبة من البحر او الجبال؟	- No, it's close to the River Nile. لا. هي قريبة لنهر النيل.
- What's the most famous place, building, or monument in your town? ما هو أشهر مكان أو مبنى أو نُصب تذكاري في مدينتك؟	- We have the temple of Philae and the High Dam. لدينا معبد فِيَلة والسد العالي.

Ask and answer questions about a market stall:

• السؤال والجواب بين مُحاوِر ومالك كُشك بالسوق:

Question	Answer
- What's the best part about working in a market? ما هو أفضل شيء بخصوص العمل بالسوق؟	- I think it's talking to the customers and learning how their day is going. أعتقد أنه التحدث مع الزبائن ومعرفة كيف يكون يومهم.
- That sounds nice! Do you often see regular customers? جميل! هل غالبا ما ترى زبائن منتظمين؟	- Yes, many customers come back every week. نعم. كثير من الزبائن يأتون كل أسبوع.
- What kind of products do you sell here? ما نوع المنتجات التي تبيعها هنا؟	- I sell fresh fruits and vegetables. أبيع فواكه وخضروات طازجة.
- Do you find it hard to work outside all day? هل تجد انه من الصعب ان تعمل بالخارج طوال اليوم؟	- Sometimes it can be tough if the weather is bad. أحيانا يكون صعبا عندما يكون الطقس سيئا.
- What's the hardest part of your job? ما هو أصعب جزء من وظيفتك؟	- The hardest part is carrying heavy boxes of fruit in the morning. أصعب جزء هو حَمل صناديق الفاكهة الثقيلة كل صباح.

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات انشائية و رسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1, 2

Volunteering is a great way to help others and make a difference in your community. It's a chance to give back and use your skills to help those in need. You can volunteer at a local animal shelter, a food bank, or a hospital. You can also volunteer to help with community events or to clean up parks. Volunteering is a rewarding experience that can help you feel good about yourself. It's a great way to meet new people and learn new skills.

Lessons 3, 4

City planning is about designing and organizing a city to make it a better place to live. It involves deciding where to put homes, schools, parks, and businesses. Good city planning helps reduce traffic, provide green spaces, and ensure that people can use essential services like hospitals and public transportation. Planners also think about the future, making sure the city can grow without problems. By careful planning, cities can be more efficient, beautiful, and enjoyable for everyone.

Lessons 5 & 6

In the past, my town was small and quiet, with not too many people. There were so many open fields and trees. Now, it is much busier with too many cars and buildings. There is so much noise and traffic. I feel sad about the changes because there is not enough green space anymore. In the future, I hope there will be more parks and trees. We need enough places for people to relax and enjoy nature.

Al Azhar Test

My friends and I decided to spend time at the local park. We went to the park last Friday. The sun was shining brightly. We enjoyed a delicious lunch together under a tree. We watched families playing games on the grassy fields and saw flowers and birds. It was a happy day.

Test Unit 8

Feeling part of your community means feeling connected to the people around you. To do so, start by joining local clubs or groups that interest you, like sports teams or book clubs. Volunteering is another great way to connect with others; you can help at events or clean up parks. Be friendly and talk to your neighbors. Small actions, like saying hello or helping someone, can make a big difference. This way, you'll feel connected and part of your community.

Al Azhar Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. The new city has many .... like parks, schools and shops.
   a. activities b. difficulties c. facilities d. industries
2. Public .... makes it simple for people to travel quickly and safely.
   a. transportation b. population c. pollution d. education

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem: Hey, it was great meeting you at the volunteer event.

Hatem: Yeah, it was fun!

Salem: I'm really (1) .... of what we achieved together.

Hatem: Me too. I'm glad we could (2) .... to the community.

Salem: We should (3) .... in touch and volunteer together again sometime.

Hatem: That would be great!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... of the new hospital in our village finished last month.
   a. reception b. construction c. information d. destruction
2. For your ...., wear the seat belt while driving your car.
   a. display b. account c. safety d. activity
3. This mobile phone is .... I'm going to buy a new smartphone.
   a. updated b. modern c. polluted d. outdated
4. I was having dinner .... my friend Ali arrived.
   a. when b. what c. why d. who
5. She was sleeping .... her brother was washing the car.
   a. what b. who c. which d. while

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Construction work in the new school in our village will start next month. This school will have modern facilities for children to enjoy learning . It will provide a better education for our children. It will help children learn and enjoy their time **there**. Everyone is looking forward to the opening day and the **positive** changes it will bring. Parents and teachers are already planning activities and events to celebrate the new school. This shows how important education is to our community.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is the community excited about the new school?

----

2. What kind of facilities will the new school have?

----

3. What are parents and teachers doing to celebrate the new school?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**there**"refers to ---------.

a. construction work b. the new school
c. the community d. the changes

5. The underlined word "**positive**"is the opposite of ---------.

a. beautiful b. wonderful c. creative d. negative

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I was sleeping when you **arrive**. (..................)
2. When I woke up, I **think** it was raining. (..................)
3. She walked **slow** to open the door. (..................)
4. You are wearing a **beautifully** shirt. Where did you buy it? (..................)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A day out in the local park"

Test on Unit 8

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What activities can you do in parks?
   a. Work in an office. b. Drive a car.
   c. Relax and play. d. Shop for clothes.
2. How can public parks benefit our health?
   a. By improving our mental and physical health.
   b. By making us tired.
   c. By making us stressed.
   d. By making us sick.
3. Why is it important to take care of public parks?
   a. To make them less attractive. b. To make them more crowded.
   d. To make them more expensive. c. To keep them clean and enjoyable.

B- Listen and complete:

4. Public parks are great places to ....
5. In public parks, you can find ....
6. It's important to keep public parks ....

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. Rapid .... growth can lead to crowded cities.
   a. information b. plant c. population d. pollution
2. In many cities, the .... system helps people travel quickly.
   a. subway b. sidewalk c. education d. economic

3 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

playful - bother - planner - enclosure - focus

My family and I went to the zoo last Friday. In the zoo, the lion's (1) .... is big and safe. Visitors should not (2) .... the animals by making loud noises. Instead, they should (3) .... on watching the animals quietly. The lion cubs are very (4) ...., running and jumping around. It's fun to see them play, but remember to respect their space. Enjoying the zoo means being kind to the animals and letting them feel comfortable in their home.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian football player. He was born on June 15, 1992, in Nagrig, Egypt. He is known for his **incredible** speed, skill, and goal-scoring ability. He plays as a forward for Liverpool. He began his career in Egypt before moving to Europe, **where** he played for many football teams. At Liverpool, he won many awards. Salah is also a key player for the Egyptian national team, helping them in many important matches. He is loved by fans around the world for his talent and humble personality. Salah's journey from a small town in Egypt to becoming a global football star is truly inspiring.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Which of the following can be the main idea of the text?
   a. Mohamed Salah's favorite hobbies.
   b. Mohamed Salah's journey and achievements.
   c. Mohamed Salah's family and friends.
   d. Mohamed Salah's favorite foods.
2. Which national team does Salah play for?
   a. Brazil　b. Argentina　c. France　d. Egypt

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Where was Mohamed Salah born?

----

4. What does the underlined word "where" refer to?

----

5. What does the underlined word "incredible" probably mean?

----

6. Why is Mohamed Salah loved by fans all over the world?

C. Writing

5 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. At 8 pm last night, I .... a football match. It finished at 9.
   a. watches　b. am watching　c. was watching　d. watch
2. While I was travelling to Aswan, I .... my friend's father on the train.
   a. saw　b. was seeing　c. am seeing　d. see

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I was doing my homework --------- (while) I suddenly heard a knock on the door.
2. The little girl --------- (careful) crossed the busy street.
3. When you phoned me, I --------- (take) a shower, so I couldn't answer the phone.
4. My mother was going upstairs when she suddenly --------- (fall) down.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Hazem are talking about volunteering:

Ahmed : Hey, have you ever volunteered for anything?

Hazem : Yeah, I (1) ---------------------- at a local animal shelter last summer.

Ahmed : Oh, that's cool! What did you do there?

Hazem : I helped (2) ----------- the animals, and played with the cats and dogs.

Ahmed : That sounds rewarding. Why did you (3) ----------------- to volunteer?

Hazem : Because I love animals, and I wanted to help them.

Ahmed : I think I'd like to volunteer too. What (4) ------------------------- I do?

Hazem : You could check online or at your local community center.

Ahmed : That's a good idea.

8 Write a paragraph of about (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"How can you feel part of your community"

Unit 9 Plans with friends



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

Scanning a text message about making arrangements and a summary of a story about friendship

Listening:

A conversation about making arrangements

Speaking:

Planning activities with friends

Writing:

Writing: Tips on staying in touch with a friend: will and going to

Language:

Future forms: will and going to; present continuous for future arrangements

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

entrance (n)	مدخل	keep (v)	يحفظ / يحافظ على
real (adj)	حقيقي	include (d)	يتضمن /يشتمل على
fake (adj)	مزيف	care (d)	يهتم
left out (adj)	مُهمَل /متروك		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

afraid (adj)	خائف	action movie (n)	فيلم حركة
nervous (adj)	متوتر	a.m. (morning)	صباحا
angry (adj)	غاضب	p.m. (afternoon)	ظهرا / مساءا
upset (adj)	مكتئب	past (prep.)	بعد/ماراب
worried (adj)	قلق	café (n)	مقهى/كافتريا
excited (adj)	متحمس	trip (n)	رحلة
pleased (adj)	مسرور	online (adj)	عبر / على الإنترنت
surprised (adj)	مندهش	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
funny (adj)	مضحك	schoolwork (n)	الاعمال المدرسية
alone (adj)	وحيد	photo (n)	صورة
app (n)	تطبيق	realize (d)	يدرك
mall (n)	سوق تجاري	notice (d)	يلاحظ
shopping (n)	التسوق	plan (ned)	يخطط
conversation (n)	حوار	text (ed)	يرسل رسالة نصية
country (n)	دولة	join (ed)	ينضم
included (adj)	مُنْدَمِج	chat (ted)	يدردش
movie theater (n)	دار عرض (سينما)		

Definitions

entrance	مدخل	a door, gate, passage, etc. used for entering a room, building or place
care	يرعى	to think that something is important
real	حقيقي	actually existing or happening
fake	مزيف	not what somebody claims it is
left out	مهمل	left and no longer wanted, used or needed
include	يتضمن/يشتمل على	to make someone or something part of a larger group

Expressions & Prepositions

a bit nervous about	متوتر قليلا بشان	keep her promise	تحفظ وعدها
do badly	يؤدي بشكل سيئ	make plans	يعمل خطط
do well	يؤدي بشكل جيد	feel sad and alone	يشعر بالحزن و الوحدة
don't worry!	لا تقلق	spend time with	يقضي وقت مع
have fun	يستمتع	Sounds good!	يبدو جيدا
felt left out	(يشعر انه مستبعد أو مهمل)	at the top of	في أعلى
excited about	متحمس بشأن	a group chat	مجموعة دردشة
look for	يبحث عن	feel happy and included	يشعر بالسعادة و الاندماج
a friend named	صديق يدعى ..		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
pleased	مسرور	happy	sad	حزين
important	هام	necessary	unimportant	غير هام
angry	غاضب	furious	calm	هادئ
real	حقيقي	true	fake	مزيف
left out	متروك/مهمل	left behind	included	متضمن/مندمج
international	دولى	global	national	محلى

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ed	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	worried/ surprised
-ly	تحول الصفة إلى حال	badly
-ous	تحول الاسم الى صفة	nervous
-inter	تعنى بين	international

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
lose	يخسر	lost	lost
tell	يخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
bring	يحضر	brought	brought
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 trip / journey /flight/ voyage

- **trip** رحلة قصيرة

Ex. My dad went on a business trip to China.

- **journey** رحلة

Ex. The train journey to Aswan takes about 16 hours.

- **flight** رحلة جوية

Ex. My uncle will arrive on flight No. 315 coming from London.

- **voyage** رحلة بحرية

Ex. The Titanic sank on its first voyage.

2 worried about / worried that

- **worried about + (noun / V+ing)**

Ex. I'm really worried about my brother.

- **worried (that) + فاعل + فعل**

Ex. Riham is worried that she might miss her train.

3 fun / funny

• fun (adj) ممتع

Ex. I like Omar a lot - he's really fun.

Ex. Snowboarding is a really fun sport.

• fun (n) متعة

Ex. Did you have fun at the party?

• funny (adj) مضحك

Ex. Omar told us some funny stories.

4 in/on/at

- عند قراءة نص بشكل سريع بغرض استخلاص اهم المعلومات فاننا نركز على التواريخ والاماكن والايام بالنص والتى تعبر عنها حروف الجر السابقة كما يلى

• in + السنوات/الاماكن الكبيرة/الشهور

- in 2020 / in Cairo / in May

Ex. Ali lives in Cairo.

Ex. He was born in October.

Ex. They were married in 2020.

• on + ايام الاسبوع

- on Friday

Ex. We don't go to school on Friday.

• at + الوقت/الاماكن الصغيرة

- at 9 o'clock / at the airport

Ex. I usually get up at 6 o'clock.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Ahmed was worried .... he may go to school late.
   a. that b. of c. about d. from
2. Do you remember any .... jokes about work?
   a. funniest b. funny c. fun d. funnier
3. We're very worried .... Grandma.
   a. about b. that c. of d. from
4. We enjoyed our .... because the plane was comfortable.
   a. voyage b. flight c. picnic d. fight

Reading

SB Page (29)

استمع إلى النصوص

Read and listen to the text messages. What do Khaled and Karim decide to do?





Hi Khaled! How are you? I'm a bit **nervous**[1] about my **presentation**[2] on Thursday. I'm worried that I'll do badly. Do you want to do something on Saturday? We'll have **free time**[3]. Maybe go to the mall?

Hi Karim! I'm OK, thanks. I'm **excited**[4] about the presentation. You need to **relax**[5]. You'll do well. Don't worry! I'm going to my grandparents' house on Saturday morning. What about Saturday afternoon? I'm **surprised**[6] that you want to go to the mall. Do you like shopping now?

OK, OK. Maybe going shopping isn't the best thing for us to do. What about going to the **movie theater**[7] on Saturday? I want to see that new action movie.

Sure. We can see that movie at 2 o'clock or 4:30 p.m. on Saturday at Cinema El Shorouk in Sunrise Mall. What do you think?

OK. 4:30 is better for me. I can meet you at the **entrance**[8] to the mall at 3:00 p.m. if you like.

Sure. **Sounds good**[9]. See you tomorrow!

١.متوتر
٢.عرض تقديمي
٣.وقت فراغ
٤.متحمس
٥.يستريح
٦.مندهش
٧.السينما
٨.المدخل
٩.يبدو جيدا

Read and listen to the story, then look up the words in bold in your dictionary.

SB Page (30)

A. Last Saturday, Mom took me to meet my friend Heba at a café in town. We met when we were just six years old and she's my best friend. We always **have fun**[1] and help each other with **schoolwork**[2]. Heba told me, "I'm going to bring some photos from our last **trip**[3], Sara!" I was excited because we both love taking photos for social media, and I wanted to see them

١.نستمتع
٢.الاعمال المدرسية
٣.رحلة

B. I also have a friend named Jessica, but I don't think she is going to be a really good friend because sometimes she is kind and sometimes she isn't. We met online(4) a few months ago. At first, she was really nice and liked my posts(5), but now I notice(6) she doesn't really care(7). Sometimes, she says, "I'll text you later," but she never does.

C. Last week, she asked me to join her(8) in a group chat. I thought it would be fun(9), but when I joined, she was chatting with other people and didn't include me(10) in the conversation(11). I felt left out.

٤. عبر الإنترنت
٥. منشوراتي
٦. ألاحظ
٧. تهتم
٨. انضم إليها
٩. ممتع
١٠. تضمني
١١. المحادثة
١٢. تحفظ وعدها
١٣. أدرك
١٤. مزيف
١٥. أقضي

D. Mom agreed to come with me to meet Heba next weekend. We're going to meet at the café and then take a taxi to the city park. I know she will be there and keep her promise(12). We will probably post a funny video on social media from the park.



E. Now I realize(13) that real friends don't just make plans; they keep them. Real friends make you feel happy and included, while fake(14) friends leave you feeling sad and alone. I'm going to spend(15) more time with Heba and real friends who care. I think that's important.

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Summarize the first paragraph. لخص الفقرة الأولى
2. Give words from the passage that means(pleased - know): استخرج كلمات تعني ....

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. Last Saturday, Mom took me meet my friend at a café in town.......
الاسبوع الماضي اخذتني امي لكي أقابل صديقتي في مقهى في المدينة......
2. We met when we were just six years old.........
تقابلنا عندما كنا فى عمر السادسة. ....
3. We always have fun and help each other with schoolwork...........
دائما ما نستمتع و نساعد بعضنا البعض في الاعمال المدرسية..........

Answers:

1. My Mom took me to meet my best friend . We met and she brought some photos from the last trip. We have always been good friends.
2. happy – realize

Noticing international words

International words are usually English words that people also use in other languages. These words are often words for technology, for example, the internet, app, social media, and online or words for places we go to or things we use in our free time, for example, hotel, restaurant, café, and taxi.

International words

- الكلمات الدولية هي عادةً كلمات إنجليزية يستخدمها الأشخاص أيضًا في لغات أخرى. هذه الكلمات غالبًا ما تكون كلمات خاصة بالتكنولوجيا مثل

the internet, app, social media, and online

- أو كلمات للأماكن التي نذهب إليها أو الأشياء التي نستخدمها في أوقات فراغنا مثل

hotel, restaurant, café, and taxi

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I feel .... when something happens, and I didn't think it would happen.
   a. happy b. glad c. surprised d. nervous
2. I feel .... when I lose something that I really liked.
   a. afraid b. upset c. pleased d. fun
3. I feel .... when my mom doesn't answer her phone for a long time.
   a. worried b. glad c. surprised d. nervous
4. I feel .... when I'm at the top of a tall building and I look down.
   a. happy b. glad c. surprised d. afraid

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. I'm a .... nervous about my presentation on Thursday.
   a. many b. bit c. few d. some
6. What about going to the .... to watch the new film on Saturday?
   a. car park b. bus station
   c. amusement park d. movie theater
7. The .... to the building is on the left.
   a. room b. entrance c. wall d. view
8. Is that painting real or.........?
   a. right b. true c. fake d. good
9. You should .... for the plants by watering them regularly.
   a. care b. look c. wait d. hurry

10. Can you --------- all the necessary information in your report, please?
    a. contain b. consist c. join d. include
11. She gave a great --------- at the conference.
    a. lesson b. presentation c. chance d. party
12. I really enjoyed the --------- we watched last night.
    a. lesson b. exercise c. movie d. song
13. I like playing games with friends. It is always --------- .
    a. fun b. boring c. dull d. noisy
14. Let's meet at the --------- for a cup of coffee.
    a. mosque b. café c. classroom d. playground
15. You should --------- your keys in a safe place so you don't lose them.
    a. open b. keep c. close d. use
16. Did you --------- the changes in the park?
    a. look b. read c. mind d. notice
17. She took a --------- of the beautiful sunset.
    a. painting b. nap c. photo d. trip
18. I'm so --------- that we're going to Alexandria. It will be fun.
    a. excited b. upset c. afraid d. worried
19. After this long day, I want to sit down and--------- .
    a. keep b. relax c. bring d. spend
20. Are you going --------- my house on your way home?
    a. on b. past c. between d. next

Expressions & prepositions

21. My friends went on a journey and didn't tell me, so I felt --------- out.
    a. cut b. dropped c. left d. sent
22. At school, we always --------- fun and help each other with our schoolwork.
    a. have b. make c. do d. spend
23. When you promise someone to help them, you must --------- your promise.
    a. have b. keep c. do d. spend
24. I'm sure you'll --------- well in your exams.
    a. have b. keep c. do d. spend
25. Ahmed and Mona are busy --------- plans for their wedding.
    a. making b. keeping c. doing d. working

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

media - post - mean - meet - keep

My sister will come with me to (1) ---------- my friend Aliaa next weekend. We're going to meet at the city park. I know she will come and (2) ---------- her promise. We will probably (3) ---------- a funny video on social (4) ---------- from the park.

Language قواعد لغوية

The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

- يمكن أن نستخدم اكثر من صيغة للتعبير عن المستقبل وسندرس فى هذا الدرس be going to / will كما يلى

will and going to

- سوف للتعبير عن المستقبل (be) going to

Form التكوين

Subject	be	
I	am	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You / They / اسم جمع	are	

← لاحظ الاختصارات: am = 'm / is = 's / are = 're

Ex. He is going to buy a new house next year.

Usage الاستخدام

- نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن الآتى:

١- تنبؤ فى المستقبل مع وجود دليل

Ex. It's cloudy. I think it is going to rain.

٢- خطط مستقبلية

Ex. I am ('m) going to visit Sinai.

٣- قرارات مسبقة

Ex. I am going to watch TV in the afternoon.

٤- نوايا

Ex. I'm going to buy a jacket next week.

- أى أننا نستخدم (be) going to للدلالة على الخطط / القرارات / النوايا وتدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

plan يخطط/خطة - decide يقرر - decision قرار - intend ينوى - intention نية

٥- أحداث على وشك الوقوع

Ex. Watch out! A car is going to hit you.

Negative النفى

- للنفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

فاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + inf....

← لاحظ الاختصارات: am not = 'm not / is not = isn't / are not = aren't

Ex. I'm not going to study Spanish.

Question السؤال

- للاستفهام نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) Am / Is / Are + فاعل + going to + inf. ......?

للسؤال (بهل):

Ex. Are you going to try rock climbing?

- Yes, I am.
- No, I am not (I'm not).

للسؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. When are you going to play tennis?

- On Monday.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

next	القادم	tomorrow	غدًا	in the future	فى المستقبل
soon	قريبًا	tonight	هذه الليلة	in (3 hours)	فى خلال (٣ ساعات)

Notes

- يمكن أن نستخدم (be) going to بعد (think) طالما أن هناك دليل:

Ex. Look at the clear sky. I think it's going to be a nice day.

Making predictions عمل تنبؤات

(will / will not) for future predictions

Form التكوين

كل الضمائر + will ('ll) + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I think it will ('ll) be very cold next winter.

Usage الاستخدام

- نستخدم (will + inf) للتحدث عن

١- التنبؤ بشئ فى المستقبل بدون دليل

Ex. I think it will be hot tomorrow.

٢- القرارات السريعة

Ex. The phone is ringing. I'll answer it.

٣- العرض

Ex. I will help you with your homework. (offer)

٤- الطلب

Ex. Will you send us some photos? (request)

٥- للحقائق المستقبلية

Ex. I'll be 16 next week.

٦- للتهديد

Ex. I'll punish you if you don't keep quiet.

Notes

• تستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع (will) للتعبير عن تنبؤ بدون دليل فى المستقبل:

think / believe / hope / expect / (be) sure / perhaps / probably / possibly

Ex. I **think** that Maha will arrive soon.

Ex. We will **probably** visit Ali tomorrow.

Negative النفى

• للنفى نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

كل الضمائر + will not (won't) + inf....

Ex. I will not (won't) come with you. I'm busy.

Question السؤال

• للسؤال نستخدم الصيغة الآتية:

(كلمة استفهام) Will + فاعل + inf. ......?

- سؤال بـ "هل":

Ex. Will you stay at home? - Yes, I will. - No, I won't.

- سؤال بكلمة استفهام:

Ex. What will you have for lunch? - I'll have chicken and chips.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

next	القادم	tomorrow	غدًا	in the future	فى المستقبل
soon	قريبًا	tonight	هذه الليلة	in (3 hours)	فى خلال (٣ ساعات)

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. I ____________ my friend Sara prepare the food for the party.
   a. am helped b. going to help
   c. will be helped d. am going to help
2. Look at those black clouds. There ____________ a storm soon.
   a. will be b. is going to be c. is being d. should be
3. I ____________ you when I get home.
   a. will call b. will be calling
   c. will be called d. am calling

4. We ___________ some cookies for our friend this afternoon.
   a. are baked b. will bake
   c. going to bake d. are going to bake
5. My friends ___________ any problems with the homework.
   a. will have b. are going to have
   c. going to have d. won't have

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. I expect I ___________ good time with my friends.
   a. spend b. am spending
   c. will spend d. was going to spend
7. I think our team ___________ more matches.
   a. will win b. win c. are winning d. are going to win
8. There's not a cloud in the sky – it ___________ another very sunny day.
   a. would be b. is being c. shall be d. is going to be
9. I've decided what to do at the weekend. I ___________ my uncle.
   a. have visited b. will visit c. am visiting d. am going to visit
10. Look at this car. It ___________ .
   a. will crash b. is going to crash c. is crashing d. crashes
11. We ___________ to the Red Sea this summer. I've bought a guide book.
   a. will go b. are going to go c. shall go d. have gone
12. The company decided that Ali ___________ to London tomorrow.
   a. will fly b. is going to fly c. is flying d. flies
13. We ___________ our grandparents next Friday.
   a. visit b. will be visited
   c. are going to visit d. visited
14. **A:** The doorbell is ringing. **B:** I ___________ it.
   a. open b. am going to open c. am opening d. will open
15. He ___________ the doctor in a few minutes.
   a. is going to see b. saw c. has seen d. was going to see
16. I promise I ___________ you a nice present.
   a. have bought b. will buy
   c. am going to buy d. must buy
17. The cup is on the edge of the table. It___________ .
   a. is falling b. has fallen
   c. is going to fall d. will be falling
18. ___________ you buy me some stamps, please?
   a. Are b. Must c. Have d. Will
19. My little sister looks very sad. She ___________ cry.
   a. will b. shall c. might not d. is going to
20. I hear you are starting your university course soon. I'm sure you ___________ enjoy it.
   a. shall b. is going to c. will d. would be

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I think I .... (buy) this watch.
2. I expect that our team .... (win) the match.
3. The water is boiling – I .... (turn) the gas off.
4. It .... (rain). The sky's full of dark clouds.
5. They .... (leave) for London tomorrow. This is their plan.
6. If you don't do your homework, you .... (be) punished.
7. He is saving money. He .... (buy) a new car next month.
8. Sarah .... (travel) to Europe next summer.
9. They .... (attend) the concert on Saturday night.
10. My grandfather .... (be) eighty next week.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Most students are using computers at home for .... or just for pleasure.
   a. housework b. schoolwork c. paperwork d. teamwork
2. People call him Aziz, but his .... name is Abdul Aziz.
   a. wrong b. real c. fake d. false
3. She was .... to receive her exam results.
   a. exciting b. excited c. excite d. excites
4. It took him some time to .... his mistake.
   a. realize b. text c. decide d. view
5. Don't forget to .... me when you arrive in London .
   a. send b. receive c. text d. bring
6. If he's late again, I .... very angry.
   a. am b. will be c. am being d. was
7. .... they going to visit us tonight?
   a. Will b. Shall c. Are d. Might
8. He is studying hard. He .... good marks.
   a. is getting b. will get
   c. is going to get d. shall get
9. My brother .... twenty next week.
   a. is being b. is c. will be d. is going to be
10. I .... for you at the hotel at midday tomorrow.
    a waited b. was waiting c. have waited d. will wait

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

free - bit - pleased - worried - relax

Hi Adel! How are you? I'm a (1) .... nervous about my presentation next week. I'm (2) .... that I'll do badly. My dad tells me to (3) .... and I will feel better. Do you want to do something on Saturday? We'll have (4) .... time. Maybe, we can go to the mall.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Malek is talking to Nour about free time.

Malek : How do you usually spend your time?

Nour : I usually go to the library. I like reading.

Malek : What do you like (1) ....?

Nour : I like reading short stories.

Malek : How often do you go to the library?

Nour : I go there (2) .... a week.

Malek : May I borrow some of your books?

Laila : Of (3) ....

Malek : (4) .... can I come to take the books?

Laila : You can come tomorrow to take the books you want.

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I promise that I .... (call) you when I reach home.
2. She .... (visit) her grandparents tomorrow.
3. It's decided. We .... (start) a new project next week.
4. As we planned, We .... (have) dinner at the restaurant tonight.
5. I think it .... (rain) later this evening.
6. Our team .... (compete) in the championship next Saturday.

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Your plans for the weekend"

....

....

....

....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 32-35

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

good cause (n)	هدف جيد/ غرض محبب	offer (v. ed)	يعرض/ يقدم
spread the word	ينشر الخبر (الموضوع)	support (v. ed)	يدعم / يساعد
crowdfunding (n)	التمويل الجماعي	raise (v, d)	يجمع (مال)
crowd (n)	جمهور	make a difference	يحدث فارق
fund (n – v.ed)	يمول / تمويل		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

college (n)	كلية	link (n)	رابط
greener (adj)	اكثر مراعاة للبيئة	business (n)	شركة
post (n – v.ed)	منشور/ يشارك منشور	effect (n)	تأثير
group (n)	مجموعة	Unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
proud (adj)	فخور	hashtag (n)	وسم (هاشتاج)
tool (n)	أداة/ وسيلة	list (n)	قائمة
idea (n)	فكرة	tonight (adv)	الليلة
enough (adj)	كاف	adventure (n)	مغامرة
social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	use (d)	يستخدم
message (n)	رسالة	share (d)	يشارك
appointment (n)	موعد	promote (d)	يروج لـ
practice (n)	تمرين	remind (ed)	يذكر
pharmacy (n)	صيدلية	rush (v-ed / n)	تسرع /يسرع

Definitions

for a good cause	من اجل قضية هادفة/لغرض نبيل	worth doing or giving to because it will help other people
spread the word	ينشر الخبر	To reach more places or people
crowdfunding	التمويل الجماعي	To get a large number of people to give a small amount of money each to make a big amount, often for a good cause
raise money	يجمع (مال)	To provide money and help for someone to pay for the things they need
support	يدعم / يساعد	To make a promise and say you will do something
make a difference	يحدث فارق	To have an important effect on something or someone

Expressions & Prepositions

bring people together	يجمع الناس سويا	talk about	يتحدث عن
all over the city	في كل أنحاء المدينة	decide to	يقرر ان
looks beautiful	يبدو جميلا	feels proud	يشعر بالفخر
on planting day	في يوم زراعة	get there	نصل هناك
make a promise	يوعد	deserve a treat!	يستحق مكافأة/عزومة
thank for	يشكر على	sounds wonderful	يبدو رائعا
make a page for	يصمم صفحة ل......	won't miss a thing	لن يفوتنا شيئ
		have an important effect on	لديه تاثير مهم على
		join (in) a group chat	ينضم لمجموعة دردشة

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
near	قريب	close	far	بعيد
enough	كاف	sufficient	insufficient	غير كاف
support	يشجع/يدعم	encourage	discourage	يثبط/يحبط
green	صديق للبيئة	eco-friendly	polluting	ملوث

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-al	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	social
-ful	تحول الاسم او الفعل الى صفة	beautiful
-un	تعطي عكس المعنى	unfortunately

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
give	يعطي	gave	given
buy	يشتري	bought	bought
grow	ينمو	grew	grown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
spread	ينشر	spread	spread
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 help (to) ......

- يمكن أن تستخدم أو لا تستخدم (to) بعد الفعل help

Ex. Many people offer to help plant the trees.

Ex. Join me to raise money and help to plant them.

2 other / others / another

- **other** أخر/أخرى (للإشارة إلى الطرف الاخر) من شخصين أو شيئين

Ex. The police arrested one thief, but the other one got away.

- **others** ضمير جمع يعني "أشخاص أو أشياء أخرى" للإشارة إلى الباقي من مجموعة

Ex. I can see Hana, but where are all the others?

- **another** أخر/أخرى (اضافي - مختلف)

Ex. This apple is delicious. Give me another one.

3 social media

كلمة **media** يمكن أن يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع:

Ex. The media **has** pros and cons.

Ex. The media **have** pros and cons.

4 feel – fall

- **feel (felt - felt)** يشعر

Ex. If you **feel** any pain, you should see the doctor.

- **fall (fell - fallen)** يقع/يسقط

Ex. Take care! The glass will **fall** on the ground.

5 raise – rise

- **raise (v. d)**
  يرفع (فعل متعدي) ويحتاج الى مفعول

Ex. **Raise** your hand if you know the answer.

- **raise (v. d)**
  يجمع مال لغرض خيري

Ex. They **raised** a lot of money to help the poor in our village.

- **rise (v.) rose - risen**
  يرتفع – تشرق (فعل لازم) ولا يحتاج الى مفعول

Ex. Prices **rise** every day.

Ex. The sun **rises** in the east.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My uncle is .... a little better today.
   a. falling b. feeling c. filling d. failing
2. All the national media .... covering the party.
   a. is b. are c. be d. both a and b
3. Some children like football while .... prefer basketball,
   a. another b. others c. other d. the other
4. My mother helped me .... some new clothes.
   a. choose b. to choose c. choosing d. both a and b
5. In each village there is a charity which .... money to help the needy.
   a. rises b. raises c. earns d. gains

Reading

SB Page (32)

Using social media for a good cause

استمع إلى النصوص

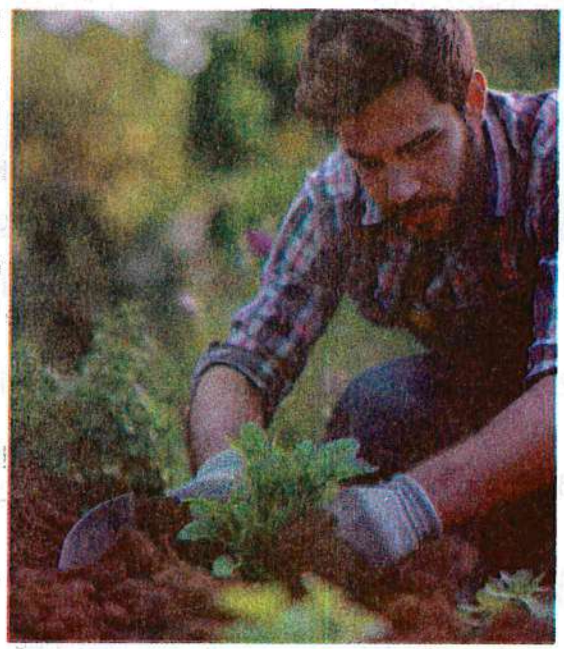
Youssef is a college student(1) who loves planting trees. One day, he hears that a park(2) near his house needs more trees. The city doesn't have enough money to plant more, and Youssef wants to help. He decides to use social media to spread the word(3).

Youssef posts a message on social media. He writes, "Let's make our city greener(4)! The local park needs trees. Join me to raise money(5) and help to plant them!" Youssef includes a link to a crowdfunding page(6) he made for the project.

His friends see the post and share it with their friends too. Soon, people from all over the city are talking about it. Many people give money, and others offer to help plant the trees. Even a local business(7) decides(8) to support Youssef's project and give some money.

١. طالب جامعي
٢. حديقة
٣. ينشر الخبر
٤. اقل تلوثا
٥. يجمع اموال
٦. صفحة للتمويل الجماعي
٧. شركة محلية
٨. يقرر
٩. في يوم الزراعة
١٠. يبدو
١١. فخور
١٢. يحدث فارق
١٣. اداة جيدة
١٤. لغرض نبيل

After a month, Youssef's project raises enough money to buy many trees. On planting day(9), Youssef and a large group of people go to the park to plant the new trees.



When the work is done, the park looks(10) beautiful, with lots of young trees ready to grow. The city thanks Youssef for his hard work, and he feels proud(11) because he made a difference(12). He learns that social media is a great tool(13) to bring people together for a good cause(14). Youssef realizes that he can use it to help make the world a greener place.

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. They will _________ money to make the city greener.
   a. rise b. post c. waste d. raise
2. Youssef feels proud because he _________ a difference.
   a. looked b. saw c. made d. behave
3. How does Youssef help his community?

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. Youssef is a student who loves planting trees. ١ - يوسف طالب يحب غرس الأشجار.
2. He wants to help the local park plant some trees. ٢ - يريد مساعدة الحديقة المحلية في زراعة بعض الأشجار.
3. He uses the social media to raise money for this project. ٣ - يستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي لجمع الأموال لهذا المشروع.

Answers:
1. d. raise
2. c. made
3. He decides to use social media to spread the word about the project.

Audioscript

Ali : Hi, Grandma! Are you going to your doctor's appointment(1) next week?

Grandma: Yes, I am, but I'm not sure how I'll get there(2). I. don't drive anymore, so I need to find a solution(3).

Ali : Don't worry, Grandma. I'm coming with you, we can take the bus! I'm talking to mom later about leaving basketball practice(4) early that day so I can help you.

Grandma: That's so sweet of you! I'm not just going to the doctor, though. I'm stopping by the pharmacy(5) for my new medicine(6), too. Are you okay with that?

Ali : Of course! I'll go everywhere you need to. After the doctor, we're going to the pharmacy, and we're stopping for ice cream after that. I think we both deserve a treat!(7)

Grandma: Ice cream sounds wonderful!(8) I'm looking forward to it. I'm bringing my list with questions(9) for the doctor, too. It's so easy to forget things when I'm there.

Ali : Good idea, Grandma! And I'll remind(10) you of anything you forget. We won't miss a thing(11). What time is your appointment?

Grandma: It's at 2:30 in the afternoon, so I'm planning to be ready around 2:00. Are you coming over here first, or are we meeting there?

١. موعد
٢. نصل هناك
٣. حل
٤. تمرين
٥. الصيدلية
٦. الدواء
٧. نستحق مكافأة/ عزومة
٨. يبدو رائعا
٩. قائمة الأسئلة
١٠. يذكر
١١. لن يفوتنا شيء

Ali : I'm coming to your house around(12) 1:45. We'll leave a bit early so we don't rush(13). I'll help you get ready and make sure we're on time.

Grandma: That's a perfect plan. I'm so glad you're coming with me. And after the pharmacy, I'm hoping to stop at the little store(14) for some fruit. Would that be okay?

Ali : Sure, we'll stop anywhere you need. I'm helping with your bags, too, so you don't have to carry anything heavy.

Grandma: You're being so helpful(15), thank you! It makes everything easier to plan.

Ali : No problem, Grandma. I like spending time with you. We'll have a nice little adventure(16) together!

Grandma: I agree! We're going to have a lovely day(17).

١٢. حوالي
١٣. يسرع
١٤. محل
١٥. معاون /مفيد
١٦. مغامرة
١٧. يوم جميل

Life skills مهارات حياتية

When we use social media to promote a good cause, one important thing we can do is use a hashtag. This makes it easier for people to find the post and understand the good cause.

For example, #HelpAnimals.

عندما نستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي للترويج لقضية جيدة، فإن أحد الأشياء المهمة التي يمكننا القيام بها هو استخدام هاشتاج.
وهذا يسهل على الأشخاص العثور على المنشور وفهم السبب الوجيه.
على سبيل المثال، #HelpAnimals.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. To .... means to have an important effect on something or someone.
   a. spread the word b. have a good cause
   c. raise money d. make a difference
2. To .... means to reach more places or people.
   a. spread the word b. talk about
   c. raise money d. feel proud
3. To .... means to get people to give money, often for a good cause.
   a. spread the word b. have a good cause
   c. raise money d. make a difference

4. To --------- means to make a promise and say you will do something.

a. discourage b. support c. hate d. disagree

5. --------- means to provide money and help for someone to pay for the things they need.

a. Spreading the word b. Learning
c. Crowdfunding d. Having a good cause

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. We should plant more trees to make our community --------- and cleaner.

a. noisier b. greener c. dirtier d. lazier

7. Don't forget to --------- updates about the project on social media.

a. sell b. call c. need d. post

8. I am --------- of the progress we have made so far.

a. proud b. excited c. sad d. ready

9. Social media can be a powerful --------- for spreading your message.

a. message b. team c. link d. tool

10. Do you have any --------- on how to improve the project?

a. ways b. groups c. ideas d. pages

11. There isn't --------- time to answer all these questions.

a. great b. enough c. exciting d. ready

12. Remember to --------- your thoughts and ideas with the team.

a. share b. send c. join d. tell

13. Make sure to --------- everyone in the class to help in the planting day.

a. post b. include c. excite d. share

14. I want to --------- everyone who has contributed to this project.

a. thank b. share c. need d. order

15. I'd like to make a/an --------- to see the doctor.

a. discussion b. appointment c. development d. adventure

16. Can you --------- me about the meeting tomorrow?

a. forget b. remember c. remind d. see

17. Don't --------- through your answers, take your time.

a. think b. rush c. slow d. remember

18. We need to find a --------- to the problem before it gets worse.

a. solution b. situation c. appointment d. adventure

Expressions & prepositions

19. Your small actions can --------- a big difference in someone's life.

a. do b. give c. make d. lose

20. Your message has encouraged many young people to --------- our team.

a. beat b. join c. win d. decide

21. We're raising money --------- a good cause: to help homeless animals.

a. from b. for c. to d. of

22. After a long day of hard work in the garden, I think we --------- a treat!

a. deserve b. cut c. remind d. win

23. I'll make sure you won't --------- a thing at the event.

a. call b. remind c. miss d. lose

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

offer - place - difference - rise - raise

Social media is a powerful tool. We can use social media to make a (1) ----------- in the world. By using social media to (2) ----------- money for good causes, we can help to make a real impact on the lives of others. For example, we can use social media in crowdfunding pages on the internet, or to (3) ----------- our support to those in need. By using social media in this way, we can all play a role in making the world a better (4) -----------.

Language قواعد لغوية

Present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

Subject	Verb to be	
I	am	+ V + ing
He - she - it الاسم المفرد	is	+ V + ing
They - we - you الاسم الجمع	are	+ V + ing

Usage الاستخدام

- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل، خاصة عندما نعرف بالفعل الزمان والمكان. و يستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن الخطط المسبقة ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange / arrangements / prepare / preparation

Ex. The class is visiting the museum next week. Everything has been arranged.

Ex. We are meeting at 9 o'clock on Monday morning.

Ex. He's travelling to Cairo tomorrow. He's got his tickets.

Ex. I'm going home in half an hour. I have arranged it with the boss.

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام) .

Ex. I am watching the match now. Ex. They are doing their homework now.

- يستخدم ليعبر عن أحداث بدأت من فترة ومستمرة ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام:

Ex. I'm studying German these days.

- يستخدم أيضًا ليعبر عن أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. Omar usually has lunch at home. But he is eating at the restaurant today.

Keywords الكلمات الدالة

now	(الآن)	at the present time	(في الوقت الحاضر)	listen	(استمع)
Look!	(انظر)	at the moment	(في هذه اللحظة)		

Negative النفي

- عند نفي زمن المضارع المستمر نضع not بعد am - is - are.

Ex. They are cooking dinner now.

Ex. They aren't cooking dinner now. النفي

Ex. Adel is reading a story now.

Ex. Adel isn't reading a story now. النفي

Question السؤال

- وعند عمل سؤال في زمن المضارع المستمر نقدم am - is - are على الفاعل.
- وعند عمل سؤال بأداة استفهام نستخدم القاعدة الآتية:

? + تكملة الجملة + الفعل + الفاعل + am - is - are + (أداة الاستفهام)

Ex. He is playing football.
Ex. Is he playing football?
Ex. What is he doing?

Notes

- لاحظ أن المناسبات الاجتماعية الرسمية و الحفلات.. إلخ. يتم الترتيب لها مسبقًا حتى وإن لم يذكر ذلك صراحة في الجملة

Ex. My cousin is getting married next July.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Don't worry. I .... with you!
   a. going to come b. am coming c. come d. would come
2. I .... to be ready at around 2:00.
   a. planning b. were planning c. plan d. am planning
3. I .... to your house around 1:45.
   a. going to come b. am coming c. coming d. would come
4. I .... to Mom tonight about leaving basketball practice early.
   a. talk b. would talk c. am talking d. is talking
5. We .... at 3 o'clock this afternoon.
   a. going to come b. meet c. are meeting d. would come
6. .... you visiting your uncle tomorrow?
   a. Do b. Are c. Can d. Have
7. I'm .... my grandma this afternoon.
   a. will visit b. visiting c. visited d. visit
8. They .... at home tonight. They aren't going anywhere.
   a. stays b. are stayed c. are staying d. would stay

9. Omar --------- an English test tomorrow.
   a. is taking   b. took   c. was taking   d. take

10. Ali --------- football this evening.
   a. plays   b. play   c. playing   d. is playing

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. She--------- her grandparents next weekend.
   a. visited   b. is visiting   c. would visit   d. visit

12. They --------- on vacation to Italy in July.
   a. go   b. went   c. are going   d. going

13. We --------- a party for my birthday next month.
   a. are having   b. having   c. have   d. would have

14. He --------- a new job on Monday.
   a. starts   b. is starting   c. starting   d. is started

15. I --------- tomorrow; I'm taking a day off.
   a. working   b. am not working
   c. would work   d. am going to working

16. --------- you going to the concert on Saturday?
   a. Do   b. Are   c. Will   d. Have

17. What are you --------- this weekend?
   a. doing   b. do   c. will do   d. did

18. She --------- for her exams next week.
   a. study   b. was studying   c. is studying   d. is studied

19. They --------- to a new house in the spring.
   a. moving   b. would move   c. move   d. are moving

20. I --------- my friends for dinner tonight.
   a. am meeting   b. meet   c. would meet   d. am meeting

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We--------- (have) a picnic in the park tomorrow.

2. I--------- (not go) to the party; I'm busy.

3. Is she --------- (fly) to London or taking the train?

4. What time --------- (be) you leaving for the airport?

5. They --------- (get) married next year.

6. Nowadays, I --------- (learn) to play the guitar.

7. We--------- (go) to the cinema tonight.

8. She --------- (not cook) dinner; we're ordering pizza.

9. I --------- (look) forward to meet you at the weekend.

10. I --------- (plan) to be ready at around 2:00.

Speaking

Arrangements you have made for next weekend.

• الترتيبات التى قمت بها لعطلة نهاية الاسبوع القادم

Question	Answer
- What are you doing on Saturday? - ماذا ستفعل يوم السبت؟	- I'm meeting my friend Amir on Saturday at 3 p.m. - سأقابل صديقي أمير في السبت الساعة ٣ عصرا
- Really? What are you guys doing? - حقًا؟ ماذا تفعلون يا رفاق؟	- We are having a birthday party. - نحن نقيم حفلة عيد ميلاد
- Are you going to buy presents? - هل ستشتري الهدايا؟	- Yes, sure. - نعم بالتأكيد.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A crowdfunding platform is a great tool for raising money for ---------.
   a. spreading the word b. a good cause
   c. no good reason d. doing exercise

2. We need to --------- money to fund our college project.
   a. rise b. lend c. raise d. help

3. Starting a new --------- needs careful planning and hard work.
   a. college b. project c. idea d. year

4. She volunteers her time at the local hospital .... a good cause.

   a. over   b. for   c. from   d. to

5. Your .... means a lot in achieving our goals.

   a. excitement   b. support   c. cause   d. reason

6. Tomorrow, I .... my friend for lunch.

   a. have met   b. was meeting   c. am meeting   d. would meetig

7. She .... to visit us next weekend.

   a. is coming   b. was coming   c. coming   d. comes

8. We .... to the beach this Saturday.

   a. are gone   b. are going   c. were going   d. would go

9. They .... a movie with us on Friday. They are busy.

   a. weren't watching   b. aren't watching   c. don't watch   d. wouldn't watch

10. We .... camping in the mountains next summer.

   a. were going   b. was going   c. are going   d. went

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

success - marks - friends - parents - giving

Hany is giving a party at home. He has invited some of his (1) .... The party will be at five o'clock in the afternoon. Hany is giving this party because of his (2) .... He has got high (3) .... and his (4) .... are very happy. His mother has made some cakes for them. He says that it will be a good party.

3 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We .... (have) a party on my birthday.
2. She .... (fly) to Paris next Thursday.
3. They .... (move) to their new house next year.
4. I .... (take) a cooking class next Monday.
5. We .... (celebrate) her birthday next weekend.
6. He .... (run) a marathon in two weeks.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Nada is asking Hana about her English homework

Nada : Did you do your English homework?

Hana : Yes, of course.

Nada : When did you (1) -- it ?

Hana : I did it last night.

Nada : Do you like (2) --?

Hana : Sure, I like English.

Nada : Do you practice English outside school?

Hana : (3) --, I do. What about you?

Nada : For me, I also speak it with my older brother.

Hana : Have a nice day. Goodbye.

Nada : (4) --.

5 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

Helping Animals

- الجمل القادمة تساعدك في كتابة الموضوع:

1- Why do you think it's important?
2- Who will you ask for help?
3- Have you got any suggestions?

- إجابة الأسئلة السابقة يساعدك في كتابة الموضوع:

1- I think helping animals is important because..............
2- I will ask my friends, ...
3- I suggest we make posters...

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

literature (n)	الادب	peace (n)	السلام
raft (n)	قارب	background (n)	خلفية / بيئة
share (v.d)	يشارك	trick (v.ed)	يخدع
brings ... closer (v)	يقرب	escaped servant (n)	خادم هارب
adventurous (adj)	مغامر	adventure (n)	مغامرة
friendly (adj)	ودود	shy (adj)	خجول
brave (adj)	شجاع	curious (adj)	شغوف

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

biography (n)	سيرة ذاتية	cleverly (adv)	بمهارة
original (adj)	اصلي	sick (adj)	مريض
later	فيما بعد	bravery (n)	الشجاعة
career (n)	حياة مهنية	strong (adj)	قوي
journalist (n)	صحفي	own (adj)	خاص
pilot (n)	قائد السفينة او الطائرة	safety (n)	الامان
classical (adj)	قديم/ كلاسيكي	flat (adj)	مسطح
riverboat (n)	قارب	risks (n)	مخاطر
inventor (n)	مخترع	describe (d)	يصف
summary (n)	ملخص	change (d)	يغير
close (adj)	قريب	die (d)	يموت
laughter (n)	الضحك	earn (ed)	يكسب مالا
friendship (n)	الصداقة	face (d)	يواجه
challenge	تحدي	protect (ed)	يحمي
beauty (n)	الجمال	behave (d)	يتصرف
nature (n)	الطبيعة	divide (d)	يقسم
updates (n)	تحديثات	celebrate (d)	يحتفل
experience (n)	تجربة	float (ed)	يطفو
decision (n)	قرار	publish (ed)	ينشر (كتاب مثلا)

Definitions

adventurous (adj)	مغامر	Happy to try new and exciting things
raft (n)	قارب	A flat kind of boat that floats on water
share (v)	يشارك	To divide something or do it at the same time
brings ... closer	يقرب	When a situation helps you get to know someone better
peace (n)	السلام	When you feel relaxed
background (n)	خلفية/بيئة	Your family, experiences, living conditions, etc.

Expressions & Prepositions

moved to	ينتقل/ يعزل	as time goes by	كلما مر الوقت
at the age of	في سن	at the heart of the story	في منتصف القصة
make difficult decisions	يتخذ قرارات صعبة	create a 'memory' book	ينشئ كتاب للذكريات
follow his heart	يتبع قلبه	feel relaxed	يشعر بالارتياح
searching for	باحثا عن	keep/ stay in touch with	يبقى على اتصال بـ
stay connected to	يبقى متصلا ب	show interest	يظهر الاهتمام
floats on	يطفو على	share photos	يتشارك الصور
earn money	يكسب مالا	have video calls	يجري مكالمة فيديو
look to	يعتمد على	make new friends	يكون صداقات جديدة
face-to-face	وجه لوجة		
enjoy the beauty of nature	يستمتع بجمال الطبيعة		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
peace	السلم	calmness	war	الحرب
true	حقيقي	right	false	خطأ
strong	قوي	powerful	weak	ضعيف
close	قريب	near	far	بعيد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ist	تحول الاسم أو الفعل إلى اسم الفاعل	journalist
-or	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	inventor
-ship	تحول الاسم أو اسم الفاعل إلى الاسم العام	friendship

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
leave	يغادر	left	left
meet	يقابل	met	met
become	يصبح	became	become
grow	يزداد/ينمو	grew	grown
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
show	يوضح/يعرض	showed	shown

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 work - job - career

- **work** عمل (اسم لا يعد)

Ex. He has a lot of work to do.

- **job** وظيفة (اسم يعد)

Ex. He is searching for a new job.

- **career** سيرة وظيفية - حياة مهنية

Ex. He had a successful career in banking.

2 at the age of - in the age of

- **at the age of** في سن/في عمر

Ex. His uncle got his degree at the age of 25.

- **in the age of** في عصر/في عهد

Ex. We live now in the age of technology.

3 earn - gain - win

- **earn** (مال) يكسب

Ex. He **earns** 10,000 pounds a month.

- **gain** (خبرة معرفة/حب/احترام) يكتسب : شيء معنوي

Ex. We **gained** a lot of experience from our visit to the museum.

- **win** (مباراة/ميدالية/كأس) يكسب/يفوز

Ex. Egypt **won** the cup 7 times.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My sister applied for a new .... in a good company.
   a. job   b. work   c. project   d. career
2. Reading helps you to .... much knowledge.
   a. win   b. explore   c. earn   d. gain
3. .... the age of eight, I moved to a new city.
   a. On   b. At   c. In   d. For

Reading

SB Page (36)

Mark Twain (1835 – 1910)

استمع إلى النصوص

Mark Twain was born Samuel Clemens in Missouri, in the USA. When he was four, his family moved to[1] Hannibal on the Mississippi River. It was an exciting place to live, and it gave Twain the material[2] for his books in later years.

١.انتقل الى
٢.مادة
٣.صحفي
٤.مخترع

After his father died, Twain left school at the age of 12 to work and earn money. He had many different jobs before he started his writing career. He was a riverboat pilot on the great Mississippi River, a journalist[3], a teacher, and an inventor[4]. When he worked as a journalist in Virginia, he changed his name to Mark Twain. He published his first novel, The Adventures of Tom Sawyer in 1876 and The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn soon after that.

The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn

SB Page (36)

The Adventures[1] of Huckleberry Finn tells the story of a young boy, Huck, and his journey down the Mississippi River. Huck is clever and adventurous[2]. He decides to leave home and travel down the river.

Along the way he meets Jim, an escaped servant[3]. The two become close[4] friends. They travel together on a small raft[5] down the river. During the journey they share[6] food, stories, and laughter[7]. Huck and Jim's friendship grows stronger as they face[8] many challenges[9]. They meet different people, some friendly and some not. They look to each other for help and support[10]. Huck sees Jim as a true friend and someone he can understand. The two spend time fishing, exploring[11], and enjoying the beauty of nature. This shared experience brings them closer together which gives Huck a sense of peace he never felt before. Huck often has to make difficult decisions[12] and follow his heart. One day they meet a group [13] of men searching for escaped servants. To protect[14] Jim, Huck cleverly tricks[15] the men, saying that there is a sick family on their raft and they should not come near. This moment shows Huck's bravery[16] and his strong friendship with Jim, as he risks his own safety to help his friend. Through this journey, Huck learns important lessons about friendship. At the start he often behaved[17] badly, but as time goes by, he becomes a much better person. His friendship with Jim is at the heart of the story. It shows how two people from very different backgrounds[18] can become good friends.

١. مغامرات
٢. مغامر
٣.خادم هارب
٤.مقرب
٥.قارب
٦.يتشاركوا
٧.الضحك
٨.يواجهوا
٩.تحديات
١٠. المساندة
١١. استكشاف
١٢.القرارات
١٣.مجموعة
١٤. يحمي
١٥. خدع
١٦.الشجاعة
١٧. تصرف
١٨.خلفيات مختلفة

Writing

What can you do to keep in touch with friends when they move away?

ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل للبقاء على اتصال مع الأصدقاء عندما يبتعدون؟

Write some tips on how to stay in touch with friends

1. Send messages every day
   - Write short messages to each other. It can be a simple "Hi, how are you?" or "Guess what I did today!" You don't need to write long messages; even small updates are nice!
   - اكتبوا رسائل قصيرة لبعضكم البعض. يمكن أن تكون عبارة بسيطة "مرحبًا، كيف حالك؟" أو "خمن ماذا فعلت اليوم!" لا تحتاج إلى كتابة رسائل طويلة؛ حتى التحديثات الصغيرة جميلة!
2. Have video calls
   - Choose a time each week or month to talk online. You can talk face-to-face and feel like you're spending time together.
   - اختر وقتًا كل أسبوع أو شهر للتحدث عبر الإنترنت. يمكنك التحدث وجهًا لوجه وتشعر وكأنك تقضي الوقت معًا.

3. Share photos

- Take pictures of things you see, like funny signs, your lunch, or places you go. Sharing pictures is a fun way to show what's going on in your life.

- التقط صورًا للأشياء التي تراها، مثل اللافتات المضحكة أو غداءك أو الأماكن التي تذهب إليها. تعد مشاركة الصور طريقة ممتعة لإظهار ما يحدث في حياتك.

4. Play online games together

- Find games you both like and play together online. This way, you can laugh and have fun, even if you're not in the same place.

- ابحث عن الألعاب التي تحبها والعبها معًا عبر الإنترنت. بهذه الطريقة، يمكنك أن تضحك وتستمتع، حتى لو لم تكونا في نفس المكان.

5. Try to visit

- Ask your parents if you can plan a visit. It can be something to look forward to together!

- اسأل والديك إذا كان بإمكانك التخطيط للزيارة. يمكن أن يكون شيئًا نتطلع إليه معًا!

6. Show interest in your friend's new life

- Ask questions like "What's your new school like?" or "Have you made any new friends?" It helps you stay connected to their world.

- اطرح أسئلة مثل "كيف تبدو مدرستك الجديدة؟" أو "هل قمت بتكوين صداقات جديدة؟" يساعدك ذلك على البقاء على اتصال بعالمهم.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. A/An .... person is happy to try new and exciting things.
   a. adventurous b. quiet c. shy d. frightened
2. A .... is a flat kind of boat that floats on water.
   a. raft b. journey c. van d. truck
3. To .... means to divide something or do it at the same time.
   a. disagree b. share c. stay d. forget
4. To .... means a situation that helps you get to know someone better.
   a. bring closer b. bring stronger c. feel relaxed d. show interest
5. When you feel relaxed, you are at ....
   a. peace b. worry c. piece d. funny
6. Your .... is your family, experiences, living conditions, etc.
   a. background b. behavior c. visits d. biography

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. The .... copy of the book was found in the library.
   a. flat b. original c. strong d. friendly
8. They will meet .... in the evening.
   a. later b. lately c. slowly d. easy
9. She .... the job wasn't as easy as it might seem.
   a. disagreed b. discovered c. stayed d. explored

10. She found a new --------- as an assistant in the city mall.
 a. job b. work c. project d. moment
11. The --------- flew the plane safely to the airport.
 a. farmer b. dentist c. pilot d. driver
12. The --------- created a new machine for cutting vegetables.
 a. pilot b. inventor c. servant d. gardener
13. They went on an --------- in the mountains.
 a. adventure b. experiment c. adventurous d. experience
14. Can you give me a --------- of the book?
 a. bakery b. reader c. bravery d. summary
15. They are --------- friends. They always help each other.
 a. open b. close c. late d. early
16. You can --------- much money if you work hard.
 a. beat b. earn c. gain d. win
17. They met in Alexandria --------- the summer vacation.
 a. during b. when c. while d. as
18. I can hear --------- coming from the next room.
 a. laughed b. rough c. laughter d. noisy
19. They are close friends and their --------- lasted for years.
 a. friendly b. friendship c. friends d. unfriendly
20. Winning the race was a difficult --------- for me.
 a. challenge b. change c. charge d. charger

Expressions & prepositions

21. She decided --------- change her career.
 a. for b. to c. at d. of
22. My grandmother died --------- the age of eighty.
 a. for b. to c. at d. of
23. As the school manager, he has to --------- difficult decisions.
 a. do b. work c. spend d. make
24. She spent 2 hours searching --------- her lost bag.
 a. for b. to c. at d. of
25. Going to the club helped me to --------- new friends.
 a. do b. work c. spend d. make

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

raft - brought – helped - adventure - escaped

Once upon a time, there was a servant who loved (1) ----------- . One day, the servant decided to escape. He set off on a (2) ----------- down the river. Along the way, they met some travelers and shared stories and tricks they picked up from books. This adventurous journey (3) ----------- them closer. The (4) ----------- servant found not only freedom but also friendship.

Speaking

Talking about making friends.

• التحدث عن تكوين الاصدقاء.

Question	Answer
- What makes a good friend? - ما الذي يساعد في تكوين صديق جيد؟	- A good friend is someone who is trustworthy and loyal, who you can rely on in both good times and bad. - الصديق الجيد هو شخص جدير بالثقة ومخلص، ويمكنك الاعتماد عليه في الأوقات الجيدة والسيئة.
- What would life be like without friends? - كيف كان سيكون شكل الحياة بدون الاصدقاء؟	- Life would be difficult without friends. - الحياة ستكون صعبة بدون الأصدقاء
- How can you help your friends? - كيف يمكنك مساعدة أصدقاءك؟	- To be there for each other during both good and bad times. - أن نكون متواجدين لمساعدة بعضنا البعض خلال الأوقات الجيدة والسيئة.

General Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is a _________ neighbor. We always help each other on holidays.
   a. friendly b. silly c. noisy d. hard
2. The _________ music played in the background is wonderful.
   a. tasty b. classical c. noisy d. frightened
3. They took a ride on the_________ down the Nile.
   a. riverboat b. plane c. kite d. taxi
4. Walking in the park, they enjoyed the _________ of nature.
   a. beauty b. beautiful c. beautify d. noise
5. Her _________ taught her valuable lessons.
   a. experiment b. experience c. expert d. export
6. He is a kind person who has a _________ of peace.
   a. fact b. risk c. sense d. skill
7. _________ this journey, Omar learns important lessons about friendship.
   a. Though b. As c. When d. Through
8. As a leader, he has to _________ difficult decisions.
   a. tell b. do c. make d. break

9. She ---------- sick after eating the food.
   a. filled   b. spread   c. put   d. felt

10. He ---------- solved the puzzle and got the prize.
   a. lovely   b. cleverly   c. badly   d. hardly

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

swim - sea - hotel - market - spend

Every summer holiday, Maher goes to Alexandria with his family. They usually ❶ ------------ two weeks there. They stay in a small ❷ ------------ near the sea at Sidi Bisher. Every morning, they go to the ❸ ------------ Maher's children play, run and ❹ ------------ in the sea. Their mother watches them. At three o'clock, they go back to the hotel to have their lunch .

3 Complete the following dialog:

Adel meets a tourist at the Hilton.

Adel : Nice to meet you. When did you arrive here?

Tourist : I arrived here two days ago.

Adel : ❶ -- do you come from?

Tourist : I come from Britain.

Adel : How long will you stay here?

Tourist : I'll stay ❷ -- two weeks.

Adel : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : No, it's my ❸ -- visit.

Adel : Did you visit the Cairo ❹ --?

Tourist : Not yet, I'll visit it the next week.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"Some tips to your younger brother to stay in touch with his friends"

Review on Unit 9

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

entrance (n)	مدخل	brave (adj)	شجاع
real (adj)	حقيقي	keep (v)	يحفظ / يحافظ على
fake (adj)	مزيف	include (d)	يتضمن/يشتمل على
left out (adj)	مهمل	offer (v. ed)	يعرض/ يقدم
good cause (n)	هدف جيد/غرض محبب	support (v. ed)	يدعم / يساعد
spread the word	ينشر الخبر (الموضوع)	raise (v, d)	يجمع (مال)
crowdfunding (n)	التمويل الجماعي	make a difference	يحدث فارق
crowd (n)	جمهور	peace (n)	السلام
fund (n – v.ed)	يمول / تمويل	background (n)	خلفية / بيئة
literature (n)	الادب	trick (v.ed)	يخدع
raft (n)	قارب	escaped servant (n)	خادم هارب
share (v.d)	يشارك	adventure (n)	مغامرة
brings ... closer (v)	يقرب	shy (adj)	خجول
adventurous (adj)	مغامر	curious (adj)	شغوف
friendly (adj)	ودود	care (d)	يهتم



Language قواعد لغوية

The future simple tense زمن المستقبل البسيط

- يمكن أن نستخدم اكثر من صيغة للتعبير عن المستقبل وسندرس فى هذا الدرس **be going to / will** كما يلى

will and going to

- سوف للتعبير عن المستقبل **(be) going to**

Form التكوين

Subject	be	
I	am	+ going to + inf. مصدر الفعل
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	is	
We / You / They / اسم جمع	are	

Ex. He is going to buy a new house next year.

Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم (be) going to للتعبير عن الآتى:

١- تنبؤ فى المستقبل مع وجود دليل

Ex. It's cloudy. I think it is going to rain.

٢- خطط مستقبلية — Ex. I am ('m) going to visit Sinai.

٣- قرارات مسبقة — Ex. I am going to watch TV in the afternoon.

٤- نوايا — Ex. I'm going to buy a jacket next week.

٥- أحداث على وشك الوقوع — Ex. Watch out! A car is going to hit you.

Making predictions عمل تنبؤات

(will / will not) for future predictions

Form التكوين

كل الضمائر + will ('ll) + inf. مصدر الفعل

Ex. I think it will ('ll) be very cold next winter.

Usage الاستخدام

• نستخدم (will + inf) للتحدث عن

١- التنبؤ بشئ فى المستقبل بدون دليل — Ex. I think it will be hot tomorrow.

٢- القرارات السريعة — Ex. The phone is ringing. I'll answer it.

٣- العرض — Ex. I will help you with your homework. (offer)

٤- الطلب — Ex. Will you send us some photos? (request)

٥- للحقائق المستقبلية — Ex. I'll be 16 next week.

٦- للتهديد — Ex. I'll punish you if you don't keep quiet.

Notes

• تستخدم الكلمات الآتية مع (will) للتعبير عن تنبؤ بدون دليل فى المستقبل:

think / believe / hope / expect / (be) sure / perhaps / probably / possibly

Ex. I **think** that Maha will arrive soon.

Ex. We will **probably** visit Ali tomorrow.

Present continuous زمن المضارع المستمر

Form التكوين

Subject		Verb to be	
I		am	+ V + ing
He - she - it	الاسم المفرد	is	+ V + ing
They - we - you	الاسم الجمع	are	+ V + ing

Usage الاستخدام

- يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أفعال تحدث في الوقت الحاضر (أثناء الكلام) .

Ex. I am watching the match now. **Ex.** They are doing their homework now.

- يستخدم ليعبر عن أحداث بدأت من فترة ومستمرة ولا يشترط أن تحدث وقت الكلام:

Ex. I'm studying German these days.

- نستخدم المضارع المستمر للحديث عن الترتيبات في المستقبل، خاصة عندما نعرف بالفعل الزمان والمكان. و يستخدم أيضا للتعبير عن الخطط المسبقة ويدل على ذلك كلمات مثل:

arrange / arrangements / prepare / preparation

Ex. The class is visiting the museum next week. Everything has been arranged.

- يستخدم أيضًا ليعبر عن أحداث مؤقتة:

Ex. Omar usually has lunch at home. But he is eating at the restaurant today.

Speaking

Arrangements you have made for next weekend.

- الترتيبات التى قمت بها لعطلة نهاية الاسبوع القادم

Question	Answer
- What are you doing on Saturday? - ماذا ستفعل يوم السبت؟	- I'm meeting my friend Amir on Saturday at 3 p.m. - سأقابل صديقي أمير في السبت الساعة ٣ عصرا
- Really? What are you guys doing? - حقًا؟ ماذا تفعلون يا رفاق؟	- We are having a birthday party. - نحن نقيم حفلة عيد ميلاد
- Are you going to buy presents? - هل ستشتري الهدايا؟	- Yes, sure. - نعم بالتأكيد.

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات انشائية و رسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1-2

My plans for the weekend

This weekend, I plan to relax and rest after a busy week. On Saturday, I am going to rest by sleeping and enjoying a delicious breakfast. In the afternoon, I hope to meet up with friends or maybe have a picnic in the park if the weather is nice. On Sunday, I intend to do some light exercise, like going for a walk or a bike ride, to refresh myself for the next week. Overall, my weekend plans include having fun and spending good time with loved ones.

Lessons 3-4

Helping animals

Helping animals is important to me because they deserve love and care. I volunteer at the local animal shelter where I feed, walk, and play with the dogs and cats. I also donate to organizations that protect wildlife and endangered animals. I hope others know how to treat all creatures with kindness and respect. Every small act of kindness towards animals can make a big difference in their lives.

Lessons 5-6

Some tips to your younger brother to stay in touch with his friends "

Staying in touch with friends is important for a happy life. Here are some simple tips for my younger brother to keep his friendships strong. Firstly, he can make regular video calls or phone chats to catch up with his friends and share what's going on in their lives. Secondly, sending a quick message or funny photos every now and then can show that he's thinking about them. Lastly, planning fun activities together, like playing online games or watching movies together, can create shared memories despite the distance. Remember, putting in effort to stay connected can make friendships last a lifetime.

Al- Azhar Test

Your plans for the summer holiday

This summer holiday, I aim to go on a journey of relaxation and exploration. I plan to visit the seaside to lie in the sun, feel the sand between my toes, and listen to the relaxing sounds of the waves. Additionally, I intend to go on nature hikes, enjoying the beauty of the outdoors. I also spend good time with family and friends, organizing barbecues and picnics to create lasting memories.

Test Unit 9

"The importance of friendship"

Friendship is important in life as it brings happiness, support, and a lot of good meanings. Friends are like a guiding light during dark times, offering comfort and understanding. They celebrate our successes and stand by us through failures. Friends help us feel included and less alone. Good friends listen to us, share in our laughter, and offer help.

Al Azhar Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Mohab is .... years old.
   a. 4   b. 14   c. 24   d. 40
2. Alexandria is in the .... of Egypt.
   a. east   b. north   c. south   d. west

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

"Adel and Ali are talking about their plans for mid-year holiday"

Adel : Where are you going next week?

Ali : We are going to Alexandria next week

Adel : 1 ....?

Ali : With my parents and my sisters.

Adel : 2 ....?

Ali : We will stay for seven days . Do you have plans for mid-year holiday?

Adel : 3 ....

Ali : Have a nice holiday in Luxor.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was a wide .... at the front of the building.
   a. enter   b. entrance   c. entering   d. entry
2. The Orman Charity hopes to .... one million pound to help the poor.
   a. rise   b. buy   c. raise   d. sell
3. All countries want to live in .... with their neighbors .
   a. peace   b. path   c. bath   d. piece
4. I'm getting tired of your silly ....
   a. tracks   b. trucks   c. trunks   d. tricks
5. After the death of her parents , she .... sad and alone .
   a. fell   b. felt   c. filled   d. failed

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Magi is a clever girl. She is going to be a nurse. She is having classes at a nursing school near her home. She has to study hard. She can feed and wash a sick child. She can also change its clothes. One day her little brother Ahmed, was sick. He had a bad cold and couldn't go to school.

Magi advised him to stay at home or other children would catch his cold. She gave him a glass of orange juice and opened the window wide to let fresh air in. Her mother smiled. "A sick child in the family is good practice for a nurse, isn't it Magi?" She said .

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What is Magi going to be?

----

2. What can Magi do?

----

3. Why couldn't Ahmed go to school?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. Magi advised Ahmed to ....

   a. go to school b. go to the park c. stay at home. d. eat ice cream.

5. Magi opened the window to ....

   a. let fresh air in. b. help Ahmed to sleep.
   c. clean the room d. catch cold.

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. I **attend** a concert with my friends next Friday. (......................)
2. I've decided what to do at the weekend. I **have visited** my uncle. (......................)
3. I promise I **am buying** you a nice present. (......................)
4. I'm sure you **enjoy** the party. (......................)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

Your plans for the summer holiday

Test on Unit 9

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Heba went to .... and bought bread.
   a. the butcher's b. the bakery
   c. the greengrocer's d. the grocer's
2. She paid the greengrocer .... pounds.
   a. forty b. a hundred c. sixty d. four hundred
3. Heba went home ....
   a. on foot b. by bus c. by taxi d. by car

B: Listen and complete:

4. Heba paid four hundred pounds for the ....
5. Heba bought .... for twenty pounds.
6. Heba bought carrots for .... pounds.

B: Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Let's .... the word about this project to reach more people.
   a. tell b. spread c. make d. break
2. Is the vase a real antique or a/an .... one?
   a. original b. fake c. true d. false

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

need - trust - offer - support- share

Friends always care about each other and (1) .... each other in good and bad times. They laugh together, cry together, and (2) .... secrets. A true friend is someone you can (3) .... and rely on. Friends listen to each other and (4) .... help when needed. Good friends are like stars; you may not always see them, but you know they are always there.

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A famous doctor was always ready to help his poor neighbors. One day, an old woman came to his house and asked if he would come to see her husband who was sick and unable to work. The doctor followed the poor woman to her house. When he entered, he noticed that there was no food in the house. He examined the man, then asked the woman to come to his hospital to give her some medicine. The woman went <u>**there**</u> and he gave her a small box. He told her that she would find the instructions inside the box. When the woman reached her home, she opened the box. It contained the money the doctor had. On a piece of paper, he wrote these words; "To be taken when it is needed."

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There was .... in the box.
   a. medicine   b. money   c. food   d. gold
2. The woman's husband was ....
   a. ill   b. rich   c. young   d. clever

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Do you think that the doctor is kind or not? Why?

....

4. How did the doctor know that the family was poor?

....

5. What did the doctor write on the piece of paper?

....

6. What does the underlined word "<u>**there**</u>" refer to ?

....

C: Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I .... Karim outside the movie theater in 5 minutes.
   a. am meeting   b. meet   c. would meet   d. meets
2. I think our team .... the next match.
   a. are going to win   b. will win   c. would win   d. are winning

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Don't worry. I ___________ (help) you with your homework.
2. She is saving. She ___________ (buy) a birthday gift for her sister.
3. Ola's birthday is next Friday. She ___________ (be) 10 years old.
4. They ___________ (move) house next year. It's arranged.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Abdo is sending an email to his friend

Anas : What are you doing?

Abdo : I'm going to turn on my laptop and log onto the internet.

Anas : (1) ______________________ are you going to log onto the internet ?

Abdo : To send an email to my friend.

Anas : What are you going to (2) ______________________?

Abdo : I'm going to send one of my photos.

Anas : Do you use the internet to play games?

Abdo : Yes, I (3) ______________________.

Anas : Can you show me how to send an email?

Abdo : (4) ______________________ It is easy.

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on :

[مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار]

"The importance of friendship"

Review (C)

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

grabber (n)	خطاف/الملتقط	bricks (n)	طوب
shore (n)	شاطئ	harmful (n)	ضار/غير مفيد
soil (n)	تربة زراعية		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

volunteer program	برنامج تطوعي	local people	السكان المحليون
local beach	شاطئ محلى	products (n)	منتجات
trash (n)	قمامة	care center (n)	مركز رعاية
leader (n)	قائد	towers (n)	ابراج
glove (n)	قُفَاز	toy kitchen	لعب المطبخ
can (n)	علبة صفيح	song (n)	اغنية
bottle (n)	زجاجة	playroom (n)	غرفة اللعب
part of (n)	جزء من	special (adj)	خاص/مميز
a group of	مجموعة من	proud (adj)	فخور
garden (n)	حديقة	healthy (adj)	صحي
community (n)	المجتمع	wet (adj)	مبتل/رطب
gardening (n)	بستنة	excited (adj)	متحمس
volunteer (v) (ed)	يتطوع	pleased (adj)	مسرور
tidy (v) (ied)	يرتب	clean up (v) (ed)	ينظف
water (v) (ed)	يروي	pick up (v) (ed)	يلتقط
arrive (v) (d)	يصل	believe (v) (d)	يصدق
set up (v)	يؤسس/يقيم	colorful (adj)	ملون

Review C

Definitions

shore	شاطئ	The land along the edge of the sea.
bricks	طوب	Small rectangular blocks used in construction.
harmful	ضار	Causing a bad effect, injury, or damage.
soil	تربة زراعية	A natural material that plants need to grow.
grabber	خطاف	A device you use to pick up things from the ground.

Reading

SB Page (43)

استمع إلى النصوص

Today, I spent the afternoon with Donia. Donia is my older sister who loves sport. So today, she was teaching me how to play table tennis (1). I was really excited because it looks fun and I wanted to learn. First, Donia showed me how to hold the bat (2) in my right hand (3). Then, she showed me how to throw the ball into the air with my left hand and hit it with my bat. At first, I couldn't hit the ball. If I hit the ball, it went into the net (4). I was really upset (5) but Donia told me to keep trying. She was very kind and she didn't get angry (6). She kept showing me what to do.

١. تنس الطاولة
٢. يمسك المضرب
٣. اليد اليمنى
٤. شبكة
٥. متضايق
٦. يغضب

After a while, I actually hit the ball over the net! I was so pleased! I practiced again and I got better. Then Donia said "OK, I'll hit the ball to you and now you hit it back to me." After a while, we were hitting the ball to each other. I missed the ball sometimes but it was fine. In the end, I could play a game. Donia won the game of course but that didn't matter. Today was a great day!

SB Page (42)

There's a hospital, a swimming pool, and other facilities (1) in our town. It has got a population (2) of 21,000 people and it is in the countryside so there are lots of beautiful green spaces. The town is getting bigger and there's a lot of growth (3) happening at the moment. Construction (4) will be great for the town but we need good planning (5) so they don't build on all the green spaces.

١. مرافق
٢. تعداد السكان
٣. نمو
٤. بناء
٥. تخطيط

SB Page (40)

HOME | ABOUT | DOWNLOAD

a.

Last month, I joined a weekend volunteer program[1] to clean up our local beach. Every Friday and Saturday, we spent a few hours picking up trash. We started early each morning. The team leaders[2] gave us gloves, trash bags, and special grabbers to pick up the trash. Some volunteers were students like me, and others were families or local people. Each weekend, we cleaned the beach and along the shore. I couldn't believe how much trash we found. There were bottles, cans, old shoes, and lots of plastic! I felt very proud to be part of the volunteer team, and pleased that we were helping to keep our beach clean.

١- برنامج تطوع
٢- قادة

Nadia, Egypt



b.

Last summer, a group of students from my class volunteered at a community garden. We volunteered three days a week for a month. We looked after the vegetables and fruit trees, and we tidied[3] the garden to keep the plants healthy. It was a hot summer so we watered[4] the garden to keep the soil wet[5]. When the vegetables were ready to pick, we put them in boxes and took them to families and old people[6] in the community. I really enjoyed helping people in this way. I learned a lot about gardening and how to grow vegetables without using harmful products. I can't wait to visit the garden again next year!

٣- رتب
٤- سقى
٥- رطب/مبلل
٦- كبار السن

Ben, United States



c.

Last week, I volunteered at a day care center for children where my aunt Mary works. I love children so I was excited. I arrived early in the morning and met the people who work there. First, I helped set up toys and games to play with the children. We built towers[7] with bricks and we played in the toy kitchen. Then, we sang some songs and drew colorful pictures[8]. At the end of the day, I read the children a story which they loved. Then, I helped clean up the playroom and I said goodbye. I was very tired, but I felt happy. I learned a lot about child care and I'm going to volunteer there again!

٧- أبراج
٨- صور ملونة

Maggie, UK



SB Page (41)

Sherif : Hi, Magdy! Guess what? This weekend, my family and I are going to Alexandria!

Magdy : Oh, that's great Sherif! What are you going to do there?

Sherif : We're visiting the famous library. You know, the Bibliotheca Alexandrina. I think we're going to spend a whole day there. My dad says we can see some ancient manuscripts and learn about Egypt's history.

Magdy : That sounds amazing! I've always wanted to go there. Where are you staying?

Sherif : We're staying in a small hotel near the Corniche which is near the sea. Dad says we'll have a great view of the sea from the hotel. I'm so excited.

Magdy : That's perfect! How are you getting there?

Sherif : We're driving. Uncle Youssef is coming with us, so we'll go in his car. It's bigger than ours and more comfortable.

Magdy : Nice! How long does it take to get to Alexandria from here?

Sherif : About three hours so we're leaving early on Saturday morning.

Magdy : Are you planning to visit other places, too?

Sherif : Yes! My mom wants to see the Citadel of Qaitbay. It's an old fort by the sea which they built on the ruins of the ancient Lighthouse.

Magdy : That sounds amazing.

Sherif : And we're going to have a picnic in the Montazah Gardens. My sister Nadine says there's a palace there which will be amazing to see.

Magdy : Wow, you're going to be busy! What about food?

Sherif : Oh, we're having dinner in a seafood restaurant on Saturday night. Mom says Alexandria has the best fish and seafood. I can't wait!

Magdy : Now, you're making me hungry!

Sherif : I'll take lots of photos to show you when I get back.

Magdy : Have a great trip, Sherif.

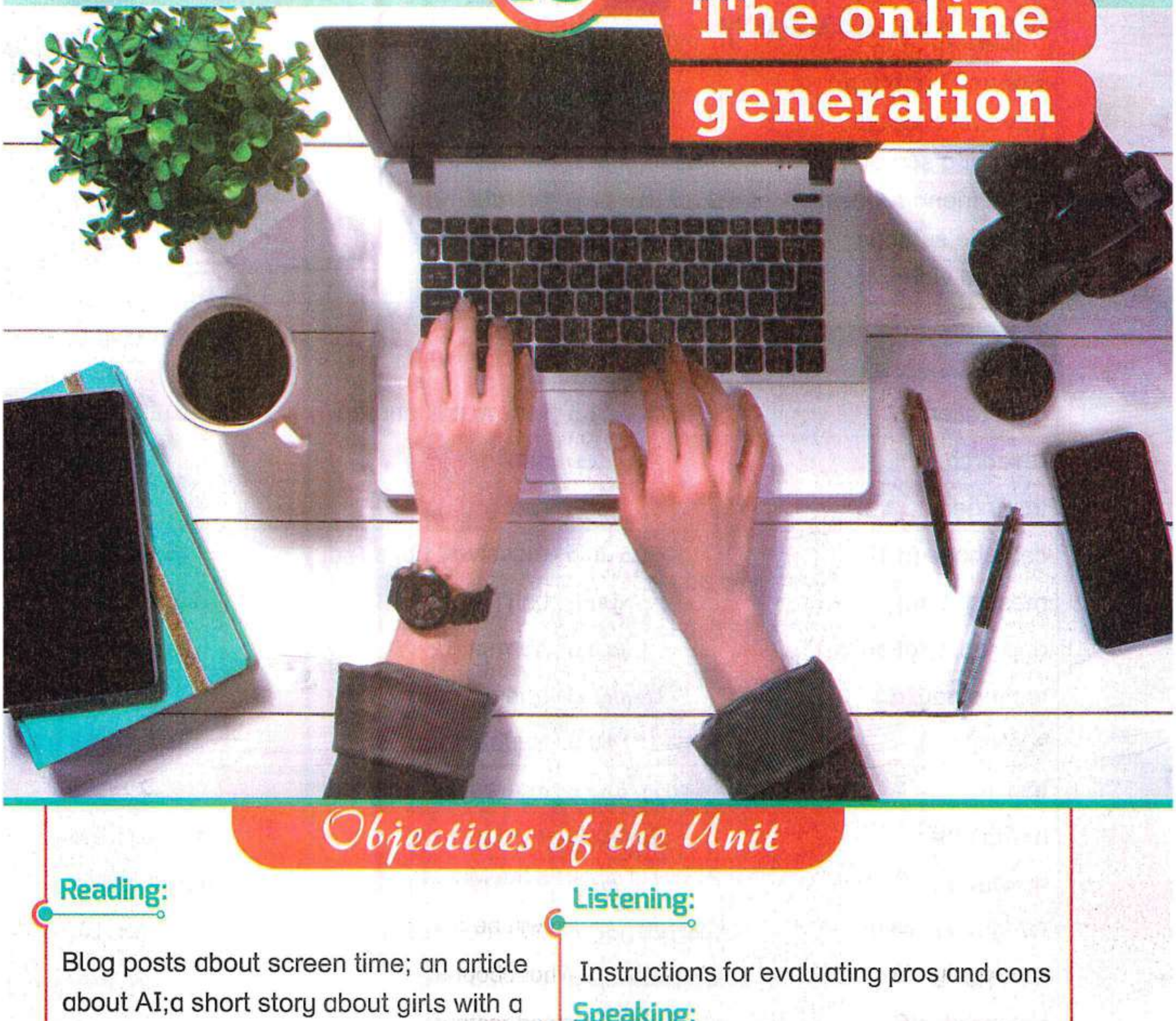
Sherif : Thanks, Magdy!

New Hello!

Beyond Words

Unit 10

The online generation



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

Blog posts about screen time; an article about AI;a short story about girls with a disability

Writing:

A reflective journal about digital habits; Using adjectives to make writing more interesting; Using visual input as a prompt for writing

Listening:

Instructions for evaluating pros and cons

Speaking:

Talking about pros and cons

Language:

Using the zero and first conditionals, including common mistakes

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 56-59

استمع إلى المفردات

المفردات الرئيسية

Key Vocabulary

streaming platform (n)	منصة البث	algorithms*(n)	الخوارزميات
have an account	لديه حساب	science fiction (n)	خيال علمي
look at a screen	ينظر الى شاشة	machine learning	التعلم الألي
send friend requests	يرسل طلبات صداقة	private (adj.)	خاص
change settings	يغير الاعدادات	personalize (v)(d)	يخصص
upload video	يرفع فيديو		

المفردات الاضافية

Vocabulary

generation (n.)	جيل من الناس	renewable energy (n.)	الطاقة المتجددة
research (n.)	بحث	similar (adj.)	مُشابه لـ
teenager (n.)	مراهق	real (adj.)	حقيقي
cell phone (n.)	هاتف خلوي	massive / huge (adj.)	هائل/ضخم
message (n.)	رسالة	tiny (adj.)	صغير جدا/ضئيل
app=application (n.)	تطبيق	normal (adj.)	معتاد/طبيعي
technology (n.)	تكنولوجيا	boring (adj.)	ممل
system (n.)	نظام	terrible (adj.)	فظيع/رهيب
task (n.)	مهمة/وظيفة	interested (adj.)	مهتم
human (n.)	إنسان/بشر	surely (adv.)	طبعا/دون شك
movie (n.)	فيلم	expressions (n.)	تعبيرات (الوجه)
TV shows (n.)	عروض تلفزيونية	download (ed)	يُنزل من
data (n.)	بيانات/معطيات	upload (ed)	يُحمل إلى
homepage (n.)	الصفحة الرئيسية	change (d)	يغير
process (n.)	عملية (تحتاج خطوات)	click (ed)	ينقر على
suggestion (n.)	اقتراح	notice (d)	يلاحظ
online shopping (n.)	التسوق الإلكتروني	enter (ed)	يدخل
advertisement (n.)	إعلان	shop (ped)	يتسوق

الخوارزميات: مجموعة من التعليمات التي تُعطى لأجهزة الكمبيوتر حتى تتمكن من تحليل البيانات واتخاذ القرارات وأداء المهام

antonym (n.) مضاد	encourage (d) يشجع
synonym (n.) مرادف	game (d) = play video games يلعب ألعاب الفيديو
AI = Artificial Intelligence (n.) الذكاء الاصطناعى	

Expressions & Prepositions

go online يتصل بالإنترنت	amount of time قدر من الوقت
do homework يقوم بأداء الواجب	put their phones down يترك/يضع الهاتف
get a message يتلقى رسالة	for a walk من أجل تمشية
Be not on social media لا يمتلك حسابات على وسائل التواصل الإجتماعي	without (n / v-ing) بدون
	turn off يطفى
make a decision يتخذ قرار	go out يخرج من مكان (للنزهة)
do tasks يؤدي مهام	for the first time للمرة الأولى
solve problem يحل مشكلة	in the future في المستقبل
give an answer يعطي إجابة	on the platform على المنصة
do things يقوم بعمل الأشياء	on the students' faces على وجوه الطلاب
advertisement for اعلان لـ	

Definitions

streaming platform منصة البث	videos that are sent over the internet in a continuous(1) way.
machine learning التعلم الآلي	the way computers/machines improve.
algorithms الخوارزميات	a set of(2) instructions(3) a computer uses to make decisions.
science fiction خيال علمي	stories about life in the future.
personalize يخصص	to make something suitable(4) for a particular person.
synonyms مرادفات	words that have the same meaning as or a similar meaning to another word.
antonyms متضادات	words that have different or opposite meaning to another word.

١. مستمر
٢. مجموعة من
٣. التعليمات
٤. مناسب

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
massive ضخم	huge	tiny ضئيل
bad سيء	terrible	great عظيم
dangerous خطير	risky	safe آمن
normal طبيعي	usual	abnormal غير طبيعي
funny مضحك	comic	serious جاد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
up-	نقل شيء من مكان إلى مكان آخر	upload
re-	تكرار/مرة أخرى = again	renewable
en-	تحول الاسم إلى فعل	encourage
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	advertisement
-ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	suggestion
-ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	interested

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
send يرسل	sent	sent
show يوضح/يبين	showed	shown
spend يقضي	spent	spent
buy يشتري	bought	bought
understand يفهم	understood	understood
give يعطي	gave	given

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 Always with present continuous

- تأتي Always مع المضارع البسيط لتعبر عن عادة ولكن تأتي مع المضارع المستمر لتعبر عن الشكوى والانزعاج من تكرار الفعل.

Ex. They always send friend requests. (habit).

Ex. They are always sending friend requests. (complaint).

2 Download (from / onto) - Upload (to)

Download: • تحميل: إستقبال الملفات من الإنترنت او من جهاز اخر الي جهازك

Ex. Download the app from the internet onto your laptop.

Upload: • رفع: إرسال الملفات من جهازك إلى الانترنت او الي جهاز آخر.

Ex. Upload your homework to the school's website.

3 Verb patterns

1- spend time + ing

Ex. Teenagers spend hours looking at a screen every day.

2- can't stop + ing

Ex. They can't stop talking about the holiday.

3- enjoy + ing

Ex. I still enjoy going out and playing sports.

4- learn (how) to + inf

Ex. She enjoyed learning (how) to play the piano.

4 walk (v. ed/n) / post (v.ed/n)

- بعض الكلمات تعتبر افعال واسماء فى نفس الوقت:

- **walk** يمشى/تمشية

  Ex. My little girl is learning to walk.{v}

  Ex. We went for a walk in the country.{n}

- **post** منشور/يشارك منشور

  Ex. I posted the card two months ago. {v}

  Ex. I love reading her posts about history.{n}

5 Instead / Instead of

• Instead "تستخدم كظرف بمعني" بدلا من ذلك	• Instead of + v.ing or noun "تستخدم كعبارة بمعني "بدلا من
Ex. I wanted to go to the beach, but it started raining, so I stayed home instead. غالبا في نهاية جملة او في بداية جملة	Ex. He took the bus instead of (driving) his car. غالبا ما تاتي في وسط الجملة.

Notes

لاحظ:

Ex. I usually read a book in the hour before I go to bed instead to give my eyes a rest from looking at a screen.

استخدام to هنا اختصار ل in order to للتعبير عن الغرض.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He .... singing in the shower. It's an annoying habit!
   a. always   b. always is   c. is always   d. are
2. .... your photo to the class gallery online.
   a. Download   b. Upload   c. Load   d. Road
3. Heba spends much time .... to her friends.
   a. chat   b. chatting   c. chats   d. chatted
4. I'm going to take the dog for........
   a. walk   b. walked   c. a walk   d. walker
5. I read a book........ using my phone.
   a. instead to   b. instead of   c. instead   d. a and b

Reading

SB Page (45)

استمع إلى النصوص

Home / ABOUT / DOWNLOAD

Research(1) shows that some teenagers(2) spend a massive(3) 8.5 hours looking at a screen every day. This huge amount(4) of time doesn't even include the time teenagers look at screen when they do their homework. About 95% of teenagers have cell phones, but this was a tiny 23% in 2011.



My teenage children have their own cell phones with their own accounts(5). I get a message every time they want to download an app(6) or buy something from a game. I click(7) and then they can do it.

I notice that my children often find it difficult to put their phones down and do something else. I always ask them if they want to come for a walk with me in the afternoon - without their phones - so they can do something else instead(8). Looking at phones of other people's best moments can make teenagers feel like their normal lives(9) are boring too.

١. ابحاث
٢. مراهقون
٣. هائل
٤. كمية هائلة
٥. حسابات
٦. يحمل تطبيق
٧. ينقر
٨. بدلا من ذلك
٩. حياة طبيعية

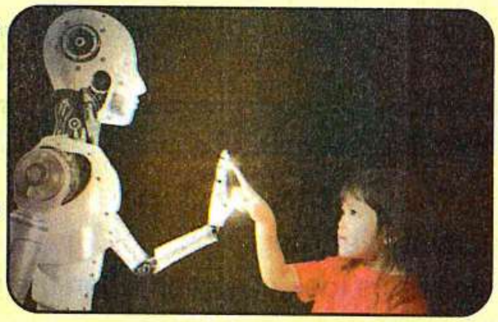
Home / ABOUT / DOWNLOAD

My dad thinks I spend too much time gaming(1). He changed the settings(2) on my laptop so that it turns itself off after one hour. I understand that gaming can be bad for you if you can't stop doing it, but that's not what I'm like. I still enjoy going out and playing sports with my friends and I'm not even on social media(3). Some of my friends spend, all their time on social media. They think it's great.
Their accounts aren't private(4) and they're always, sending friend requests(5) to people they don't know. That's dangerous because these people could be adults and not teenagers at all. There are also teenagers I know who spend so much time making and uploading videos(6) where they just look at the camera and make funny faces(7). I think that's terrible(8) and much worse than playing games where you learn how to do things.

١. لعب العاب الكمبيوتر
٢. اعدادات
٣. مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى
٤. خاص
٥. طلبات صداقة
٦. يرفع فيديو
٧. وجوه مضحكة
٨. فظيع /سئ

Home / ABOUT / DOWNLOAD

The future is already here!



Artificial intelligence[1] (or AI for short) is a type of technology that helps computer systems to do tasks[2] the usually only humans can do such as making decisions[3] or solving problems[4]. If you use streaming platforms[5] to watch movies or TV shows, you are using AI. The streaming platform uses algorithms[6] to "learn" what types of movies or TV shows you like to watch. If you enter data[7] by choosing movies, the algorithms learn what you like from that data. The platform then uses what it learned to personalize[8] your homepage[9] on the platform with suggestions[10] for similar movies and TV shows. If you watch a lot of science fiction movies, the streaming platform shows you suggestions for other science fiction[11] movies to watch. This is called "machine learning"[12] because it's a process[13] where technology learns things and then uses what it learns to help people. The same thing happens with online shopping. If you shop online, AI learns and remembers what you like to buy. Then you see advertisements[14] for similar clothes when you go online or use social media.

In New Zealand[15], some primary school children are learning about the environment and renewable energy[16] from the world's first AI teacher called "Will". When teachers use technology in the classroom, students are usually more interested in learning. But Will is technology that looks and behaves[17] like a real human. When students see him for the first time, they think he is real! If children ask Will a question, he gives an answer. He can also understand the expressions[18] on students' faces. If students smile at Will, he smiles back. If students don't understand something, Will helps them.

Some people think AI encourages[19] us to spend more time online because of its suggestions for more things we can watch or listen to. But AI can also make learning fun and make our lives easier. Surely[20] that isn't such a bad thing!

١. الذكاء الاصطناعي
٢. يقوم بمهام
٣. اتخاذ قرارات
٤. حل المشكلات
٥. منصات البث
٦. الخوارزميات
٧. يدخل بيانات
٨. يخصص
٩. الصفحة الرئيسية
١٠. اقتراحات
١١. خيال علمي
١٢. تعلم الالة
١٣. عملية
١٤. اعلانات
١٥. نيوزيلاندا
١٦. الطاقة المتجددة
١٧. يتصرف
١٨. تعبيرات
١٩. يشجع
٢٠. بالتاكيد

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. Streaming -------- is videos that are sent over the internet in a continuous way.
   a. Pavement b. Sidewalk c. Platform d. Plate
2. -------- are sets of instructions a computer uses to make decisions.
   a. Algorithms b. Machine c. Platform d. Personalize
3. Machine -------- means the way machines improve.
   a. sleeping b. writing c. selling d. learning
4. If something is -------- you make sure no one else can see it.
   a. public b. private c. social d. funny
5. My cousin asked if I have a/an -------- to upload photos of our holiday.
   a. account b. accountant c. notebook d. book
6. -------- means to make something suitable for a particular person.
   a. Personalize b. Person c. Personal d. Realize
7. My mom says I shouldn't look at my -------- for more than an hour at a time.
   a. cream b. screw c. screen d. sun
8. Let's send Reem a friend -------- She always posts interesting things.
   a. answer b. question c. request d. screen
9. I am trying to -------- a video of our basketball win. It won't post!
   a. download b. behave c. road d. upload
10. I think you need to change the -------- then the video will post.
    a. meetings b. settings c. eating d. studies
11. -------- shows that teenagers spend hours on social media.
    a. Peach b. Beach c. Research d. Match
12. If you -------- online, AI remembers what you like to buy.
    a. ship b. shop c. chip d. chop

Bit by Bit Exercises

13. "Massive" and "Huge" are ------------ .
    a. antonyms b. different c. unlike d. synonyms

14. Are you looking for popular science .... movies?

a. fair b. fashion c. fiction d. face

15. It's .... to send friend requests to people you don't know.

a. safe b. dangerous c. normal d. usual

16. Al-Akhbar news papers are full of .... for clothes.

a. systems b. accidents c. algorithms d. advertisements

17. How often do you use .... platforms to watch films or TV shows?

a. studying b. cleaning c. streaming d. screaming

18. You can ask Mr. Ahmed your question, and he can .... you an answer.

a. behave b. spend c. take d. give

19. I want to .... an app from the play store.

a. upload b. load c. download d. road.

20. A / An .... is a person who is between 13 and 19 years old.

a. adult b. teenager c. child d. baby

21. The .... temperature of human body is 37C.

a. quiet b. strange c. normal d. strong

22. The opposite of "massive" is ....

a. huge b. big c. large d. tiny

Expression and Prepositions

23. Arwa, stop checking your social media and put your phone ....

a. up b. down c. in d. onto

24. Remember to turn your computer .... after using it.

a. off b. of c. down d. up

25. My friends spend so much time .... social media.

a. at b. in c. about d. on

26. I cannot .... a decision before I discuss this with my parents.

a. do b. make c. talk d. behave

Language قواعد لغوية

The Present Simple تذكر: المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

يتكون المضارع البسيط من التصريف الأول للفعل كما يلى:

go play eat watch

يضاف للفعل (s - es - ies) إذا كان الفاعل مفرد غائب (he - she - it).

goes plays eats watches

الاثبات:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+inf. + (s / es / ies)

Ex. We go to school by bus.

Ex. Ali lives in Cairo.

Negative النفى

النفى:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ don't +inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ doesn't + inf.

Ex. They don't have time for playing.

Ex. She doesn't like ice cream.

Question السؤال

Yes - No

Ex. Do you study French?

Ex. Does Ali like chess?

Wh

Ex. When do they arrive?

Ex. Where does he work?

The Zero Conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Form التكوين

يستخدم المضارع البسيط فى فعل الشرط وجواب الشرط فى الحالة الصفرية.

If / When + present simple (مضارع بسيط) + present simple (مضارع بسيط)

present simple (مضارع بسيط) if / when present simple (مضارع بسيط)

We use the zero conditional to talk about facts and things that are always true.

تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق العلمية والأشياء الصحيحة دائمًا والعادات المتكررة:

Ex. If / when you boil water, it changes into steam.

Ex. If I feel thirsty, I always drink water.

توضح الحالة الصفرية نتيجة فعل شي ما؛ جملة فعل الشرط تسبب النتيجة في جملة جواب الشرط

Ex. If students don't understand something, Will helps them.

تستخدم جملة جواب الشرط لتكوين سؤال:

Ex. If we mix red and yellow, what do we get?

يمكن استخدام الحالة الصفرية فى إعطاء الأوامر (فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل فى جملة جواب الشرط)

Ex. If something doesn't seem right, think and speak to your parents.

لاحظ اذا بدأنا الجملة الشرطية بـ (If/When) نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين واذا جاءت فى منتصف الجملة لا نستخدم فاصلة:

Ex. If you add 2 and 2(,) you get 4.

Ex. You get 4 if you add 2 and 2.

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. If you use streaming platforms to watch movies, AI .... life easier for you.
   a. make b. makes c. making d. made
2. If students .... understand something, AI helps them.
   a. doesn't b. aren't c. didn't d. don't
3. If I stay online too long, my eyes ....
   a. hurt b. hurts c. hurting d. is hurt
4. Plants .... if they don't get enough water.
   a. dies b. die c. live d. died
5. If it .... a school night, I go to bed early.
   a. was b. am c. are d. is
6. If you spend a lot of time looking at screen, you .... really tired.
   a. felt b. feels c. feel d. feeling
7. The internet .... be very helpful if you use it to do your research.
   a. can b. could c. would d. can't
8. If you .... red and blue, you get purple.
   a. mixed b. mixes c. mix d. mixing

Bit by Bit Exercises

9. If we heat ice, it ---------.
   a. melt b. melts c. melting d. melted
10. If I --------- enough sleep, I feel tired.
   a. get b. doesn't get c. don't get d. gets
11. Farah feels tired --------- she stays up late.
   a. where b. when c. what d. how
12. Glass --------- if we drop it.
   a. break b. broke c. breaks d. breaking
13. The ground gets wet if it --------- .
   a. raining b. rained c. rain d. rains
14. If I drink coffee at night, it --------- me a long time to fall asleep.
   a. takes b. take c. took d. taking
15. I --------- miss the bus if I wake up early.
   a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. am not
16. What --------- if you boil water?
   a. happening b. happened c. happens d. happen
17. I --------- a stomach ache if I eat spicy food.
   a. get b. got c. gets d. getting
18. If you freeze water, it --------- solid.
   a. become b. became c. becomes d. becoming
19. If there's no air, wood --------- burn.
   a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. aren't
20. When you --------- in the sun, you get burned.
   a. sat b. sit c. sits d. sitting

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My friend Rawan --------- (feel) unhappy if she doesn't spend enough time outdoors.
2. If you find Rana's account on social media, you --------- (saw/ can) all her videos.
3. If there --------- (be) no air, you can't breathe.
4. You can waste a lot of time if you --------- (has) bad friends.
5. --------- (Did) you get orange if you mix red and yellow?
6. If we put water in a freezer, it --------- (not) turn into steam.
7. Plants --------- (grew) well if it rains.

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about spending time online.

• السؤال والاجابة عن اسئلة بخصوص قضاء وقت على الانترنت

Question	Answer
How much time do you spend online every day? كم مقدار الوقت الذى تقضيه على الانترنت يوميا.	I spend two hours. اقضى ساعتين.
What do you do online? ماذا تفعل على الانترنت؟	I spend some time on social media or playing video games online. اقضى بعض الوقت على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى او العب العاب الفيديو على الانترنت.
Do you ever choose time online over seeing friends or doing an activity? هل تختار قضاء وقت على الانترنت بدلا من زيارة الاصدقاء أو القيام بانشطة؟	Yes, I do. نعم.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You can send --------- requests to your classmates on the school app.
   a. friendly b. street c. friend d. unfriendly
2. To make your screen brighter, you need to change the -------.
   a. settings b. sitting c. seat d. studying
3. When the teacher shows a video, everyone needs to look at the ---------.
   a. scene b. screen c. street d. scream
4. I like to read --------- fiction books because they are interesting and have useful information.
   a. science b. scientific c. studies d. learning
5. --------- are words that have the same meaning.
   a. Adjectives b. Synonyms c. Antonyms d. Verbs
6. Rodina's account is not public, it is ---------.
   a. general b. friend c. private d. normal
7. YouTube is a popular --------- where you can watch videos.
   a. science fiction b. machine learning
   c. streaming platform d. coffee machine

8. She is very --------- as her jokes make everyone laugh hard.
   a. fun   b. funny   c. sun   d. sunny
9. Nesreen didn't --------- the cat sleeping under the table.
   a. recycle   b. reduce   c. notice   d. sell
10. Mr. Ahmed asked Omar to --------- the phone down during class.
   a. break   b. drop   c. cut   d. put
11. If I --------- the piano every day, I forget how to play it.
   a. practice   b. don't practice   c. practiced   d. practicing
12. If she takes the dog to the park, it --------- away.
   a. ran   b. running   c. run   d. runs
13. When I --------- late for school, my teacher gets angry.
   a. was   b. were   c. am   d. be
14. If she --------- up late, she misses the bus.
   a. wakes   b. wake   c. will wake   d. waking
15. You --------- wet if you stand in the rain.
   a. gets   b. got   c. get   d. getting

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ice --------- (float) if you put it in water.
2. --------- (Where) people eat too much, they get fat.
3. If you heat water to 100 degrees Celsius, it --------- (boil).
4. When you add two and two, you --------- (getting) four.
5. What --------- (happen) if you drop a glass?

3 Complete the following dialog:

Mr. Ahmed and his students are talking about AI

Mr. Ahmed : Good morning, class! we are going to talk about something interesting called AI.

Ali : 1 -- is AI?

Mr. Ahmed : AI is a type of 2 ---------- that helps computer systems to do tasks.

Youssef : Can AI help me with my homework?

Mr. Ahmedi: Yes, it can! AI can help you find information for your 3 -----------.

Yara : Is it like a 4 --?

Mr. Ahmed : Sometimes! AI can be inside robots to help them move and do tasks.

Salah : That's interesting.

4 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on.

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"The effects of AI"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. What is AI?

2. What are the good effects of AI?

3. What are the bad effects of AI?

4. How can students use it in a good way?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

It is a type of technology ------------------------------.

It has good and bad effects on our lives ------------------------------.

Teachers and students can use it to ------------------------------.

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

value (n)	قيمة	chart column (n)	عمود الرسم البيانى
pros (n)	المحاسِن / المميزات	evaluate (v) (d)	يقيم/يقدِّر
addicted to (adj)	مدمن على	outweigh (v) (ed)	يفوق فى الاهمية/يرجح
cons (n)	المساوئ/ العيوب		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

the same (as) (adj)	نفس / ذات	version (n)	نسخة
expensive (adj)	غالى الثمن	decision-making	اتخاذ القرار
terrible (adj)	سيئ / فظيع	vertical (adj)	رأسى
according to (prep)	طبقاً لـ/تبعاً لـ	organized (adj)	منظم
whether (conj)	ما إذ	skill (n)	مهارة
habit (n)	عادة	effect (n)	تأثير
list (n)	قائمة	situation (n)	موقف
points (n)	نقاط	chemical (n)	مادة كيماوية
study (n/ v.ied)	دراسة/يدرس	sunburn (n)	حرق الشمس
details (n)	تفاصيل	release (v) (d)	يطلق / يحرر
main findings	نتائج رئيسية	look (v) (ed)	يبدو
amongst (prep)	بين	follow (ed)	يتبع
well-being (n)	رفاهية/سعادة	add (v) (ed)	يُضيف

Definitions

pros and cons المزايا والعيوب	the good and bad aspects[1] of doing something.
value قيمة	a number which shows important or good something is.
chart column عمود الرسم البيانى	a drawing that shows information in an organized way on a vertical[2] part of a chart.
evaluate يقيم/يقدر	to look at or think about something and use this information to decide what you think.
to outweight something يفوق فى الأهمية/يرجح	to be more important than something

١. جوانب
٢. عمودي

Expressions & Prepositions

take photos	يلتقط صور	think about	يفكر بشأن
make a decision	يتخذ قرار	in a situation	فى موقف
draw a chart	يرسم جدول بيانى	addicted to	مدمن على
take the action	يتخذ الإجراء (القرار)	for example	على سبيل المثال
make notes on	يدون ملاحظات على	pros and cons of (ing)	مميزات و عيوب
focus on	يركز على	a bit older	اقدم قليلا

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد
important مهم	essential	unimportant غير مهم
expensive غالى	costly	cheap رخيص
pros مميزات	advantages	cons / disadvantages عيوب

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
im- / un-	يعطى العكس	unimportant - impossible
-ing	تكون الأسم من الفعل	evaluating

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
break	يكسر	broke	broken
lose	يخسر	lost	lost
take	يأخذ / يلتقط	took	taken
make	يصنع/يتخذ	made	made
think	يفكر	thought	thought

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 (Don't) need to + inf

- "need to" + inf. مصدر الفعل — يجب أن للتعبير عن المتطلبات.

Ex. We need to think how important those pros and cons are. SB

- "don't need to" + inf. مصدر الفعل — للتعبير عن غياب أو عدم الضرورة بشكل عام.

Ex. We don't need to think about what the pros and cons are. SB

2 To + v-ing

- (Be) addicted to + (noun / v-ing) مدمن على

Ex. Kids are addicted to surfing the internet.

- Look forward to + (noun / v-ing) يتطلع الى

Ex. It's too cold. I am looking forward to drinking a cup of tea.

- Pros to + (noun / v-ing)

Ex. There are many pros to traveling abroad.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Students don't .... to pay to use the library.
   a. needs b. need c. needed d. needn't
2. I am addicted .... coffee.
   a. drinking b. to drink c. to drinking d. drank

Reading

SB Page (48)

SB Page (48)

استمع إلى النصوص

Dad : So, you want me to buy you this expensive, new phone for your birthday?

Teen Boy: That's right.

Dad : Do you really think that's a good idea?
I think we need to think about this carefully before I make a decision[1].

Teen boy : OK.

1. يتخذ قرار

Dad : Let's make a list of the pros and cons[2] of buying this phone in a chart[3] ... We'll start with the pros.

Teen boy : The new phone looks better than my old phone. That's the first pro. It's also the same phone that my two best friends have, and I want to have the same phone as them.

Dad : Are there any other pros?

Teen boy : Yes, the third pro is that I could take better photos with the new phone because it's got a better camera.

Dad : OK, now for the cons of buying the new phone ... It's very expensive, so you wouldn't get any other presents from us at all this year.

Teen boy : Urgh.

Dad : Another con is that you'll spend more time looking at a screen[4] if we buy you this phone. And breaking or losing[5] the phone would be terrible[6] because it's so special and expensive.

Teen boy : OK, now we have three pros and three cons. What do we do next?

Dad : We give each pro and con a value from one to ten to show how important we think they are.

Teen boy : OK. It looks good – 7 points[7]. It's the same as my friends' phones – 5 points. It has a better camera – 8 points.

Dad : Now, I'll do the cons. It's very expensive – 9 points. You'll spend more time looking at a screen – 8 points. It would be terrible to break or lose it – 5 points – because I don't think you'll break or lose it. So ... if you add all the values for the pros together, you get 20 points. If you add all the cons together, you get 22 points. 22 points is more than 20 points, so there are more cons than pros.

Teen boy : So, you aren't going to buy me the new phone?

Dad : That's right. Maybe when you're a bit older[8].

٢. المميزات والعيوب
٣. رسم بيانى
٤. شاشة
٥. فقد/ضياع
٦. سئ/فظيع
٧. نقاط
٨. اقدم قليلا

SB Page (50)

Presenter: Today I'm talking to Dr Amal about a new study[1] about internet use and its effects[2] on the teenage brain[3]. Could you give us some more details[4] about the study, Dr Amal?

Dr Amal : Hello Soha. Yes, sure. Well, the study followed[5] nearly 250 teenagers over 10 years to find out how much time they spent online and what effects that had on their brains.



Presenter: And what were the main findings[6] of this study?

Dr Amal : The study found that using the internet too much had become a bad habit[7] for some of the teenagers.



Presenter: What exactly do you mean by "it had become a bad habit"? Was using the internet having negative effects[8] on them?

Dr Amal : I mean that they were using the internet for hours every day and they couldn't stop doing it. They were addicted to the internet.

Presenter: That doesn't sound very good at all.

Dr Amal : No, it isn't. If you are addicted to something, your brain releases chemicals[9] that make you feel happy when you do it. That's why it's hard to stop doing it.



Presenter: But then you might only feel good when you're doing that activity, like using the internet?

Dr Amal : Exactly. The study shows that this addiction to the internet amongst[10] teenagers has a negative effect on the part of the teenage brain that manages decision-making[11] and how you behave.

Presenter: OK, so you might behave differently[12] to normal or make bad decisions.

Dr Amal : Yes, teenagers who are addicted to the internet find it hard to talk to others and communicate with parents and other adults. Also, internet addiction can cause teenagers to have bad sleeping and eating habits. If you're not sleeping enough or eating healthy food, that also has a bad effect on your health and well-being[13].

Presenter: Is it possible for students to "get back to normal" after becoming addicted to the internet?

Dr Amal : The research tells us that that's possible, yes.
If teenagers who are addicted to the internet use their devices less often, their sleep and health will improve.

Presenter: So what advice would you give to teenagers who think they could be addicted to the internet?

١. دراسة
٢. تأثيرات
٣. دماغ المراهقين
٤. تفاصيل
٥. تتبع
٦. نتائج رئيسية
٧. عادة
٨. آثار سلبية
٩. يطلق مواد كيميائية
١٠. بين
١١. اتخاذ القرار
١٢. بشكل مختلف
١٣. رفاهية/سعادة

Dr Amal : If you only spend one or two hours online a day, you'll slowly become less addicted to the internet. You'll have more time to see your friends in real life and go outside and do something fun. That will make you feel better too.

Presenter: Dr Amal. Thank you very much for talking to us.

How to evaluate pros and cons كيفية تقييم الايجابيات والسلبيات

SB page 49

1. Draw a chart to write the pros and cons of making the decision in.

١- ارسم جدول لكتابة الايجابيات والسلبيات لاتخاذ القرار.

2. Write the pros in one column and the cons in the other one.

٢- اكتب الايجابيات في عمود والسلبيات في العمود الآخر

3. Give each pro or con a value according to how important you think is.

٣- اعط كل إيجابية أو سلبية قيمة بناء على مدى أهمية ذلك بالنسبة لك.

4. Add all the values together.

٤- أضف جميع القيم معًا

5. Look to which number is higher: the number for the pros or the cons.

٥- انظر إلى أى رقم هو الأعلى: رقم الإيجابيات أم السلبيات.

6. If the number for the pros is higher than the number of the number for the cons, the pros outweigh the cons. That means you should make the decision.

٦- إذا كان عدد الايجابيات أكبر من عدد السلبيات، فإن الايجابيات تفوق السلبيات، هذا يعنى أنك يجب أن تتخذ القرار.

Evaluating pros and cons

SB page 49

We need to use the skill of evaluating pros and cons every time we make a big decision about whether to do something or not. Evaluating the pros and cons before we make a decision is important because it helps us to focus on the possible effects of taking the action we're thinking about taking. We don't only need to think about what the pros and cons are, we also need to think about how important those pros and cons are. For example, there could be a lot of pros to doing something and not many cons, but the pros might be unimportant and the cons could be very important. In that situation, we shouldn't make the decision.

Listening skills: Summarizing information you hear:

When you summarize what you hear, you say or write a much shorter version of it. In your version, you need to include the most important information you heard. Listen for the ideas speakers say first, say more than once or say a little more loudly than other ideas, and make notes on those in your own. Finally, use your notes to write sentences.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. To .... something means to be more important than something else.
   a. weight b. weigh c. outweigh d. way
2. A/An .... is a number which shows how important or good something is.
   a. coordinate b. value c. column d. chart
3. Pros and .... means the good and bad aspects of doing something.
   a. cans b. corns c. cons d. coats
4. Draw a .... to write the pros and cons of making the decision in.
   a. chart b. chair c. chin d. picture
5. Write the pros in one .... and the cons in the other one.
   a. cloud b. column c. book d. notebook
6. Add the values together to ...... the decision about whether to do something or not.
   a. make b. do c. behave d. forget

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. We are looking forward .... you again.
   a. to see b. seeing c. to seeing d. see
8. Give each pro or con a .... according to how important you think it is.
   a. male b. value c. female d. gift
9. The government will take .... to reduce the pollution in cities.
   a. action b. fiction c. section d. nap
10. You should be able to .... your level in English in order to improve.
    a. decide b. evaluate c. celebrate d. burn
11. I always .... notes of the important points in my notebook.
    a. do b. make c. sleep d. meet
12. It's time to focus .... our goals.
    a. in b. of c. at d. on
13. The pilot .... the decision to return to the airport.
    a. ate b. did c. made d. sent
14. Smoking has a bad .... on our health.
    a. affect b. fact c. text d. effect

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

healthy - useful - junk - bad - sleeping

Habits are things people do often or regularly. Some habits are good and some are (1) .... Good habits are (2) .... for you. Playing sports and (3) .... early are examples of good habits. We shouldn't eat much (4) .... food as it can be bad for your health.

Language قواعد لغوية

The zero conditional

1- The zero conditional الحالة الصفرية

١. توضح الحالة الصفرية الحقائق العامة و الحقائق العلمية و العادات المتكررة

Ex. If you are addicted to something, your brain releases chemicals that make you feel happy when you do it.

٢. توضح الحالة الصفرية (السبب و النتيجة)

Ex. If you are not sleeping enough or eating healthy food, that also has a bad effect on your health.

Notes

- يستخدم المضارع المستمر فى جملة الشرط إذا كان الحدث فى جواب الشرط يحدث أثناء الحدث فى جملة الشرط.

2- (If / When) for future predictions

• تستخدم (If / When) فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل كما يلى:

If / When → مضارع بسيط , → will + inf.

Ex. If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

Subject + will + inf. → if / when → مضارع بسيط

Ex. I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Notes

١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئى الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When) :

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- فى حالة الاستفهام يستخدم الآتى:

(كلمة إستفهام) + Will + فاعل + inf. → when / if + مضارع بسيط...?

If / When + فاعل + مضارع بسيط , (كلمة إستفهام) will + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?
Ex. If Mustafa gets much money, will he buy a mobile?
Ex. Will Mustafa buy a mobile if he gets much money?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أى من جزئى الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا :

Ex. If Hossam doesn't study hard, he will fail.

Ex. If I don't call my friend, he will get angry.

Ex. If Naglaa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed.

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (will + inf.) فى فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Ramy helps his dad, they will finish on time.

Ex. ~~If Ramy will help his dad, they will finish on time.~~ (✗) (الجملة خطأ)

٥- يمكن استخدام can بدلاً من will للتعبير عن الأحتمال أو الامكانية.

Ex. If she comes tomorrow, I can tell her the news.

٦- في حالة تخصيص الحقائق العلمية يتم استخدام الحالة الأولى بدلا من الحالة الصفرية، لاحظ الفرق:

Ex. If we water trees, they grow.

Ex. If we water these, they will grow.

• للتخصيص يتم استخدام اسم الإشارة أو صفة ملكية (this / those / my / his)

مقارنة بين الحالة الأولى والحالة الصفرية

المقارنة	Zero conditional الحالة الصفرية	First conditional الحالة الأولى
الاستخدام	للتحدث عن الحقائق العامة أو القواعد العلمية الثابتة	للتحدث عن إحتمالية حدوث شئ فى المستقبل
التركيب	If + فاعل + مضارع بسيط + فاعل + مضارع بسيط	If + فاعل + مضارع بسيط + فاعل + will + مصدر
المثال	If you heat water to 100°c , it boils.	If it rains tomorrow, I will stay at home.
المعنى	يتحدث عن امر دائم أو حقيقة لا تتغير	يتحدث عن شئ ممكن الحدوث فى المستقبل بناء على شرط معين

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. If you only .... one or two hours online a day, you will slowly become less addicted to the internet.
   a. spend b. will spend c. spent d. will spent
2. If they want our help, we'll .... them.
   a. helping b. helped c. help d. helps
3. Your teacher .... very happy if you forget your notebook again.
   a. are b. is c. will be d. won't be
4. We won't get there in time if we .... leave now.
   a. doesn't b. don't c. didn't d. won't
5. If you take a lot of photos, you .... look back at them again.
   a. could b. would c. can d. didn't
6. Computers .... hot if you use them for a long time.
   a. will get b. got c. gets d. getting
7. When you don't sleep enough, you .... tired.
   a. will feel b. feels c. felt d. feeling
8. If you don't drink enough water, you will .... a headache later.
   a. had b. has c. having d. have
9. If you feel bored, ... outside and have fun.
   a. will go b. went c. go d. going
10. You .... hot water if you want to make tea.
   a. need b. needing c. needs d. needed

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. If she's .... abroad, she always phones me every morning.
   a. travels b. travel c. will travel d. traveling
12. If it rains, I .... at home.
   a. staying b. will stay c. won't stay d. stays
13. What .... you do if you miss the plane?
   a. does b. did c. would d. will
14. If she calls, ... answer?
   a. you will b. will c. will you d. you can
15. Will you invite Hams if she .... free tomorrow?
   a. will b. is c. does d. don't
16. I will help you if I .... time next week.
   a. have b. will have c. has d. had
17. I always .... my umbrella if it is raining.
   a. takes b. taking c. will take d. take

18. I will do all my shopping online .... I am older.
    a. where b. when c. why d. who
19. If she cooks, will you .... the dishes?
    a. is cleaned b. cleaned c. clean d. cleans
20. If we water these trees, they ....
    a. grow b. grew c. will grow d. grown

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (happen) if I put this plastic in the fire?
2. If ice is heated, it .... (melt) .
3. We .... (got) a good grade if we do our homework well.
4. If we mix red and yellow, what .... (did) we get?
5. .... (She will) miss the train if she wakes up late?

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In my opinion, the pros of the internet .... the cons.
   a. out b. weigh c. outweigh d. way
2. Mr. Ahmed talked about the .... of honesty in all aspects of life.
   a. chart b. value c. column d. number
3. Before leaving the office, remember to turn the computer ....
   a. off b. of c. on d. out
4. The teacher asked the students to create a .... showing their favorite subject.
   a. ship b. chin c. chair d. chart
5. It would be .... to break or lose your phone.
   a. nice b. good c. fantastic d. terrible
6. You can .... good photos with your new phone.
   a. burn b. do c. take d. talk
7. My sister and I have .... size of shoes; we both wear 40.
   a. different b. the same c. expensive d. unlike
8. We should work .... to finish the project on time.
   a. alone b. slowly c. together d. lonely
9. The internet has a bad effect on teenagers' .... It is difficult for them to learn and study.
   a. trains b. drains c. brains d. bags
10. If you see someone in danger, you should .... to help them.
    a. run away b. escape quietly c. laugh d. take the action

11. If she goes shopping, she .... expensive clothes.
    a. buy b. will buy c. bought d. buying
12. She will come to the party if she .... better.
    a. feels b. will feel c. felt d. feeling
13. When the sun goes down, it .... dark.
    a. get b. got c. gets d. getting
14. What .... you do if it rains tomorrow?
    a. would b. did c. does d. will
15. If you meet Ali, ... him about the meeting.
    a. tell b. will tell c. doesn't tell d. tells

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

make - Evaluating - skull - effects - skill

We need to use the ❶ .... of evaluating pros and cons every time we make a big decision about whether to do something or not. ❷ .... the pros and cons before we ❸ .... a decision is important because it helps us focus on the possible ❹ .... of taking the action we are thinking about taking.

3 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you water trees, they .... (grew).
2. If you leave this cube of ice in the sun, it .... (melt).
3. We .... (don't) go to the beach if it is too hot tomorrow.
4. You will miss the bus if you .... (won't) hurry.

4 Write a paragraph of (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"The importance of evaluating pros and cons"

....

....

....

....

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. What does evaluate mean?

2. Is evaluating important?

3. When should we make the decision?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

4. Evaluate is when you think and decide what to do..........................

5. Evaluating is very important to make..

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

event (n.)	حدث (هام)	final (n.)	المباراة النهائية
disability (n.)	عجز/إعاقة	terrible (adj.)	سي/فظيع
sickness (n.)	مرض		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

Paralympics = Paralympic Games / Sports (n.)	الألعاب البارالمبية	digital habits* (n.)	عادات رقمية
wheelchair tennis (n.)	تنس الكراسي المتحركة	digital technology (n.)	التكنولوجيا الرقمية
café (n.)	مقهي	rest (n.)	راحة
achievement (n.)	إنجاز	messages (n.)	رسائل
Wimbledon (n.)	ويمبلدون (أشهر بطولات التنس)	profile (n.)	ملف التعريف الشخص
Olympic team (n.)	الفريق الأوليمبى	highlight (n.)	أبرز وأهم جزء
concise (adj)	موجز/ملخص	either (conj.)	ايضا
champion (n.)	بطل رياضى	against (prep.)	ضد
hospital (n.)	مستشفي	laugh (v.ed)	يضحك
although (conj.)	بالرغم من	happen (v.ed)	يحدث
Egyptian (adj.)	مصرى	cross (v.ed)	يعبر
surprised (adj.)	مندهش	reply (v.ied)	يرد
amazing (adj.)	مدهش	compare (v.d)	يقارن
perhaps (adv.)	ربما	relax (v.ed)	يسترخي
later (adv.)	فيما بعد	realize (v.d)	يدرك

العادة الرقمية: هي نمط سلوكي يظهر عندما يستخدم الفرد التكنولوجيا.

Definitions

disability	عجز/إعاقة	something that makes it difficult for someone to do things the way most people do.
event	حدث	something that happens or takes place.
final	المباراة النهائية	the last game in a competition, which decides the winner.
sickness	مرض	a disease or unhealthy condition.
terrible	سئ جدًا	very bad.

Expressions & Prepositions

do many things	تقوم بأشياء كثيرة	talk about	يتحدث بشأن
give .... rest	يعطي قسطًا من الراحة	think about	يفكر بشأن
use a wheelchair	يستخدم كرسى متحرك	for too long	لمدة طويلة
with a disability	ذو إعاقة	in the hour before	في الساعة قبل......
decide on	يحدد	during the day	أثناء النهار
good at	جيد في	compare ...... to	يقارن بـ
play against	تلعب ضد	from now on	من الآن فصاعدًا
on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع		

Synonyms & Antonyms الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
terrible	سيء	very bad / horrible	good / great	جيد
sad	حزين	upset	happy	سعيد

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-ment	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	achievement
-dis	تعطى عكس المعنى	disability

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
let	يدع	let	let
read	يقرأ	read	read
hit	يضرب/يصدم	hit	hit
win	يفوز	won	won
tell	يخبر	told	told

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 too / enough

- **too = more than what is needed**
  جدًا (اكثر من اللازم)

  too + صفة + to + مصدر

  Ex. The coffee is too hot to drink. I can't drink it now..

- **enough = sufficient** كافٍ

  صفة + enough + to + مصدر الفعل

  Ex. Ashraf is strong enough to climb the wall.

  enough + إسم + to + مصدر

  Ex. I don't have enough money to buy this car.

2 spend / take

- **spend time + V-ing.**

  Ex. I spend time reading every day.

- **take time + to + inf.**

  Ex. It takes 3 hours to arrive in Cairo.

3 accident / event

- **accident** إصطدام/حادثة
  شىء غير متوقع وغيرسار يسبب أضرار أو إصابات.

  Ex. Rana had an accident while crossing the road.

- **event** حدث هام (غالبًا)
  يحدث بترتيبات وتنظيمات.

  Ex. The 6th of October is one of the most important events in history.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is not old .... to drive.
   a. too b. very c. so d. enough
2. The coffee is .... hot. I can't drink it.
   a. enough b. very c. too d. such
3. It took three hours .... the bike.
   a. repair b. repairing c. to repair d. repaired
4. My wedding day was a historic .... in my life.
   a. accident b. incident c. event d. disaster

Reading

SB Page (52)

استمع إلى النصوص

Meeting Rana

١. حدث رياضي بارالمبي
٢. اعاقة
٣. مقهى
٤. انجاز
٥. بطولة ويمبلدون
٦. بطل
٧. ينضم

Today, I watched a Paralympic sports event(1). These are sports for people with a disability(2). There was the final of the wheelchair tennis and an Egyptian girl won. She was so fast!

The next day, I was very surprised because I saw the tennis player in the wheelchair. I was with some friends in a café(3) and she was at the next table.

"I watched you win your tennis game yesterday," I said to her. "What an achievement(4)! You were amazing."



"Thank you," said Rana. She looked at me and said, "Do you play tennis, too?"

"No!" I laughed, because I, too, used a wheelchair. I couldn't walk after I had a sickness when I was a child.

"Don't laugh!" said Rana. "You can play tennis like me, if you want. I can help you." Then, Rana told me her story. She was always good at sports, and she was very good at tennis. "Don't play tennis against Rana!" her older sister Malak always said. "If I play her, I lose every time! She's so good."

Rana liked to play tennis after school and on the weekends. "I think she'll play at Wimbledon(5) one day!' said her father. "Or perhaps she'll join the Egyptian Olympic Team!" said her mother.

One day, something terrible happened. Rana was crossing the road when a car hit her. She had to go to hospital for many weeks.



"I'm sorry, but you won't walk again, Rana," said the doctor. "You'll have to use a wheelchair."

Rana was very sad. It took her a long time to understand that she although could not walk, she could do many things. Her father told her about wheelchair tennis, and soon she was playing the sport every week. A year later, she joined the Paralympic tennis team and now she was a champion(6). And that was when I saw her.

"If you want to play tennis, don't let your wheelchair stop you," Rana said.

Now, I'm playing wheelchair tennis every week too. Perhaps one day, I'll join(7) a Paralympic tennis team, like Rana!

Writing a concise summary **SB page 53**

When you write a summary, decide on the important information. Stories often include speech, details, and information that is not important to understand the story. You do not need to include these in your summary.

SB Page (54)

This week at school, we're talking about digital habits(1).
I thought about how, when, and how often I use digital technology(2) and I realized that my digital habits are quite good.

For example, I never watch videos or look at my phone for too long in the evening. I usually read a book in the hour before I go to bed instead(3) to give my eyes a rest from looking at a screen.

١. العادات الرقمية
٢. التكنولوجيا
٣. بدلا من ذلك
٤. وقت النهار
٥. اهم الاشياء
٦. ملف التعريف الشخصي

I also don't spend too much time looking at a screen during the day(4) either. It's usually 1.5 hours a day. That's enough time to reply to messages from friends when I relax after school, but it isn't too much time.

I have one bad digital habit though. I sometimes look at other people's photos on social media and compare myself to them. I know that you only see the highlights(5) on people's social media profiles(6), but sometimes looking at these profiles makes me feel like I'm not good enough. I'm going to stop looking at other people's profiles and comparing myself to them from now on.



Using visual input as a prompt for writing استخدام المؤثرات البصرية كمحفز للكتابة **SB page 55**

When you write reflective journal entries, you often need to think back to what you did, where you were, or how you felt in the past. Looking at photos of you or photos of things you saw or did can help you to connect with those past activities, places, and feelings. This makes it easier for you to write about them. If you can't look at photos when you're getting ready to write a reflective journal entry, think hard and try to bring helpful images to your mind instead.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. A/An ___________ is something that happens or takes place.
   a. event b. ever c. fever d. even
2. The___________ is the last game in a competition.
   a. semi-final b. final c. quarter-final d. first
3. A/An___________ is something that makes it difficult for someone to do things the way most people do.
   a. inability b. disability c. ability d. able
4. Why do people with a disability use a ___________?
   a. chair b. sofa c. stairs d. wheelchair
5. The cake smells ___________! It is very bad.
   a. fantastic b. nice c. good d. terrible

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. He died from an unknown ___________
   a. witness b. sickness c. kindness d. happiness
7. Yara joined the Paralympic tennis team and she was a ___________.
   a. champion b. hero c. championship d. ship
8. I had one bad _________ habit. I compare myself to people on social media.
   a. coastal b. local c. number d. digital
9. She got married so she is going to change her _______ on social media.
   a. cats b. books c. profile d. pens
10. After a long day, I need some ___________.
    a. lost b. rest c. test d. vest
11. He has a/an ___________ ability to learn new skills.
    a. boring b. bright c. amazing d. dark
12. I usually ___________ prices before I buy something.
    a. contact b. connect c. communicate d. compare
13. Luckily I revised my answers and I ___________ my mistakes.
    a. forgot b. realized c. wrote d. made
14. We use digital ___________ when we play games on a tablet.
    a. notebook b. number c. technology d. graph
15. I missed the match, but I saw the ___________ on the evening news.
    a. game b. flights c. highlights d. lights

16. Eman has passed her exams. What a/an ___________!
    a. achievement b. agreement c. pavement d. selfish

Expressions and Prepositions

17. This robot ___________ many things. It is useful.
    a. rides b. takes c. makes d. does
18. I need to ___________ my eyes a rest after looking at the screen for too long.
    a. give b. win c. make d. do
19. You can compare the new phone ___________ the old one to see the difference.
    a. in b. at c. of d. to
20. Zamalek SC will play ___________ Al-Ahly SC next week.
    a. with b. against c. for d. to

2 Complete the text with the words from the box:

stop - highlights - compare - feel like - study

I have a bad digital habit. I sometimes look at others' people photos and (1) _______ myself to them. I only see the (2) _______ on people's social media profiles, but looking at others' profiles makes me (3) _______ I am not good. I should (4) _______ doing that.

Speaking

How to use questions words correctly?

• كيفية استخدام كلمات الاستفهام بطريقة صحيحة.

Question	Answer
What activity is the girl doing? ما النشاط الذى تقوم به الفتاة؟	She is checking her social media. هى تقوم بتصفح وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى.
What time of day do you think it is? ما الوقت من اليوم الذى تعتقد أنه الآن؟	I think it is evening. أعتقد أنه المساء.
Where is the girl right now? أين الفتاة الآن؟	She is at home. هى فى المنزل.
How do you think the girl feels? كيف تعتقد أن الفتاة تشعر؟	She feels worried. هي تشعر بالقلق؟

General Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The school is planning a fun .... for the students next week.
   a. accident b. incident c. event d. chair
2. The team is preparing well for the .... of the championship. They want the cup.
   a. final b. first c. last d. step
3. Although Rawan has a/an ...., she is good at sports.
   a. inability b. disability c. able d. unable
4. Abdullah couldn't go to school because of a ....
   a. sick b. sadness c. happiness d. sickness
5. The weather was .... during our vacation. We didn't enjoy our time.
   a. good b. nice c. terrible d. OK
6. Checking my phone every morning is a digital .... for me
   a. custom b. costume c. happy d. habit
7. We have .... time to finish our homework before dinner.
   a. too b. very c. such d. enough

2 Complete the text with the words from the box.

proud - first - disability - against - final

Today, I watched a Paralympic sports event. These are sports for people with a ❶ .... There was the ❷ .... of the wheelchair tennis and an Egyptian girl won. She played ❸ .... a French girl. We are ❹ .... of her.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Ali and Heba are talking about an interview on TV.

Ali : Did you watch TV yesterday?
Heba : No, I ❶ .... What was on TV?
Ali : There was an ❷ .... with Rana.
Heba : Who is she?
Ali : She is a Paralympic tennis ❸ ....
Heba : What an ❹ .... !
Ali : She is my role model.

4 Write a paragraph of 80 words:

"Your good and bad digital habits"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1. What is the habit?

2. What is your good digital habit?

3. What is your bad digital habit?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

4. A habit is a thing which people do every day ------------------------------.

5. Comparing yourself to others is ------------------------------.

6. Avoid using your phone before sleeping is ------------------------------.

Review on Unit 10

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

streaming platform (n)	منصة البث	algorithms*(n)	الخوارزميات
have an account	لديه حساب	science fiction (n)	خيال علمي
look at a screen	ينظر الى شاشة	machine learning	التعلم الألي
send friend requests	يرسل طلبات صداقة	private (adj.)	خاص
change settings	يغير الاعدادات	personalize (v)(d)	يخصص
upload video	يرفع فيديو	chart column (n)	عمود الرسم البيانى
value (n)	قيمة	evaluate (v) (d)	يقيم/يقدّر
pros (n)	المحاسِن / المميزات	outweigh (v) (ed)	يفوق فى الاهمية/يرجح
addicted to (adj)	مدمن على	sickness (n.)	مرض
cons (n)	المساوئ/العيوب	final (n.)	المبارة النهائية
event (n.)	حدث (هام)	terrible (adj.)	سي/فظيع
disability (n.)	عجز/إعاقة		

Language قواعد لغوية

The Present Simple
تذكر: المضارع البسيط

Form التكوين

الاثبات:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+inf. + (s / es / ies)

Ex. Ali lives in Cairo.

Ex. We go to school by bus.

النفى:

I / We / You / They / اسم جمع	+ don't +inf.
He / She / It / اسم مفرد	+ doesn't + inf.

Ex. They don't have time for playing.

Ex. She doesn't like ice cream.

Question السؤال

Yes - No

Ex. Do you study French?
Ex. Does Ali like chess?

Wh

Ex. When do they arrive?
Ex. Where does he work?

The Zero Conditional الحالة الشرطية الصفرية

Form التكوين

- يستخدم المضارع البسيط فى فعل الشرط وجواب الشرط فى الحالة الصفرية.

If / When + present simple (مضارع بسيط) + present simple (مضارع بسيط)

present simple (مضارع بسيط) if / when present simple (مضارع بسيط)

- تعبر الحالة الصفرية عن الحقائق العلمية والأشياء الصحيحة دائمًا والعادات المتكررة:

Ex. If / when you boil water, it changes into steam.

- توضح الحالة الصفرية نتيجة فعل شي ما؛ جملة فعل الشرط تسبب النتيجة في جملة جواب الشرط

Ex. If students don't understand something, Will helps them.

- تستخدم جملة جواب الشرط لتكوين سؤال:

Ex. If we mix red and yellow, what do we get?

- يمكن استخدام الحالة الصفرية فى إعطاء الأوامر (فى حالة عدم وجود فاعل فى جملة جواب الشرط)

Ex. If something doesn't seem right, think and speak to your parents.

- لاحظ اذا بدأنا الجملة الشرطية بـ (If/When) نضع فاصلة بين الجملتين واذا جاءت فى منتصف الجملة لا نستخدم فاصلة:

Ex. If you add 2 and 2(,) you get 4.
Ex. You get 4 if you add 2 and 2.

2- (If / When) for future predictions

- تستخدم (If / When) فى الحالة الشرطية الأولى (first conditional) لعمل تنبؤات فى المستقبل كما يلى:

If / When → مضارع بسيط **,** → **will + inf.**

Ex. If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.

Subject + will + inf. → **if / when** → مضارع بسيط

Ex. I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Notes

١- توضع فاصلة (,) بين جزئى الجملة عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (If / When) :

Ex. If I go out, I will meet my friends.

٢- فى حالة الاستفهام يستخدم الآتى:

(كلمة إستفهام) + Will + فاعل + inf. ⟶ when / if + مضارع بسيط ...؟

If / When + فاعل + مضارع بسيط , (كلمة إستفهام) will + فاعل + inf....?

Ex. What will you do if you have much free time?

Ex. If Mustafa gets much money, will he buy a mobile?

٣- من الممكن أن يكون أى من جزئى الجملة (أو كلاهما) منفيًا :

Ex. If Hossam doesn't study hard, he will fail.

Ex. If Naglaa doesn't study hard, she won't succeed.

٤- نستخدم المضارع البسيط وليس (will + inf.) فى فعل الشرط بعد (If / When).

Ex. If Ramy helps his dad, they will finish on time.

Ex. ~~If Ramy will help his dad, they will finish on time.~~ (✗) (الجملة خطأ)

٥- يمكن استخدام can بدلاً من will للتعبير عن الأحتمال أو الامكانية.

Ex. If she comes tomorrow, I can tell her the news.

٦- في حالة تخصيص الحقائق العلمية يتم استخدام الحالة الأولى بدلا من الحالة الصفرية، لاحظ الفرق:

Ex. If we water trees, they grow.

Ex. If we water these, they will grow.

• للتخصيص يتم استخدام اسم الإشارة أو صفة ملكية (this / those / my / his)

Speaking

Ask and answer questions about spending time online.

• السؤال والاجابة عن اسئلة بخصوص قضاء وقت على الانترنت

Question	Answer
How much time do you spend online every day? كم مقدار الوقت الذى تقضيه على الانترنت يوميا.	I spend two hours. اقضى ساعتين.
What do you do online? ماذا تفعل على الانترنت؟	I spend some time on social media or playing video games online. اقضى بعض الوقت على مواقع التواصل الاجتماعى او العب العاب الفيديو على الانترنت.
Do you ever choose time online over seeing friends or doing an activity? هل تختار قضاء وقت على الانترنت بدلا من زيارة الاصدقاء أو القيام بانشطة؟	Yes, I do. نعم.

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات انشائية و رسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1 & 2

Artificial Intelligence (AI) uses machine learning to help computers learn from data. It can personalize your homepage by showing you things you like, such as your favorite videos or news. AI helps make our life easier by giving us better recommendations. For example, it can suggest songs you might enjoy or remind you of important events. AI is a smart tool that helps us in many daily tasks.

Lessons 3 & 4

When we make decisions, it's important to think carefully. We should look at the total pros and cons to know which outweigh the other. If the pros are more, we can go ahead with the decision. If the cons are more, we might decide not to. This helps us make better choices and avoid mistakes. Thinking before making decisions helps us.

Lessons 5 & 6

Digital habits can be bad or good. Good digital habits include using educational apps and taking breaks to rest our eyes. Bad digital habits are spending too much time on games or social media without a break. We should balance our screen time and do other activies. I have a bad digital habit. I always compare myself to others on social media.

Al-Azhar Test

I like Mohammed Salah very much. He is my favorite sports star. He is from Egypt. He plays football. He plays in England. He is very kind as he helps the poor. I want to be like him.

Test on Unit 10

New Message

To : reyad33@yahoo.com Cc Bcc

From : ali@yahoo.com

Subject : AI for my studies.

Dear Reyad,

How are you and your family? I am writing to you to tell you about a great way that helps me in my homework. I can use it to solve any maths problems or any English questions. You can also use it. It is AI. AI is a trusted source for the information. I advise you to use it. I can show you how to use it if you like. It is easy to use. It can help you revise before the exam. See you soon.

Love

Ali

Send

Al Azhar Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. _______ shows that some teenagers spend a long time looking at screens.

a. Search b. Seas c. Research d. Beach

2. How was the food?

a. Nasty b. Bad c. Expired d. Delicious

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Farah and Rodina are talking about an online problem.

Farah : Why are you sad?

Rodina: 1 ____

Farah : A problem! 2 ________________________________?

Rodina: I compare myself to others online.

Farah : 3 ____?

Rodina: You are right. I'll do that.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you leave ice in the sun, it _______ .

a. will melt b. melt c. melts d. melting

2. What _______ if you don't drink enough water?

a. will happen b. happened c. happen d. happens

3. Let's send Abd Elrhman a friend _______ .

a. order b. request c. ask d. question

4. The pros are the _______ aspects of doing something.

a. sad b. bad c. good d. hat

5. Youssef can't walk so he uses a _______ .

a. chair b. wheelchair c. bike d. ladder

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Computer is widely used these days. You can find one in every house. Old people and kids use it. People use computers to help them with their work. Teachers, nowadays, use it in teaching the different subjects. They can prepare their lessons by using the PowerPoint program. The young use it to make friends all over the world using the internet. Businessmen use it in their trade to import and export their goods. <u>**They**</u> can do agreements from their offices instead of traveling long distances. Students, also, use it for their studies.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do students use computers?--
2. What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? ---------------------------
3. How are computers useful? --

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. -------- people can use computers.
   a. Old b. Young c. Old and young d. No
5. Teachers can use the -------- program in teaching.
   a. Access b. PowerPoint c. Excel d. Windows

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. If I <u>**will stay**</u> online too long, my eyes hurt! (.......................)
2. Plants <u>**doesn't die**</u> if they don't get enough water. (.......................)
3. If students don't understand something, Will <u>**help**</u> them. (.......................)
4. You won't <u>**playing**</u> if you don't do your homework. (.......................)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

"A sports star"

Test on Unit 10

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I realized that my digital habits are ---------- good.
   a. quiet b. quite c. quit d. queen
2. I give my eyes a ---------- from looking at a screen.
   a. test b. vest c. rest d. guest
3. I read a book in the hour ---------- sleeping.
   a. after b. before c. in d. during

B- Listen and complete:

4. We are talking about ---------- habits.
5. I never watch ----------.
6. I never look at my phone for too long in the ----------.

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answers from a, b, c, or d:

1. The online ---------- always loves smartphones and tablets.
   a. expression b. information c. generation d. shopping
2. I don't spend too much time ---------- at a screen.
   a. look b. to look c. looked d. looking

3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

off - settings - like - of - doing

My dad thinks I spend too much time gaming. He changed the ❶ -------- on my laptop so that it turns itself ❷ -------- after one hour. I understand gaming can be bad for you if you can't stop ❸ -------- it, but that's not what I'm ❹ --------.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Some people learn a second language easily. Others have trouble learning **it**. How can you learn a new language like English? There are a lot of ways that make learning English easier and interesting.

Firstly, you must like learning English. If you feel that you can learn, you will learn. You needn't understand everything at once. It is natural to make mistakes. We can learn from our mistakes.

Secondly, you have to practice your English. You can write in the school magazine or **exchange** letters and emails with friends. This way you get used to writing in English and soon you will see that your writing is improving. You should speak English every day. You can practice with your classmates outside classes. You will all make mistakes but gradually you will communicate well.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "exchange" means ---------.
   a. send b. receive
   c. send not receive d. send and receive
2. There are --------- ways to make learning English easier.
   a. few b. little c. many d. none

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text? ---
4. Why is making mistakes sometimes useful? ------------------------------------
5. How can you practice speaking English? ---------------------------------------
6. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? -------------------------------

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If I study hard, I --------- my exams.
   a. passes b. will pass c. won't pass d. passed
2. She cycles to school if the weather --------- fine.
   a. will be b. was c. is d. does

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you --------- (will want) to make tea, you need hot water.
2. Your teacher --------- (will) be happy if you forget your notebook again.
3. If you visit the zoo, you --------- (won't) see animals.
4. If you boil water, it --------- (become) hot.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ayman and Reem are talking about sports.

Ayman : What's your favorite sport?

Reem : I like ❶ ....

Ayman : ❷ .... do you like tennis?

Reem : Because I want to be an international player.

Ayman : Who is your favorite ❸ ....?

Reem : Hana Goda.

Ayman : Is she Egyptian?

Reem : ❹ ....

E Writing

8 Write an email of about (80) words:

(مجاب عنه في آخر الوحدة)

To your friend is Reyad to tell him about using AI for your studies.

Your name is Ali your email address is ali@yahoo.com

your friend's email address is reyad33@yahoo.com

New Message

To : .... Cc Bcc

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Send

Unit 11 Clean transportation



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

A text about clean transportation; a summary of Around the World in Eighty Days.

Writing:

Tips about using clean transportation.

Listening:

Announcements at train and bus stations

Speaking:

Giving directions

Language:

The present simple for timetables; prepositions of time, place, and movement

Lessons 1&2

SB pages 56-59

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

transportation (n)	النقل / المواصلات	announcement (n)	بيان / اعلان
electric vehicle (n)	مركبة كهربائية	express service (n)	خدمة سريعة
charging station (n)	محطة شحن	platform (n)	رصيف (في محطة قطار)
clean fuel (n)	وقود صديق للبيئة	electricity supply (n)	مزود الكهرباء
bike lane (n)	ممر (حارة) الدراجات	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
carbon emissions (n)	انبعاثات ثاني اكسيد الكربون	carpool (ed)	يذهب في رحلة مشتركة/يتقاسم سيارة

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

fuel (n)	وقود	type (n)	نوع
power (n)	طاقة	future (n)	مستقبل
environment (n)	بيئة	journey (n)	رحلة طويلة
electric (adj)	كهربي	stop (n)	موقف القطار أو الحافلة
gas (n)	غاز	airport (n)	مطار
solution (n)	حل	bus station (n)	محطة اتوبيس
problem (n)	مشكلة	lady (n) (ladies)	سيدة (سيدات)
dangerous (adj)	خطير	gentleman (n) gentlemen	سيد (سادة)
relative (n)	أحد الاقارب	anymore (adv)	بعد الان
else (adv)	آخر	supply (ied)	يزود / يمد
departure (n)	مغادرة	lower (ed) / reduce (d)	يقلل
destination (n)	جهة الوصول	produce (d)	ينتج
due to	بسبب	damage (d)	يدمر
route (n)	طريق		

Cities

المفردات الاضافية

Nairobi	نيروبي	Sohag	سوهاج
Nakuru	ناكورو	Akhmim	أخميم
Alexandria	الاسكندرية	Aswan	أسوان
Cairo	القاهرة	Luxor	الأقصر
Hurghada	الغردقة	Safaga	سفاجا

Expressions & Prepositions

ride bikes	يركب دراجات	on the side of	على جانب الـ
damage the environment	يدمر البيئة	bad for	ضار لـ
burn fuel	يحرق وقود	get around	يتجول
drive a car	يقود سيارة	connect to	يتصل بـ
cause health problems	يسبب مشاكل صحية	come out of	يخرج من
make it easier for	يجعله اسهل لـ	come from	يأتي من
take about	يستغرق حوالي	by train	بالقطار
produces carbon emissions	ينتج انبعاثات ثاني اكسيد الكربون	on a night train	فى قطار ليلي
		get to	يصل الى
		similar to	مشابه لـ
		leave from	يغادر من

Definitions

carpool يذهب في رحلة مشتركة، يتقاسم سيارة	when you travel in someone else's car or take someone with you in your car
bike lane ممر (حارة) الدراجات	an area on the side of the road that's only for people riding bikes
electric vehicle مركبة كهربائية	a car that gets all or most of its power from electricity
clean fuel وقود صديق للبيئة	a place or piece of equipment for giving electric motors in cars more power
charging station محطة شحن	something you put in your car to give it power that doesn't damage the environment very much
carbon emissions انبعاثات ثاني اكسيد الكربون	dangerous gases that cars make when they burn fuel

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
lower	يقلل	reduce \ decrease	increase	يزيد
damage	يدمر	hurt \ harm	fix \ repair	يصلح
dangerous	خطير	risky	safe	آمن
possible	ممكن	probable	impossible	مستحيل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
burn	يحرق/يحترق	burned \ burnt	burned \ burnt
take	يأخذ/يستغرق	took	taken
ride	يقود دراجة	rode	ridden
mean	يقصد/ يعني	meant	meant
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	driven
find out	يكتشف	found out	found out
leave	يغادر	left	left

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 platform رصيف (في محطة قطار) / pavement رصيف المشاه (في طريق)

Ex. The train leaves from platform 5.

Ex. You should always walk on the pavement.

2 Prepositions with transportation حروف الجر مع وسائل المواصلات

• by

• تأتي مع جميع وسائل المواصلات بدون فاصل

by car - by train - by plane

• on

• تأتي مع وسائل المواصلات التى نستطيع الوقوف بها مع وجود فاصل (a - an / the - my)

on a train - on the plane

انتبه كلمة foot يسبقها on

• in

• تأتي مع وسائل المواصلات التى لا نستطيع الوقوف بها مع وجود فاصل (a - an / the - my).

in my car - in a taxi.

3 help + مفعول + (to) + inf يساعد

Ex. That helps lower carbon emissions.

Ex. That helps us (to) protect the planet.

4 make + مفعول + صفة يجعل

Ex. Some cities have bike lanes to make it easier for people to ride their bikes.

5 Adjectives الصفات

• نستخدم الصفات لوصف الأسماء clean-electric.

Ex. This car uses clean fuel.

• يمكن أيضا أن نستخدم اسم لوصف اسم آخر bike lane / clothes shop

Ex. The bike lane is safe.

• ويمكن أن نضيف ing إلى الفعل لتكوين الصفة charge ⟶ charging

Ex. I went to the charging station.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My mom helps me .... the homework.
   a. to doing b. doing c. does d. do
2. Which .... does the train leave from?
   a. part b. pavement c. platform d. road
3. We go to school .... foot.
   a. by b. in c. for d. on
4. She went to the hospital .... car.
   a. by b. in c. on d. with
5. They go to the airport .... the bus.
   a. on b. by c. in d. for

Reading

SB Page (57)

استمع إلى النصوص

Clean transportation



Driving cars is very bad for the environment[1]. About 23% of all the world's carbon emissions[2] come from cars. Vehicles that aren't electric and don't use clean fuel damage the environment and cause health problems[3].

Use as much clean transportation as possible. Clean transportation is anything you use to get around that produces[4] less carbon emissions than normal cars.

You can still do that, but your vehicle[5] needs to be either electric or use clean fuel. Electric vehicles are cars that you connect to the electricity supply at a charging station[6] and that gives the car the power it needs to move. Using electricity means that no dangerous carbon emissions come out of the car when you drive it. By 2030, there will be so many electric vehicles that we will use much less oil everyday than we do now.

You can still use clean transportation. Find out if you can travel by train, bus, or bike instead of[7] by car and do that if you can. More and more town and cities now have bike lanes to make it easier for people to ride their bikes. If you really need to travel by car, try carpooling. Find a friend or relative who wants to go to the same place as you and ask if you can drive there with them. Carpooling can reduce[8] the number of cars on the roads by about 20%, which help lower[9] carbon emissions.

١. بيئة
٢. انبعاثات
٣. مشاكل صحية
٤. ينتج
٥. مركبة
٦. محطة الشحن
٧. بدلا من
٨. يقلل
٩. يقلل

SB Page (58)

1. d. This is a journey on a night train.

Man 1 : Ladies and Gentlemen[1], the train on platform[2] 5 is the train from Cairo to Aswan. This train leaves at 19:35 and arrives in Luxor at 6:35 and in Aswan at 9:45.

١. السيدات والسادة
٢. رصيف قطار
٣. بسبب
٤. الطريق
٥. بعد الآن
٦. خدمة القطار السريع

2. a. This is the shortest bus journey.

Woman 2 : The next bus from Sohag to Akhmim leaves from platform 2 at 6:30 this morning. The next bus leaves at 7:30. The 6:30 bus arrives in Akhmim at 6:55 due to[3] road works on the route[4].

3. c. This is a journey from an airport.

Man 2 : The next bus from Hurghada Airport to Marsa Alam arrives at 5 o'clock. Then it leaves the airport at 5:10. The bus doesn't leave from bus stop 1A anymore[5]. It leaves from bus stop 2B.

4. b. This train journey only has one stop.

Woman 2 : The next train on platform 2 is the 11 o'clock service from Alexandria to Cairo. This train is the express service[6] and it takes two hours.

Scanning texts for specific information مسح النصوص للحصول على معلومات محددة — SB page 57

When you scan a text for specific information, you move your eyes over it quickly until you find the information that you need. You can do this faster when you know what information is in each part of a text. Then you can just go to and scan the part of the text where you think the specific information you need will be. Look for words which are connected to the specific information you need in that part of the text and this will help you.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. To .... means you travel in someone else's car or take someone with you in your car.
   a. pool b. tool c. carpool d. car tank
2. A bike .... is an area on the side of the road that's only for people riding bikes.
   a. train b. lane c. vehicle d. power

3. A/An ---------- vehicle is a car that gets all or most of its power from electricity.

a. gas b. electric c. petrol d. solar

4. Clean ---------- is something you put in your car to give it power that doesn't damage the environment very much.

a. fuel b. station c. lane d. vehicle

5. ---------- station is a place or piece of equipment for giving electric motors in cars more power.

a. Changing b. Choosing c. Charging d. Cheating

6. Carbon ---------- are dangerous gases that cars make when they burn fuel.

a. stations b. transportation c. bikes d. emissions

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. Public ---------- is a great way to reduce traffic.

a. information b. transportation c. community d. furniture

8. The government is building new ---------- to encourage cycling.

a. platforms b. bike lanes c. stations d. apartments

9. The school will make a/an ---------- about the next holiday.

a. announcement b. news c. information d. school subject

10. Using the ---------- is better for our planet.

a. petrol b. oil c. smoke d. clean fuel

11. The train ---------- shows the time to leave and arrive.

a. stop b. station c. journey d. timetable

12. Let's ---------- to our work to reduce traffic.

a. wake up b. carpool c. get around d. drive

13. This train is the ---------- and it takes two hours.

a. express service b. journey c. station d. platform

14. The scientist discovered a new ---------- to the problem.

a. question b. information c. solution d. transportation

15. Electric cars get all or most of their ---------- from electricity.

a. engine b. petrol c. power d. vehicle

16. The train arrived at ---------- 5.

a. platform b. apartment c. view d. pavement

17. We should help our ___________ form these types of pollution.
    a. transportation b. equipment c. environment d. emissions
18. The bus ___________ takes about 12 hours.
    a. station b. picnic c. stop d. journey
19. Cars make dangerous gases when they burn ___________.
    a. equipment b. fuel c. electricity d. wood
20. To ___________ carbon emissions is better for the planet.
    a. have b. make c. breathe d. reduce
21. The company is going to ___________ the cost of its products.
    a. produce b. explains c. connect d. lower

Expressions and Prepositions

22. Smoking can ___________ serious health problems.
    a. burn b. cause c. take d. have
23. She came ___________ the store with a new dress.
    a. out of b. for c. off d. ahead
24. It ___________ two hours to get to the station.
    a. makes b. rides c. takes d. hides
25. Electric vehicles are cars you _________ to the electricity supply at a charging station.
    a. connect b. conserve c. correct d. comment

Language قواعد لغوية

Present simple المضارع البسيط

Usage :

• يستخدم المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن حقائق أو عادات أو الأفعال المتكررة

Ex. The sun rises in the east. \ They go to school at 7 am.

Form :

I /We/You/They + فاعل جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة

He/She/It / + فاعل مفرد + فعل + (s / es / ies) + تكملة

Ex. They go to Alexandria once a year.

Ex. She wears glasses.

Negative :

I / We/You/They + فاعل جمع + don't + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة

He / She/It + فاعل مفرد + don't + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة

Ex. The train doesn't leave at this platform.

Ex. They don't go to school on foot.

• يمكن أن نستخدم never في النفي مع بقاء الفعل مضاف اليه (s / es / ies) مع (He / She / It)

Yes \ No question :

Do + I / we / you / they + فاعل جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة ?

Does + he / she / it + فاعل مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة ?

Ex. Do they visit the museum once a year? - Yes, they do. No, they don't.

Ex. Does she get up early? - Yes, she does. No, she doesn't.

Wh question:

Wh + do + I / we / you / they + فاعل جمع + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة ?

Wh + does + he / she / it + فاعل مفرد + inf. مصدر الفعل + تكملة ?

Ex. Where do they go every day in the morning?

Ex. What does she wear to protect her eyes?

Tip

Present simple for timetable

• يمكننا استخدام المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأحداث التى لها جدول مواعيد ثابت مثل (مواعيد الافتتاح ،الأغلاق - الأتوبيسات - السينما - الامتحانات .... الخ)

Ex. The train leaves the station at 9 am.

Ex. The bus doesn't leave from platform 2.

Ex. Does the bus to Luxor stop here?

Ex. When does the train arrive in Cairo?

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. This train _________ at 7:35 pm.
   a. leaves b. leave c. leaving d. don't leave
2. It's 8:00 now. When _________ the next bus from Nairobi to Nakuru leave?
   a. do b. is c. did d. does
3. Which platform does the 11:00 bus to Nakuru _________ from?
   a. leaving b. leaves c. leave d. to leaving
4. When _________ the train arrive in Cairo?
   a. were b. do c. is d. does
5. When _________ the last bus from Nairboi to Nakuru arrive?
   a. is b. are c. do d. does
6. The 6:30 bus _________ in Akhmim at 6:55 p.m.
   a. is arriving b. arrive c. arriving d. arrives
7. This train is the express service and it_________ two hours.
   a. is taking b. takes c. take d. don't take
8. The bus _________ leave from platform 2.
   a. doesn't b. isn't c. don't d. aren't
9. _________the bus to Luxor stop here?
   a. Is b. Does c. Are d. Do
10. When does the 13:00 bus from Nairobi_________ in Nakuru?
    a. arrive b. arrives c. arriving d. is arriving
11. This bus _________ about 20 minutes to get to Safaga.
    a. takes b. taking c. take d. don't take

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. The holiday .... on 25th December.
a. begin b. begins c. beginning d. is beginning

13. The exhibition .... on 30th December.
a. close b. closes c. to close d. closing

14. What time .... the buses begin the journey?
a. are b. is c. do d. does

15. The plane .... in ten minutes.
a. don't arrive b. doesn't arrive c. isn't arriving d. wasn't arrived

16. The restaurant .... at 19.30 tonight.
a. opens b. open c. opening d. to opening

17. What time do you ....?
a. lands b. landing c. landed d. land

18. The movie .... at 7 p.m.
a. start b. starting c. starts d. to start

19. When do the exams ....?
a. begin b. begins c. beginning d. began

20. The festival .... on 15th August.
a. starts b. starting c. is starting d. start

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. Which platform does the train .... (leaves) from?
2. The train to Aswan......... (don't leave) from this platform.
3. What time ....(is) the next train stop in Luxor?
4. The next train to Alexandria ....(leave) at 14:20.
5. When .... (do) that bus arrive?
6. This train .... (get) to Cairo at 1:30.

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. The lesson .... (starting) at 9.30 tomorrow instead of 10.30.
8. I......... (has) a meeting on the 15th.
9. The show .... (begin) at 6 o'clock.
10. What time......... (do) the Comedy Night start?

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Driving cars is sometimes very bad .... the environment
   a. off b. at c. with d. for
2. Many .... parked there near the bus stop.
   a. vehicles b. planes c. stations d. boats
3. .... cars are becoming more popular.
   a. Electricity b. Electrical c. Electric d. Electrically
4. I need to find .... station for my electric car.
   a. petrol b. a charging c. fuel d. gas
5. .... can reduce the number of cars on the roads by about 20%
   a. Riding b. Camping c. Driving d. Carpooling
6. I came late .... the heavy traffic.
   a. although b. due to c. but d. so
7. The flight .... off at 12 PM.
   a. take b. taking c. takes d. to take
8. The school day .... at 7:30 AM
   a. starts b. starting c. start d. to start
9. The plane .... at the airport in twenty minutes.
   a. landing b. land c. lands d. to land
10. The museum .... from 10 AM to 6 PM.
    a. opens b. to open c. is opened d. opening
11. The night train .... at 10 o'clock.
    a. leave b. don't leave c. doesn't leave d. leaving
12. When does the train .... in Cairo?
    a. arrives b. arrived c. arrive d. arriving

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

emissions - carpooling - fuel - transportation - electric

Driving cars is bad for the environment. Vehicles that aren't electric and don't use clean (1) ....damage the environment and cause health problems. You can still use clean (2).............. If you really need to travel by car, try (3)........... It can reduce the number of cars on the roads by about 20%, which help lower carbon (4)..............

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The bus ---------- (arrive) at 10:30 am every morning.
2. The gym ---------- (closed) at 10 pm every night.
3. The cinema ---------- (showing) movies every day.
4. Does the train---------- (leaves) from platform 7?
5. When---------- (are) the flights take off?

4 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed is reading about clean transportation.

Mahomud : What are you reading?

Ahmed : I am reading an article about clean ❶ --.

Mahomud : What does it say?

Ahmed : Driving cars is very bad for the ❷ --.

Mahomud : What else does it say?

Ahmed : About 23% of all the world's carbon ❸ ---------------- come from cars.

Mahomud : Does it cause ❹ -- . problems?

Ahmed : Yes, it does.

5 Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

"Clean transportation"

- يمكنك من خلال الإجابة عن الأسئلة الآتية كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية:

1- What is clean transportation?
2- How can we reduce pollution?
3- Which form of transportation is better for the environment?

- يمكن استخدام العبارات الآتية:

Clean transportation is anything you use to get around that produces less ----------.
Using electric cars means that no dangerous carbon emissions ------------.
Find out if you can travel by train, bus, or bike instead of cars --------------.

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

directions (n)	اتجاهات	transportation (n)	النقل - المواصلات
energy (n)	طاقة	green spaces (n)	مساحات خضراء
food resources (n)	موارد غذائية	farms (n)	مزارع
ring road (n)	طريق دائري	facilities (n)	منشآت / مرافق / مباني
green energy (n)	طاقة صديقة للبيئة	climate positive (n)	ايجابية المناخ
across the street	عبر الشارع	keep going	واصل السير
straight ahead	إلى الأمام مباشرة	cross the road	اعبر الطريق
take the first right / left	انعطف أول طريق يمين\يسار		

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

tourist (n)	سائح	clearly (adv)	بوضوح
building (n)	مبنى	loudly (adv)	بصوت مرتفع
typical (adj)	نموذجي	quietly (adv)	بهدوء
welcome (adj)	مرحب به	polite (adj)	مؤدب
order (n)	ترتيب/امر	friendly (adj)	ودود
importance (n)	اهمية	helpful (adj)	متعاون
planners (n)	مخططون	clear (adj)	واضح
special (adj)	مميز	specific (adj)	محدد
noise (n)	ضوضاء	breathe (d)	يتنفس
running paths (n)	مسارات الجري	travel around (ed)	يتجول حول
produce (d)	ينتج	call (ed)	يسمي
replace (d)	يستبدل	explain (ed)	يشرح
mention (ed)	يذكر	charge (d)	يشحن
community garden (n)	حديقة اجتماعية	dive (d)	يغوص / يغطس
extra (adj)	اضافي	generate (d)	يولد
sports center (n)	مركز رياضي	replace (d)	يستبدل
tunnel (n)	نفق	mention (ed)	يذكر
quickly (adv)	بسرعة	produce (d)	ينتج

Definitions

across the street	عبر الشارع	on the other side of the street
straight ahead	إلي الأمام مباشرة	in one direction - no left or right
keep going	واصل السير	continue walking or driving one way
cross the road	أعبر الطريق	walk from one side of the road to the other
take the first right / left	خذ أول طريق يمين/يسار	to turn right / left the next time there is a street on your right / left

Expressions & Prepositions

give directions	يعطى الاتجاهات	on the other side	على الجانب الاخر
turn right	يستدير يمينا	on the right/left	على اليمين/اليسار
turn left	يستدير يسارا	on the ring road	على الطريق الدائري
have a look	يلقي نظرة	go into	يدخل
walk along the road	يمشي بطول الطريق	(be) able to + inf	قادر على أن
do exercise	يمارس تمارين	on the way to	في الطريق الى
keep farm animals	يربي حيوانات المزرعة	gives specific information	يعطى معلومات محددة
the least clear	الاقل وضوحا	in fact	فى الحقيقة

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
quiet	هادىء	calm	noisy	صاخب
friendly	ودود	kind	unfriendly	غير ودود
useful	مفيد	helpful	useless	غير مفيد
near	قريب	close to	far	بعيد
positive	إيجابي	practical	negative	سلبي

Prefixes & Suffixes بادئات ولواحق الكلمات

Prefix / Suffix	Use	Word
-y	تحول الاسم الى صفه	dirty
-ation	تحول الفعل الى اسم	transportation
-ly	تحول الصفه الى حال	slowly
-er	تحول الفعل الى اسم	speaker
-ful	تحول الفعل الى صفه	helpful

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
give	يعطي	gave	given
take	يأخذ	took	taken
keep	يحفظ/يحافظ على/يربي	kept	kept
build	يبني	built	built
mean	يقصد/يعني	meant	meant
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
grow	يزرع	grew	grown

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 without + v.ing Or + noun

Ex. That makes it easier for people to travel around them without driving cars.

Ex. I went to work without my mobile phone today.

2 on the way / in the way

- on the way في الطريق

Ex. I met Ali on my way to work.

- in the way تسد الطريق

Ex. There is a big tree in my way to school.

3 along / a long

- along (adv) على امتداد

Ex. There are lots of shops along this road.

- long (adj) طويل افقيا

Ex. The river is very long.

4 everyone / everybody / nobody

الكلمات السابقة يأتى بعدها فعل مفرد وضمير جمع

Ex. Everyone in the city is welcome to come in.

5 cross / across

- cross (v) يعبر او يجتاز

Ex. They crossed the river by boat.

- across (prep or adverb) عبر، على الجانب الآخر

Ex. The store is across the street.

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They finished the race without -------- any shortcuts.
   a. to use b. use c. using d. to using
2. I saw a beautiful bird -------- the way to school.
   a. in b. into c. for d. on
3. The are many trees -------- this street.
   a. long b. a long c. along d. long a
4. --------the bridge and turn right.
   a. Across b. Turn c. Cross d. Straight

Reading

SB Page (60)

استمع إلى النصوص

New Egyptian cities for the future



People started planning green cities for the future in Egypt in the 2010s. Today, there are many plans[1] to build new green cities in Egypt. In fact, we call these new places cities, but most of them are small places with an area of about 580 kilometers, for example.

This means that they're more like villages than big cities like Cairo. The planners[2] want these new cities to be small because that makes it easier for people to travel around them without driving cars. The streets of these new cities will be quiet and clean. No cars can go into the center of the cities, so you won't hear any noise[3] from cars or breathe any dirty air. People can only drive their cars on the ring road that goes all around each city. Nobody can drive through the city. There will be charging stations at different places along the road for people to charge[4] their electric vehicles. The cities will also have bike lanes and running paths, which will be up to 12 kilometers long, so that people can do exercise or travel around without producing any carbon emissions[5].

١. خطط
٢. مخططون
٣. ضوضاء
٤. يشحن
٥. أنبعاثات ثاني أكسيد الكربون
٦. سيتم توليدها
٧. ينتج
٨. منشآت
٩. يقطع الأشجار
١٠. زراعة
١١. تربية
١٢. إيجابية المناخ

The new green cities will also have many green spaces with grass, trees, and plants. Some of these green spaces will be community gardens. In a community garden, everyone in the city is welcome to come in, enjoy themselves, and grow things. What will be extra special about these new cities is that the people and buildings in each city will only use green energy generated[6] in that city. Each city will produce[7] enough energy for up to 10,000 homes and around 35,000 people will be able to live in one of these green cities. Of course, there will be schools, hospitals, sports centers, and other facilities[8] that people need, too.

The cities are also special because the people who live there will put new trees into the ground when they cut trees down[9]. They will also make all their own food by growing[10] fruit and vegetables in the city and keeping[11] farm animals there. When a city only uses the green energy it makes, and the people in the city grow all their own food, we say that the city is "climate positive[12] ". This means that it isn't doing anything to damage the Earth.

SB Page (60)

Narrator: Conversation 1

Woman : Excuse me, do you know the way[1] to the museum?

Man : Hmm, I think so, but I'm not sure. It could be a good idea to cross the road here. No, wait a minute[2], don't do that. Stay on this side of the road. Take a left, then walk along[3] the road go right after that.

Woman : Thank you.

Narrator: Conversation 2

Woman : Excuse me, could you tell me the way to the museum?

Man : Yes, sure. Keep going straight ahead[4] along this road until you see a big supermarket on your left. Then cross the road there, keep going for about 200 meters and then take the first left. After that, keep going straight ahead for about 300 meters and you'll see the museum in front of you.

Woman : Thank you very much.

Narrator: Conversation 3

Woman : Hello, I'm looking for[5] the museum. Do you know where it is?

Man : Hmm, no, sorry. No idea.

Woman : Oh OK, I thought it was somewhere near to here, but I'm really not sure.

Man : Cross the road and have a look over[6] there. There are lots of buildings on that side of the street.

Woman : OK.

١. طريق
٢. انتظر دقيقة
٣. سير على امتداد
٤. مباشرة للأمام
٥. يبحث عن
٦. يلقى نظرة على

SB Page (61)

Giving directions effectively

We often need to use the skill of asking for and giving directions in our daily lives. Even today when so many people have smartphones, it isn't always easy to find the way to places, especially for tourists. When you give directions,make sure that your directions are clear and easy to understand. Make it clear exactly where the person asking for directions needs to go, and what order they need to do things in. Specific information will be more helpful than general information and its always a good idea to be polite to people who ask you for directions too.

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Key Vocabulary & SB Exercises

1. No cars can go into the center of the cities, so you won't hear any ....
   a. results b. noise c. traffic d. information
2. Climate...........means that it isn't doing anything to damage the Earth.
   a. negative b. change c. specific d. positive
3. Planners make sure people .... tress which are cut down..
   a. damage b. paint c. spend d. replace
4. Future cities in Egypt will have many modern schools, hospitals, and sports centers. This means they will have many ....
   a. solutions b. stations c. facilities d. problems
5. To .... means to walk from one side of the road to the other.
   a. keep going b. across the street c. straight ahead d. cross the road
6. To .... means to continue walking or driving one way.
   a. keep going b. cross the road
   c. across the road d. straight ahead
7. Can you give me .... to the nearest train station?
   a. advice b. directions c. furniture d. transportation
8. Electric vehicles can .... less carbon emissions than normal cars.
   a. produce b. speak c. waste d. build
9. Cross the road and have .... over there.
   a. a see b. a look c. a watch d. a book
10. We need to improve our city's .... system.
    a. builders b. pollution c. transportation d. community
11. Farmers grow crops to provide us with food...........
    a. facilities b. planners c. tourists d. resources

Bit by Bit Exercises

12. The workers are building a new .... under the river.
    a. tunnel b. bridge c. cave d. camp

13. Solar and wind power are examples of __________.

a. experiment b. importance c. green energy d. facilities

14. Driving on the __________ road is faster than going through the city.

a. night b. ring c. effective d. news

15. Carpooling can __________ the number of cars on the roads.

a. damage b. reduce c. bring d. increase

16. City __________ are working on a new development project.

a. tourists b. plans c. planners d. babies

17. The company is on the right __________ to success.

a. bathe b. bath c. both d. path

18. The test results were __________ All the students got over 85%.

a. positive b. terrible c. negative d. dirty

19. Solar panels __________ electricity from sunlight.

a. generate b. happen c. take d. charge

20. The bird __________ down water to catch the fish.

a. brought b. drove c. rode d. dived

21. There will be charging stations along the road to __________ the electric vehicles.

a. charge b. change c. include d. repair

22. The air is fresh and clean, it's good to __________.

a. burn b. pollute c. stay d. breathe

Expressions and Prepositions

23. The GPS will __________ you directions to your destination.

a. take b. give c. burn d. generate

24. It's important to __________ enough energy to meet future needs.

a. bake b. take c. charge d. produce

25. Many farmers __________ farm animals like cows and chickens.

a. keep b. lower c. spend d. include

26. There was a lot of traffic __________ the ring road.

a. on b. in c. under d. for

27. The park is __________ the other side of the street.

a. to b. in front c. on d. next

Language قواعد لغوية

Prepositions حروف الجر

- **Prepositions** are short words that we use before **times** and **places** or after verbs for **movement**.
- حروف الجر هى كلمات قصيرة نستخدمها قبل الأوقات أو الأماكن أو بعد الأفعال للدلالة على الحركة:

A - Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

1 in

١- قبل شهور السنة:	in January
٢- قبل السنين:	in 2020
٣- قبل العقود:	in The 2010s = (from 2010 to 2019) = 10 years
٤- قبل فصول السنة:	in (the) winter
٥- قبل فترات اليوم المسبوقة بـ the:	in the afternoon

2 at

١- قبل وقت محدد:	at 2 o'clock
٢- قبل الاجازات :	at the weekend
٣- قبل الوجبات:	at dinner
٤- قبل ذكر العمر:	at the age of ....

3 on

١- قبل أيام الأسبوع:	on Tuesday
٢- قبل التواريخ:	on 10th November
٣- قبل كلمات الخاصة:	on holiday / on birthday

B - Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة المكان

1 in

- تأتي بمعنى في/أو بالداخل غالبًا مكان مغلق أو عام:

١- دول:	in Egypt
٢- مدن:	in the city / Luxor
٣- قارات:	in Africa
٤- وسائل المواصلات في حالة وجود فاصل ولا يمكن الوقوف فيها:	in a taxi / in a car
	in a home
	in the room

2 on

ا- قبل الأسطح:

on the table

٢- تعبيرات معينة:

on the right / left

on a ring road

٣- وسائل المواصلات في حالة وجود فاصل ويمكن الحركة أو يمكن الوقوف فيها:

on the bus

Notes

• لاحظ إستخدام حرف الجر الصحيح مع العناوين:

Ex. I live on Orman street. = (in)

- فى حالة ذكر إسم الشارع فقط.

Ex. I live at 50 Orman street.

- فى حالة ذكر إسم و رقم الشارع (عنوان كامل)

• ادرس الجدول التالى:

at	on	in
at home	on a farm	in a home
at work	on the roof	in the countryside
at a party	on TV	in the park
at the cinema	on the internet	in the sky
at the top		in a picture
		in a tent

3 Along

• "على طول" أو "على امتداد" تستخدم للإشارة إلى الحركة أو الامتداد بجانب شئ أو على طوله:

Ex. The children walked along the beach.

• لاحظ الفرق بين إستخدام :

a long + اسم Vs along

along حرف جر بمعنى "على طول" أو "على امتداد":

Ex. We cycled along the river.

a long + اسم صفة بمعنى طويل يأتى بعدها إسم:

Ex. It is a long river.

- لاحظ الفرق بين إستخدام in / into:

- تستخدم (in) للإشارة إلى أن الشئ موجود داخل مكان محدد دون الحركة.

Ex. The key are in the drawer.

- تستخدم (into) للإشارة إلى حركة الشئ نحو الداخل.

Ex. Mesk put the keys into the drawer.

- لاحظ أشهر أفعال تستخدم للدلالة على الحركة:

go into	يذهب إلى	run into	يركض إلى	dive into	يغوص في
come into	يدخل إلى	get into	يدخل إلى	jump into	يقفز إلى

- لاحظ:

Ex. Put into the ground.

يضع شئ داخل الأرض مثل بذرة أو نبات.

Ex. Heba put the seed into the ground.

2 through

- "عبر" أو "من خلال" تستخدم إلى المرور أو الأنتقال داخل شئ أو عبر مثل شوارع المدينة أو نفق:

Ex. The train went through the tunnel.

3 over

- "فوق" أو "أعلى" تشير إلى الحركة أو الشئ الذى تحدث أعلى شئ ما:

Ex. There is a bridge over the river.

Ex. There is a bridge over the river.

- **We use at in these expressions :** at night/ at the moment

We say: at the weekends / at weekends/ at present/ at Christmas/ at the same time -

We say : in the morning (s) / in the afternoon (s) / in the evening (s)

But : - on Friday morning (s) / on Sunday afternoon (s) / on Monday evening (s) etc.

We say : - in a few minutes / in a moment / in six months / in a month.

- لاحظ:

on the weekend= at the weekend

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We will finish building the city .... 2080.
   a. on b. at c. in d. of
2. We are going .... the tunnel new. Everything will go dark.
   a. after b. through c. at d. out

3. There are lots of shops .... this road.
   a. in b. on c. along d. at
4. I traveled to Alex .... the train.
   a. in b. at c. by d. on
5. .... the moment, we only have one charging station.
   a. At b. In c. On d. After
6. People can only drive their cars .... the ring road that goes all around each city.
   a. on b. in c. under d. between
7. There are many plans to build new green cities .... Egypt.
   a. under b. at c. on d. in
8. People started planning green cities for the future .... the 2010s.
   a. on b. of c. at d. in
9. The train gets to Cairo .... 1:30.
   a. in b. at c. on d. under
10. What time does the next train stop .... Luxor?
   a. on b. in c. at d. between

Bit by Bit Exercises

11. In Egypt, children go to school .... the age of seven.
   a. since b. on c. in d. at
12. I go to the sports center .... Friday.
   a. under b. at c. in d. on
13. When it started to rain, she got .... the car quickly.
   a. on b. onto c. into d. under
14. Shops are located .... the street.
   a. long b. along c. between d. over
15. Mo Salah managed to pass the ball .... the players and made Zizo alone.
   a. above b. in c. on d. through
16. The plane is flying .... the city.
   a. between b. over c. at d. under
17. Christmas is .... December 25th.
   a. in b. on c. at d. for
18. The cat jumped .... the box.
   a. into b. for c. onto d. next

19. I wake up at 7am .... the morning.
    a. under b. on c. at d. in
20. There are trees planted .... the river.
    a. in b. on c. along d. long

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

SB

1. I just saw Bassem dive ....(a long) the pool.
2. I have a swimming class ....(in) the sports center tomorrow.
3. I went shopping ....(in) the weekend.
4. The family is sitting .... (on) the breakfast table, chatting.
5. Smart Phons become popular .... (to) the 2010s.
6. A: Where are the keys? B: The keys are .... (on) the bag.
7. It was .... (along) road to the village.
8. There are many trees ....(long) the road.
9. I wake up early ....(in) Friday.
10. The manager isn't here ....(on) the moment.

Speaking

Asking and answering about giving directions:

• السؤال والاجابة عن اعطاء الاتجاهات:

Question	Answer
Where is the.....................? أين الـ................؟	Go across the street اذهب عبر الشارع Go straight ahead سر بشكل مستقيم Keep going استمر في المشي
How can I get to the.....................? كيف يمكن أن أصل الى الـ..........؟	Cross the road اعبر الطريق Take the first left خذ اول يسار Take the first right خذ اول يمين
Could you tell me the way to the..........? هل يمكن أن تخبرني عن الطريق الى الـ.......؟	It's on the right/left. انه على اليمين/اليسار Turn right/left. استدر يمينا/يسارا

General Exercises on Lessons 3 & 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b ,c or d:

1. .... a left, then walk along the road and go right after that.
   a. Give b. Talk c. Drive d. Take
2. People started .... green cities for the future in Egypt in the 2010s.
   a. planning b. charging c. growing d. producing
3. There will be .... at different places to charge electric vehicles.
   a. bus stations b. ports c. solar panels d. charging stations
4. The new cities will also have bike .... and running paths.
   a. airports b. lanes c. stations d. stops
5. That will help us .... enough energy for up to 10,000 homes.
   a. produce b. reduce c. introduce d.breathe
6. They arrived .... October.
   a. at b. in c. on d. to
7. Were there many people .... the party?
   a. for b. through c. across d. at
8. Will you be here .... the weekend?
   a. at b. in c. over d. to
9. They will go .... the museum in two minutes.
   a. with b. for c. into d. since
10. I saw Reem .... a concert on Saturday.
    a. at b. on c. for d. in

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following list:

clean - positive - center - planners - noise

People started planning green cities for the future in Egypt in the 2010s. The ❶ .... want these new cities to be small because that makes it easier for people to travel around them without driving cars.No cars can go into the ❷ .... of the cities, so you won't hear any ❸ .... from cars or breathe any dirty air. We say that the city is "climate ❹ ....". This means that it isn't doing anything to damage the Earth.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Maoz wants to know directions

Moaz : Excuse me, how can I get to the library?

Akram : Go ❶ .... ahead, and turn left. It is on the right.

Moaz : ❷ .... is the nearest supermarket?

Akram : ❸ .... right. The supermarket is on the corner.

Moaz : Great, thanks a lot.

Akram : You are ❹ ....

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. I just saw Bassem dive .... (onto) the pool.
2. We are going .... (above) the tunnel now. Everything will go dark.
3. I'll see you .... (in) Friday morning.
4. We had dinner .... (along) the hotel.
5. Do you give each other presents .... (on) Christmas?
6. She is only home .... (in) weekends.

5 Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

(مجاب اخر الوحدة)

"Green cities"

....

....

....

....

....

....

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

excerpt (n)	مقتطف	fight (n)	معركة/شجار
suddenly (adv)	فجأه	railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد
passengers (n)	ركاب	cheer (ed)	يهتف/يهلل
council (n)	مجلس	cross (ed)	يعبر

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

world (n)	عالم	common (adj)	شائع/منتشر
afraid (adj)	خائف	bridge (n)	كوبرى
angry (adj)	غاضب	worried (adj)	قلق
excited (adj)	متحمس	driver (n)	سائق
because of (prep)	بسبب	expected (adj)	متوقع
nearby (adv)	قريب/مجاور	town center (n)	وسط المدينة
safe (adj)	آمن	assistant (n)	مساعد
century (n)	قرن ..١٠٠ عام	colonel (n)	عقيد (رتبة عسكرية)
carpooling (n)	التشارك في ركوب السيارة	version (n)	نسخة/صيغة
free (adj)	مجانى/غير شاغر	tips (n)	نصائح
seat (n)	مقعد	meeting (n)	مقابلة
activity (n)	نشاط	avoid (ed)	يتجنب
happiness (n)	سعادة	organize (d)	ينظم
metal (n) (adj)	معدن/معدني	prefer (red)	يفضل
busy roads (n)	طرق مزدحمة	agree (d)	يوافق

Definitions

suddenly	فجأة	something that happens quickly or isn't expected.
railway line	خط السكك الحديدية	two metal lines that a train travels on.
passenger	راكب	a person who is traveling on a bus, train, ship, or plane.
cross (a bridge)	يعبر	to travel from one side to another.
to cheer	يهتف\يشجع	to shout with happiness.
excerpt	مقتطف	is a short piece of a story.

Expressions & Prepositions

take a train	يستقل القطار	around the world	حول العالم
cross the bridge	يعبر الكوبري	on the train	في القطار
get off the train	ينزل من القطار	angry with	غاضب من
feel safe	يشعر بالأمان	at first	في البداية
create a page	ينشيء صفحة	at last	في النهاية
share information about	يشارك معلومات عن	decide to	يقرر أن
stop (someone) from+ v. ing	يمنع شخص من	falling into	يقع في
better\good for	مفيد لـ	on the busy roads	في الطرق المزدحمة

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
busy	مزدحم	crowded	free	فارغ
dangerous	خطير	risky	safe	آمن
happiness	سعادة	joy	sadness	حزن
angry	غاضب	cross	calm	هادىء

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
know	يعرف	knew	known
tell	يخبر	told	told
meet	يقابل	met	met
fall	يسقط / يقع	fell	fallen

Language Notes

ملاحظات لغوية

1 a six-hour walk

- a six-hour walk

•لاحظ أن الكلمة هنا تعتبر صفة لما بعدها لذلك لايجوز جمعها

Ex. We went on a six-hour walk through the forest.

2 would prefer to + inf

- **would prefer to + inf**

Ex. I would prefer to travel to Paris next summer.

3 see + obj + v.ing

- **see + obj + v.ing**

• نستخدم هذه الصيغة في حالة رؤية جزء من الحدث

Ex. They saw the bridge falling into the river behind them.

- **see + obj + inf**

• نستخدم هذه الصيغة في حالة رؤية الحدث كاملا من البداية اللي النهاية

Ex. I saw him fall off the wall.

4 fall \ feel \ fill

- **fall - fell - fallen** يسقط - يقع

Ex. The apple fell from the tree yesterday.

- **feel - felt - felt** يشعر بـ

Ex. When people feel safe enough to ride their bikes, they won't drive their cars so often.

- **fill - filled - filled** يملأ

Ex. He filled the bottle with water.

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I need a three- -------- holiday to relax.
   a. weeks' b. a week c. weeks d. week
2. He would prefer to -------- a book than watch TV.
   a. read b. reading c. reads d. to reading
3. We saw the children -------- in the park.
   a. play b. to play c. plays d. to playing
4. I -------- happy yesterday .
   a. felt b. fell c. filled d. filed

Reading

SB Page (60)

استمع إلى النصوص

Read and listen to an excerpt from Around the World in Eighty Days.



Think!

You are going to read an excerpt from a novel. An excerpt is a short piece of a story. The excerpt below is taken from Jules Verne's novel Around the World in Eighty Days. Can you remember where you saw an excerpt before in this book? What was the title of the story?

The next day, Aouda saw Colonel Stamp Proctor on the train. She was afraid(1) that he might be angry with Phileas Fogg if they met because of the fight(2) that the two men had in San Francisco. She told Fix and Passepartout. They knew they must stop Fogg and Colonel Proctor from meeting(3). Fix asked Phileas Fogg to play a game of chess. He agreed and soon Fogg and Fix were playing chess all day. Suddenly(4), the train stopped. There were no stations nearby and at first no one knew why.

"It's the bridge at Medicine Bow a mile up the railway line(5)," the train driver said. "It's not strong enough to take this train." He said that the passengers(6) could walk to Medicine Bow. This was a six-hour walk. The passengers were not happy. At last the train driver decided to try to cross the bridge. "If I drive the train as fast as possible, perhaps we will cross the bridge safely," he said. The passengers were very excited(7) and they agreed(8) to his plan (9). Passepartout was worried(10). He said that the passengers should get off(11) the train before it tried to cross the bridge, but no one listened to the Frenchman. The train went very fast over the bridge. When they crossed it safely, all the passengers cheered (12). When they looked back, they saw the bridge falling into (13) the river behind them.

١. خائفة
٢. الشجار
٣. المقابلة
٤. فجأة
٥. خط سكة حديد
٦. ركاب
٧. متحمسين
٨. وافقوا
٩. خطة
١٠. قلق
١١. ينزل من
١٢. هتفوا
١٣. يسقط في

Read and listen to the tips text :

Tips for reducing carbon emissions from transportation.

1. Electric vehicles are better for the environment than cars that use dirty fuel, but we need more charging stations in our town so it's easier for people to use them. At the moment, we only have one charging station and it isn't in the town center. The town should have ten charging stations.
2. Traveling by bike is good for the environment, but it can be dangerous on the busy roads in our town. The town should have bike lanes on Rankin Street and School Road. When people feel safe enough to ride their bikes, they won't drive their cars so often.
3. The town council should help people to organize carpooling. It could create a page on its website for people to share information about when they have a free seat in their car for a journey. More carpooling means fewer cars.

Tip

How to write tips

Use your notes using these expressions:

At the moment, we have	في هذه اللحظة
We need (more or less)	نحتاج .... (اكثر \ اقل).........
The town needs	المدينة تحتاج ....
The town should have	المدينة ينبغي أن يكون فيها..........
The town council should	مجلس المدينة ينبغي أن..........
It could.......................	انه \ انها يمكن..........

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Bit by bit Exercises

1. A\An .... is a person who is traveling on a bus, train, ship, or plane.
   a. passenger b. driver c. viewer d. owner
2. To .... means to shout with happiness.
   a. chair b. cheer c. share d. chain
3. ...., the roof started falling when they were playing.
   a. Beautifully b. Clearly c. Happily d. Suddenly

4. They .... loudly for their favorite player.
   a. cheered b. watched c. traveled d. scored
5. They always .... the river on their way to school.
   a. include b. across c. organize d. cross
6. The children played near the railway .... which was dangerous.
   a. stop b. line c. bridge d. lane
7. .... is a great way to reduce and save money.
   a. Polling b. Swimming c. Carpooling d. Diving
8. The city .... met to discuss the new rules.
   a. country b. council c. building d. meeting
9. During the ...., we made some important decisions.
   a. furniture b. review c. view d. meeting
10. The naughty boys got into .... during the break.
   a. lesson b. fight c. meeting d.test
11. The book review has a\an .... from the first pages.
   a. information b. news c. excerpt d. opinions
12. The teaching .... helped the students with their homework.
   a. doctor b. manager c. children d. assistant
13. A\An .... is a short piece of a story.
   a. except b.expert c. excerpt d.experience
14. She doesn't .... safe walking alone at night.
   a. grow b. heat c. turn d. feel
15. .... bikes is good for the environment.
   a. Driving b. Repairing c. Riding d. Painting
16. The city center was very ..... during the holidays. There were a lot of men there.
   a. free b. interested c. happiness d. busy

Expressions and Prepositions

17. When I was younger I was .... of dogs.
   a. excited b. afraid c. amazed d. interested
18. We often .... a train to visit our family.
   a. take b. have c. do d. exercise
19. Remember to .... the train at the correct station.
   a. ride b. get off c. takes d. give
20. I saw my old friend .... the train to Sohag.
   a. with b. on c. over d. under
21. My parents were angry .... me for coming home late.
   a. at b. by c. with d. about
22. This exercise is better .... your health.
   a. at b. to c. with d. for
23. The manager tried to stop him from........... during the meeting.
   a. speak b. speaking c. spoke d. spoken

Language قواعد لغوية

Using pronouns to avoid repetition استخدام الضمائر لتفادي التكرار

- Subject pronouns are words you can use instead of nouns that refer to people or things

- ضمائر الفاعل هي كلمات يمكنك أن تستخدمها بدلا من الاسماء التي تشير الى عاقل أو غير عاقل تم ذكرها سابقا في نفس النص او الجملة .

Original sentence

Ex. I bought a car. The car is too expensive.

Revised sentence:

Ex. I bought a car. It is too expensive.

After using the proper noun in a sentence, you can then use a pronoun instead of it when you mention it again in that sentence or at the start of the next sentence. This makes your writing more interesting .

- بعد استخدام اسم العلم في جملة فاننا يمكن ان نستخدم ضمير بدلا منه عندما نذكره مرة اخرى فى جملة اخرى. ذلك يجعل الكتابة شيقه أكثر.

Ex. Mazen's dad drives an electric car. He prefers it.

- يمكن استخدام ضمائر الفاعل - المفعول

ضمائر الفاعل		ضمائر المفعول
I	انا	me
he	هو	him
she	هي	her
it	هو/هي لغير العاقل المفرد	it
you	انت / انتم	you
we	نحن	us
they	هم	them

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. The book was interesting. I read .... quickly.
   a. it b. its c. he d. them
2. The dog barked at the boy. .... was scared.
   a. She b. It c. He d. His
3. The girl rode her bike to the park. .... saw a dog on her way.
   a. He b. She c. It d. This

4. The boy ate his dinner. .... was hungry.
   a. It b. He c. She d. His
5. The teacher gave the students a test. .... studied hard for it
   a. They b. He c. She d. We
6. The car broke down. .... needed a new battery.
   a. He b. They c. She d. It
7. The phone rang. She answered ....
   a. his b. hers c. it d. he
8. The pizza was delicious. I ate .... all.
   a. there b. he c. it d. she
9. I watched the movie with Nada. .... was happy.
   a. She b. It c. He d. You
10. The view was beautiful. We took pictures of ....
    a. it b. he c. they d. she
11. The people were friendly. .... helped us.
    a. She b. He c. They d. It
12. The news was shocking. .... surprised us.
    a. It b. They c. She d. He
13. The thief stole the money. .... ran away.
    a. It b. She c. You d. Them
14. Our class went on a trip. .... pleased.
    a. They were b. It is c. He was d. It
15. I helped Ali to do the homework. I also helped .... to play the guitar.
    a. her b. she c. him d. he

2 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. The nurse took care of the patient. .... (It) was kind and gentle.
2. The police caught the thief. .... (He) arrested him.
3. The rain was falling. .... (She) was a rainy day.
4. The student answered the question. .... (We) was correct.
5. The musician played a song. .... (Her) was lovely.
6. Mona was running late for school so .... (he) went on her bike to get there on time.

General Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While I was walking, ... I felt tired.
   a. happily b. suddenly c. luckily d. slow
2. She is looking for a personal .... to help her.
   a. thief b. scientist c. passengers d. assistant
3. The teacher read a short .... from the play.
   a. movie b. excerpt c. information d. expert
4. She goes to bed .... 10 pm.
   a. to b. at c. in d.with
5. The bike is in .... the bus.
   a. to b. next to c. behind d.front of
6. The cars are going .... the tunnel.
   a. for b. through c. long d.cross
7. My parents always visit me .... my birthday.
   a. for b. on c. in d. at

2 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

fuel - share - council - reducing - going

It's important to help our planet. Here are some tips for (1) .... carbon emissions from transportation. Electric vehicles are better for the environment than cars that use dirty (2) .... .The town (3) .... should help people to organize carpooling. It could create a page on its website for people to (4) .... information about carpooling.

3 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. He was born .... (on) the 19th century.
2. The plane is .... (along) the clouds.
3. The paper was .... (at) the floor.
4. You can come .... (in) the weekend.

Review on Unit 11

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

transportation (n)	النقل / المواصلات	announcement (n)	بيان / اعلان
electric vehicle (n)	مركبة كهربائية	express service (n)	خدمة سريعة
charging station (n)	محطة شحن	platform (n)	رصيف (في محطة قطار)
clean fuel (n)	وقود صديق للبيئة	electricity supply (n)	مزود الكهرباء
bike lane (n)	ممر (حارة) الدراجات	timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد
carbon emissions (n)	انبعاثات ثاني اكسيد الكربون	carpool (ed)	يذهب في رحلة مشتركة/يتقاسم سيارة
directions (n)	اتجاهات	transportation (n)	النقل - المواصلات
energy (n)	طاقة	green spaces (n)	مساحات خضراء
food resources (n)	موارد غذائية	farms (n)	مزارع
ring road (n)	طريق دائري	facilities (n)	منشآت/مرافق/مباني
green energy (n)	طاقة صديقة للبيئة	climate positive (n)	ايجابية المناخ
across the street	عبر الشارع	keep going	واصل السير
straight ahead	إلى الأمام مباشرة	cross the road	اعبر الطريق
cross (ed)	يعبر	fight (n)	معركة/شجار
excerpt (n)	مقتطف	railway line (n)	خط سكة حديد
Suddenly (adv)	فجأه	cheer (ed)	يهتف/يهلل
passengers (n)	ركاب	take the first right / left	انعطف أول طريق يمين\يسار
council (n)	مجلس		

Language قواعد لغوية

Tip

Present simple for timetable

- يمكننا استخدام المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن المستقبل مع الأحداث التى لها جدول مواعيد ثابت مثل (مواعيد الافتتاح ،الأغلاق - الأتوبيسات - السينما - الامتحانات .... الخ)

Ex. The train leaves the station at 9 am.
Ex. The bus doesn't leave from platform 2.
Ex. Does the bus to Luxor stop here?
Ex. When does the train arrive in Cairo?

Prepositions حروف الجر

A - Prepositions of time حروف الجر الخاصة بالوقت

1 in

١- قبل شهور السنة: in January
٢- قبل السنين: in 2020
٣- قبل العقود: in The 2010s = (from 2010 to 2019) = 10 years
٤- قبل فصول السنة: in (the) winter
٥- قبل فترات اليوم المسبوقة بـ the: in the afternoon

2 at

١- قبل وقت محدد: at 2 o'clock
٢- قبل الاجازات : at the weekend
٣- قبل الوجبات: at dinner
٤- قبل ذكر العمر: at the age of ....

3 on

١- قبل أيام الأسبوع: on Tuesday
٢- قبل التواريخ: on 10th November
٣- قبل كلمات الخاصة: on holiday / on birthday

B - Prepositions of place حروف الجر الخاصة المكان

1 in

- تأتي بمعنى في/أو بالداخل غالبًا مكان مغلق أو عام:

١- دول: in Egypt
٢- مدن: in the city / Luxor
٣- قارات: in Africa
٤- وسائل المواصلات في حالة وجود فاصل ولا يمكن الوقوف فيها: in a taxi / in a car

in a home in the room

2 on

١- قبل الأسطح: on the table
٢- تعبيرات معينة: on the right / left
on a ring road
٣- وسائل المواصلات في حالة وجود فاصل ويمكن الحركة أو يمكن الوقوف فيها: on the bus

Notes

- لاحظ إستخدام حرف الجر الصحيح مع العناوين:

Ex. I live on Orman street. = (in)

- فى حالة ذكر إسم الشارع فقط.

Ex. I live at 50 Orman street.

- فى حالة ذكر إسم و رقم الشارع (عنوان كامل)

- ادرس الجدول التالى:

at	on	in
at home	on a farm	in a home
at work	on the roof	in the countryside
at a party	on TV	in the park
at the cinema	on the internet	in the sky
at the top		in a picture
		in a tent

C - Prepositions of movement حروف الجر الخاصة بالحركة

1 into

- تستخدم الدلالة على الحركة من الخارج إلى الداخل:

Ex. He went into the room.

- لاحظ الفرق بين إستخدام into/in:

- تستخدم (in) للإشارة إلى أن الشئ موجود داخل مكان محدد دون الحركة.

Ex. The key are in the drawer.

- تستخدم (into) للإشارة إلى حركة الشئ نحو الداخل.

Ex. Mesk put the keys into the drawer.

- لاحظ أشهر أفعال تستخدم للدلالة على الحركة:

go into يذهب إلى	run into يركض إلى	dive into يغوص في
come into يدخل إلى	get into يدخل إلى	jump into يقفز إلى

- لاحظ:

Ex. Put into the ground.

يضع شئ داخل الأرض مثل بذرة أو نبات.

Ex. Heba put the seed into the ground.

2 through

- "عبر" أو "من خلال" تستخدم إلى المرور أو الأنتقال داخل شئ أو عبر مثل شوارع المدينة أو نفق:

Ex. The train went through the tunnel.

3 over

- "فوق" أو "أعلى" تشير إلى الحركة أو الشئ الذى تحدث أعلى شئ ما:

Ex. There is a bridge over the river.

Speaking

Asking and answering about giving directions:

- السؤال والاجابة عن اعطاء الاتجاهات:

Question

Where is the......................?
أين الـ.................؟

How can I get to the.....................?
كيف يمكن أن أصل الى الـ..........؟

Could you tell me the way to the..........?
هل يمكن أن تخبرني عن الطريق الى الـ.......؟

Answer

Go across the street	اذهب عبر الشارع
Go straight ahead	سر بشكل مستقيم
Keep going	استمر في المشي
Cross the road	اعبر الطريق
Take the first left	خذ اول يسار
Take the first right	خذ اول يمين
It's on the right/left.	انه على اليمين/اليسار
Turn right/left.	استدر يمينا/يسارا

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات إنشائية و رسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Clean transportation

Clean transportation is anything you use to get around that produces less carbon emissions than normal cars. Use as much clean transportation as possible. Driving cars is very bad for the environment. About 23% of all the worlds carbon emissions come from cars. Vehicles that aren't electric and don't use clean fuel damage the environment and cause health problems. Using electric cars means that no dangerous carbon emissions come out of the car. Find out if you can travel by train, bus, or bike instead of cars. If you really need to travel by car, try carpooling. It can reduce the number of cars on the roads by about 20%, which help lower carbon emissions.

Green cities

Green cities are the future of urban living. By carefully planning and building sustainable communities, we can create healthier and more environmentally friendly environments. These cities often depend on using electric cars to reduce air pollution and noise. Wide, clean streets lined with trees and bike lanes encourage people to choose active transportation. Green spaces and parks can provide clean air and help people relax. With fewer cars on the road, the air quality improves. It helps people to breathe cleaner, fresher air and enjoy a better quality of life.

Al Azhar Test

I read an interesting story yesterday. It's called " Around the world in eighty days. The main character in the story decided to travel around the world in eighty days. The story is full of exciting actions. I will give it to many friends to read it.

Reducing carbon emissions from transportation

It is important for our environment to be clean. One of the ways that help our planet is to reduce carbon emissions that come from different kinds of transportations. Electric vehicles are better for the environment than cars that use dirty fuel. Traveling by bike is also good for the environment, but it can be dangerous on the busy roads. The town council should help people to organize carpooling. It could create a page on its website for people to share information about when they have a free seat in their car for a journey.

Al Azhar Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I read an .... story.
   a. amazed b. amazing c. awful d. excited
2. I wanted to .... around the world.
   a. study b. learn c. travel d. sleep

B: Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialog:

Rana and Farah are talking about a story

Rana : What did you do yesterday?

Farah : (1) ....

Rana : A story! (2) .... ?

Farah : It is called "Around the world in eighty days".

Rana : Is it interesting?

Farah : (3) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Climate .... means that it is isn't doing anything to damage the Earth.
   a. positive b. specific c. change d. negative
2. To reach the station, ... going and then turn right.
   a. sleep b. keep c. make d. stop
3. .... vehicles are good for the planet.
   a. Electricity b. Electrical c. Electric d. Normal
4. When .... the bus arrive?
   a. does b. do c. is d. are
5. The bus .... about 20 minutes to get to Safaga .
   a. take b. takes c. will take d. taking

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Traveling around the world is like opening a big, colorful book. Every page is a new country with **exciting** stories and pictures. You can climb high mountains, swim in warm oceans, and eat yummy foods from different places. You'll meet people who are very different from you, but you can learn from **them** and make new friends. It's a big adventure that will teach you lots things.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Give a suitable title for the passage.

----

2. What can you do when you travel?

----

3. Do you think traveling is important?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined pronoun "**them**" refers to ---------- .
   a. mountains   b. food   c. people   d. book
5. The underlined word "**exciting**" means ---------- .
   a. terrible   b. interesting   c. lazy   d. bad

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. The train to Zagazig **isn't** leave from this platform. (......................)
2. What time does the train **stops** in Luxor? (......................)
3. We will finish building the city **on** 2030. (......................)
4. I just saw Bassem dive **under** the pool. (......................)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

A story you read

Test on Unit 11

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is Noura's favorite time of the year.

a. Celebrations b. Journey time c. School time d. Sham El Nessim

2. We enjoy it at the start of ....

a. spring b. winter c. summer d. fall

3. Many people also go to ....

a. school b. hospital c. the beach d. the airport

B. Listen and complete:

4. Sham El Nessim started in .... BCE. Most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the .... with their families.

5. On this day, we eat a lot of .... food.

6. Many people also go to the .... where they can make sandcastles.

2 Choose the correct answer : (ON VOCABULARY)

1. Cross the road and .... a look over there.

a. have b. buy c. wash d. continue

2. We took the ring .... to avoid the city center.

a. station b. building c. road d. bridge

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

grow - facilities - spaces - homestay - energy

The new green cities will also have many green spaces with grass, trees, and plants. Some of these green (1) .... will be community gardens. In a community garden, everyone in the city is welcome to come in, enjoy themselves, and (2) .... things. Each city will produce enough (3) .... for up to 10,000 homes and around 35,000 people will be able to live in one of these green cities. Of course, there will be schools, hospitals, sports centers, and other (4) .... that people need, too.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text then answer the questions:

Mohamed Salah is a famous Egyptian football player. He was born in 1992. He plays for a very good team in Europe. He plays for Egypt, too. He is very good at scoring goals. He is a fast runner. He has usually got a big smile. He is quite short for a footballer. He is 1.75 metres tall. He has got <u>curly</u> hair and a beard. He is a kind person. He gives money to build schools and hospitals in Egypt. He is very friendly and he always talks to his fans. <u>They</u> love him very much.

A. Choose the correct answer :

1. The underlined pronoun **"They"** refers to the ___________.
   a. footballers b. goals c. hospitals d. fans
2. The opposite of the underlined word **"curly"** is .
   a. long b. short c. straight d. brown

B. Answer the following questions

3. What is the best title for this passage?

   ----

4. When and where was Mo Salah born?

   ----

5. Do you think Mo Salah is an important person for the community? Why / Why not?

   ----

6. Do you want to be like him one day? Why?

C : Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer: (On structure)

1. The train to Aswan ___________ from this platform.
   a. leaves b. leave c. leaving d. is left
2. We are about to go ___________ the museum.
   a. under b. over c. long d. into

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. When does that bus ___________ (arriving)?

2. My older son was born .... (at) the 2010s.
3. My dog loves to play .... (in) home in the garden.
4. This bus .... (take) about 20 minutes to get to Alexandria.

D : Language Functions

7 Complete the following dialog :

Mona is asking Soha about her favorite hobbies

Mona : What are your favorite hobbies, Soha?

Soha : I ❶ .... reading and sports.

Mona : ❷ .... sport do you like playing?

Soha : I like ❸ .... tennis.

Mona : Where do you play?

Soha : In the club.

Mona : How ❹ .... do you play it?

Soha : I play it every Friday.

E Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about (80) words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

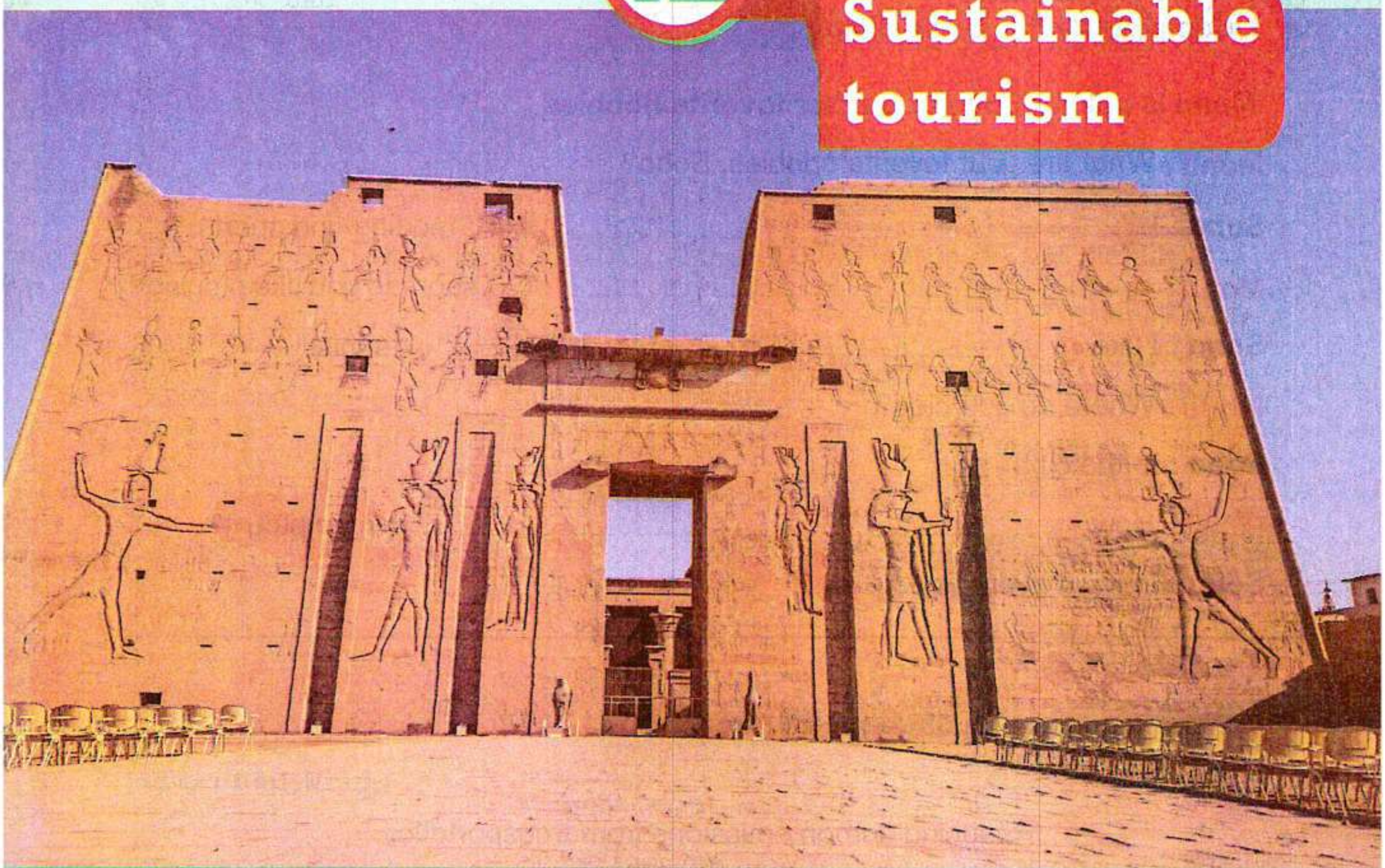
Reducing carbon emissions from transportation

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

New Hello!

Beyond Words

Unit 12 Sustainable tourism



Objectives of the Unit

Reading:

Online reviews about vacations; An article about tourism and the planet; A report about rural homestays; A story about an unusual vacation

Writing:

Sustainability tips for tourists visiting your region

Listening:

A description of a young person's staycation

Speaking:

Discussing ways to make tourism better for the planet

Language:

Verbs followed by gerund or to + infinitive form with different meanings

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

airline (n)	خطوط جوية/رحلة طيران	guide (n)	مرشد
tour (n)	جولة	resort (n)	منتجع
staycation (n)	اجازة داخلية	shuttlebus (n)	حافلة مكوكية
walking tour (n)	جولة تمشية	historical sites (n)	مواقع أثرية
water park (n)	ملاهي مائية	cable car (n)	التلفريك
the natural world (n)	العالم الطبيعي	a hi-air balloon ride (n)	ركوب منطاد الهواء
shopping mall (n)	مركز تسوق	hot air balloon (n)	منطاد الهواء الساخن
Sustainable tourism	سياحة مستدامة		

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

review (n)	مراجعة/نقد	business (n)	شركة
vacation (n)	إجازة/عطلة	stores (n)	محلات
flight (n)	رحلة جوية	clear (adj)	صافي
interest (n)	اهتمام/إثارة	fascinating (adj)	مذهل/مبهر
problem (n)	مشكلة	ancient places (n)	أماكن قديمة
positive (adj)	إيجابي	below (prep.)	اسفل
negative (adj)	سلبي	quite (adv)	الى حد ما
terrible (adj)	سيء جدًا	suggest (v- ed)	يقترح
however (adv)	مع ذلك/لكن	consider (v- ed)	يفكر في
although (conj)	بالرغم من	describe (v- d)	يصف
on the other hand (phr)	على الجانب الآخر	organize (v- d)	ينظم
cinema (n)	دار عرض	identify (v- ied)	يحدد
glad (adj)	سعيد	plan to (v- ned)	يخطط أن
vehicle (n)	مركبة	promise (d)	يعطى وعد

Expressions & Prepositions

Expression	المعنى	Expression	المعنى
talk about	يتكلم عن	go on a walking tour	يذهب في جولة تمشية
spend time on	يقضي وقت في	get on	يركب
on the beach	على الشاطئ	find out	يعرف/يكتشف
learn about	يتعلم عن	at the end of	في نهاية الـ
opinion about	رأى عن	ride in a hot air balloon	يركب منطاد الهواء الساخن
decide to + inf	يقرر أن	organize flights	ينظم رحلات طيران
look around	يبحث (عن شيء حوله)	have a staycation	يقضي إجازه داخلية
feel like	يرغب في		
agree to	يتفق ان		
a mix of	مزيج من		
get time off work	يأخذ أجازة		

Definitions

Word	المعنى	Definition
airline	خطوط جوية	a business which organizes flights to many places
staycation	اجازة داخلية	a vacation which you have close to the place where you live
resort	منتجع	a place where people stay and spend time on vacation
guide	مرشد	a person who gives information to visitors
tour	جولة	a trip where you visit places of interest
shuttlebus	حافلة مكوكية	a vehicle which takes tourists from the place they're staying in to the place they're visiting

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
ancient	قديم	old	new	جديد
good	جيد	useful	bad	سيء
spend	يصرف	waste	save	يوفر - يدخر
start	بداية	beginning	end	نهاية
fascinating	مذهل - مشوق	interesting	boring	ممل

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
fly	يطير	flew	flown
go away	يذهب بعيدًا	went away	gone away
learn	يتعلم	learned \ learnt	learned / learnt
build	يبني	built	built
ride	يركب	rode	ridden

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 trip / flight / picnic / voyage

- **trip** رحلة قصيرة

  Ex. Did you enjoy your trip to the water parks?

- **flight** رحلة جوية

  Ex. I booked the flight to Paris over the internet.

- **picnic** نزهة خلوية

  Ex. It's a lovely sunny day, so we're going to have a picnic.

- **voyage** رحلة بحرية

  Ex. The Titanic sank on its first voyage.

2 spend time (on) + something \ spend time + v.ing يقضي وقتا في

- **spend time (on) + something**

  Ex. Many people spend time on vacations.

- **spend time + v.ing**

  Ex. Parents are encouraged to spend time reading to their children

3 in the end في النهاية \ at the end of في نهاية الـ

- **in the end** في النهاية

  Ex. Don't tell me what happens in the end.

- **at the end of** في نهاية الـ

  Ex. What did they do at the end of the week?

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He went home at ___________ the day.
   a. the end b. end of c. end d. the end of
2. We decided to have a ___________ near the Nile. There are nice parks there.
   a. voyage b. flight c. picnic d. trip
3. They organize ___________ to many places by modern planes.
   a. flights b. trips c. voyages d. picnics
4. She spent most of her time ___________ English short stories.
   a. reads b. to reading c. reading d. read

Reading

SB Page (69)

استمع إلى النصوص

Read and listen to the reviews. Match the places to the reviews.

A) Beautiful beach resort ★★★★ We visited Hurghada last year and we stayed in a fantastic resort(1) on the beach. The sea was clear and warm(2), and we went swimming every day. We saw lots of beautiful fish! It was our first time there and everybody loved it, although my little brother didn't like some of the food. We really want to go again! The only problem is that I don't think the airline(3) is going there next year, so we will have to fly with a different one.

١. منتجع
٢. دافئ
٣. شركة الطيران

a 

B) Amazing staycation ★★★★★ I live in Galala City(4), and it's beautiful! Last year we didn't want to go away, so we had a staycation(5)! We went on a walking tour and saw the historical sites(6). We saw the water parks and the boats(7), as well as new cable car(8). It has views(9) over the mountains(10) and the Red Sea!. I feel that I learned lots of things about my city that I didn't know before!

٤. مدينة الجلاله
٥. اجازة داخلية
٦. أماكن سياحية
٧. القوارب
٨. التلفريك
٩. مناظر طبيعية
١٠. الجبال

b 

C) Taxi to the Pyramids ★★★★ Last year we visited the Pyramids in Giza. A guide(11) told us lots of fascinating(12) things about when they were built and why, and what things were inside them. The only problem was the shuttlebus(13) from the hotel. It was busy and we couldn't get on it! We took a taxi instead(14), which was quick and easy, so it wasn't a problem! It was an amazing experience(15).

١١. مرشد
١٢. مبهر
١٣. الحافلة/الباص
١٤. بدلا من ذلك
١٥. تجربة رائعة

c 

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence.
2. What benefits did you get from the staycation?
3. The shuttlebus from the hotel was ....
   a. fast b. crowded c. interesting d. useful

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. We visited Hurghada last year. — ١- قمنا بزيارة الغردقة العام الماضي.
2. We stayed in a fantastic resort on the beach. — ٢- أقمنا في منتجع رائع على الشاطئ.
3. We went swimming every day. — ٣- كنا نذهب للسباحة كل يوم.
4. We saw lots of beautiful fish. — ٤- شاهدنا الكثير من الأسماك الجميلة.

Answers

1. Last year, we visited Hurghada where we saw lots of beautiful things.
2. I learned lots of things about my city that I didn't know before.
3. b. crowded

SB Page (70)

I live in Luxor, which is a very interesting city. It's very old, too - around 5,000 years, making it one of the oldest cities in the world! But the part I live in is quite[1]" modern- there are lots of stores, and cafés, and there's a cinema near our home, too. This year, my parents were both really busy with work. We love to visit different places, but this year we couldn't go away on vacation[2]. So, we decided to have a week's staycation instead[3] - and I'm really glad we did. We really enjoyed going to places in the city which we don't often visit.

We agreed to[4] visit a different place every day for a week - but there are so many places to choose from! My parents wanted to see lots of the ancient[5] places, but my sister Dalia and I felt like[6] going to some modern places too. We visited a mix of[7] old and new. We also went to Luxor Museum, which was fantastic - we all like looking around museums.

At the end of the week, my dad suggested trying a hot air balloon ride[8]! These balloon rides are famous, and many visitors to our city go on them. It was the first time we'd tried it, and it was so much fun[9]! We could see the whole city and the river below us[10], and we could even see some famous ancient sites. It was really amazing! Next year, we plan to stay in Egypt again and explore[11] Cairo. There is so much to see there!

١. إلى حد ما
٢. في عطلة
٣. بدلا من ذلك
٤. اتفقنا أن
٥. القديمة
٦. أردنا
٧. مزيج من
٨. جولة بمنطاد الهواء
٩. ممتع كثيرا
١٠. أسفلنا
١١. نستكشف

SB Page (71)



Farah : Hi Dalia, how was your vacation"[1]?

Dalia : Oh, hi Farah. Well, we didn't go. Our parents couldn't get time off work[2], so we chose to stay in Luxor and had lots of days out instead.

Farah : A staycation[3] - that sounds good!

Dalia : Yes, it was. Our parents suggested visiting some places we don't go to very often, and some new ones.

Farah : Did you go to the museum[4]?

Dalia : Yes, we did! It was fascinating[5].

Farah : I hope to go there soon - it sounds interesting[6].

Dalia : Yes, it is. We're planning to go back soon because we didn't see it all. You can come with us!

١. عطلة
٢. يأخذ أجازة
٣. عطلة داخلية
٤. المتحف
٥. خلاب
٦. شيق

Exercises on Vocabulary

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. A/An ___________ is a person who gives information to visitors.
   a. guide b. scientist c. architect d. manager
2. A vehicle which takes tourists from the place they're staying in to the place they're visiting is called a ___________
   a. staycation b. shuttlebus c. guide d. cable car
3. A/An ___________ is a business which organizes flights to many places.
   a. staycation b. headline c. airline d. cable car
4. A ___________ is a vacation which you have close to the place where you live.
   a. flight b. staycation c. walk d. hiking
5. A ___________ is a trip where you visit places of interest.
   a. site b. shuttlebus c. hot air balloon d. tour
6. A ___________ is a place where people stay and spend time on vacation.
   a. resort b. review c. tower d. shopping mall

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. We visited Hurghada last year, the sea was ___________.
   a. clear b. amazed c. interested d. useless
8. We ___________ on a walking tour yesterday.
   a. traveled b. arrived c. went d. run
9. Let's go to the water ___________ and have some fun.
   a. clock b. fork c. mark d. park
10. Let's take a ___________ to the top of the mountain.
    a. fly b. cable car c. kite d. train
11. The ___________ will take us to the airport.
    a. ride b. shuttlebus c. cable car d. hot balloon
12. The ___________ from the top of the mountain is amazing.
    a. view b. voyage c. transport d. slide
13. The tourists visited some ___________ sites in Giza.
    a. history b. historical b. historian d. hero

14. We spent a week at a beach .... in Hurghada.

a. sea b. water park c. resort d. staycation

15. My father .... to buy me a car if I get the full marks.

a. organized b. promised c. spent d. talked

16. The airplane .... to Paris was long but fun.

a. voyage b. picnic c. flight d. ride

17. I have a / an .... in learning new languages.

a. interested b. fascinated c. stayed d. interest

18. Let's .... a picnic in the park.

a. buy b. make c. organize d. suggested

Expressions and Prepositions

19. I'm tired. I need to get time .... work.

a. of b. from c. off d. on

20. We're going on a/an .... tour to the beach next week.

a. walking b. vacation c. visited d. flight

21. Let's get .... the train and go to the city center.

a. over b. on c. of d. next

22. We .... a relaxing staycation last weekend.

a. had b. took c. played d. did

2 Complete the following dialog:

Mahmoud and Badr are talking about a visit to the Pyramids last year.

Mahmoud: Hi Badr! What places did you visit?

Badr : I visited the ❶ ....

Mahmoud: When did you visit them?

Badr : ❷ .... year, when I was in Giza.

Mahmoud: Was there a ❸ .... with you?

Badr : Yes, there was.

Mahmoud: Did he tell you any information about the Pyramids?

Badr : Yes, he told us ❹ .... things.

Language قواعد لغوية

Verbs followed by gerund or to + inf.

- When we use one verb after another verb, the second verb is usually in the gerund form (-ing) or the (to + infinitive).

- عندما نستخدم فعل بعد فعل آخر، فإن الفعل الثاني عادة يكون مضافا له (V+ing. OR to+ inf)

• Verb + gerund (infinitive + ing)

- Some verbs are followed by the gerund form (V+ing.)

- بعض الافعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافًا له (ing) مثل الأفعال التالية:

enjoy	يستمتع	consider	يفكر في
suggest	يقترح	avoid	يتجنب
practice	يمارس	keep / save	يحفظ /يحافظ على
don't mind	لا يمانع	admit	يعترف
finish	ينهي	prevent	يمنع
recommend	يوصي	dislike	لايحب
go	يذهب	spend	يقضي وقت/يصرف مال

Ex. We really enjoyed going to places in the city which we don't often visit.
Ex. My dad suggested trying a hi-air balloon ride.

• Verb + to + infinitive

- Other verbs are followed by the (to + infinitive) form

- أفعال أخرى يأتي بعدها (to + inf) مثل الأفعال التالية.

want	يريد	decide	يقرر
choose	يختار	plan	يخطط
hope	يأمل /يتمنى	learn	يتعلم
agree	يوافق	offer	يعرض
expect	يتوقع	intend	ينوي
refuse	يرفض	arrange	يرتب
promise	يوعد	need	يحتاج
ask	يسأل - يطلب	aim	يهدف

Ex. We decided to have a staycation instead.
Ex. Next year, we plan to stay in Egypt again.

• Verb + gerund (infinitive + ing) or (to + infinitive)

- أفعال أخرى يأتي بعدها (to + inf أو ing) مثل الأفعال التالية (بدون تغيير في المعنى)

love	يحب	prefer	يفضل
like	يحب	start	يبدأ
hate	يكره		

Ex. We love to visit different places / We love visiting different places.

Ex. We all like to look around museums / We all like looking around museums.

- أفعال أخرى يأتي بعدها (to + inf أو ing) مثل الافعال التالية (مع تغيير في المعنى)

forget	ينسى	regret	يندم
stop	يتوقف	remember	يتذكر
quit	يتوقف عن	go on	يستمر
try	يحاول		

Ex. They forgot to meet them there. — ينسى أن يفعل شيء

Ex. They forgot meeting them there. — فعل شيء ثم نسي أنه قد فعله

Ex. She stopped to buy healthy foods. — يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء

Ex. She stopped buying unhealthy foods. — يتوقف عن فعل شيء

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. We really enjoyed .... to places in the city which we don't often visit.
   a. to go b. go c. going d. goes
2. We all like .... around museums.
   a. looking b. look c. to looking d. looks
3. Our parents couldn't get time off work, so we chose .... in Luxor and had lots of days out instead
   a. to stay b. staying c. stays d. to staying
4. Our parents suggested .... some places we don't go to very often, and some new ones.
   a. visiting b. visits c. visited d. to visit

5. I hope ___________ there soon it sounds interesting.
   a. goes b. going c. to going d. to go

6. Were planning ___________ back soon because we didn't see it all.
   a. going b. goes c. to go d. gone

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. I enjoyed ___________ the movie very much.
   a. watch b. watching c. watches d. to watch

8. They love ___________ video games.
   a. play b. plays c. to playing d. to play

9. I decided ___________ harder.
   a. study b. studying c. to study d. studies

10. I enjoy ___________ books in my free time.
    a. reading b. to read c. reads d. to reading

11. What do you like ___________ in your free time?
    a. to do b. do c. to doing d. did

12. She plans ___________ to Europe.
    a. traveling b. travel c. to travel d. travels

13. She promised ___________ on time.
    a. to be b. being c. to being d. be

14. We hope ___________ the game.
    a. to win b. to winning c. winning d. win

15. They suggested ___________ a vacation.
    a. to taking b. takes c. taking d. take

16. They agreed to ___________ us.
    a. help b. helping c. helps d. helped

17. We planned ___________ a holiday.
    a. to take b. taking c. to taking d. take

18. He prefers ___________ from home.
    a. working b. to working c. work d. work to

19. He avoids ___________ about his past.
    a. talking b. to talking c. to talk d. talks

20. Hala promised to ___________ harder this term.
    a. studying b. studies c. studied d. study

21. They intend ___________ a new house.
    a. to buy b. bought c. buys d. to buying

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. My dad suggested .... (try) a hi-air balloon ride.
2. We decided .... (have) a staycation instead.
3. Next year, we plan .... (stay) in Egypt again.
4. We love .... (visit) different places.

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. What do you hate .... (do)?
6. They promised to .... (helping) us move.
7. She suggested .... (to try) a new restaurant.
8. She decided .... (staying) at home.
9. To stay healthy, I try to avoid .... (eats) unhealthy food.
10. I forgot .... (close) the door.
11. He keeps .... (ask) me the same question.
12. They arranged .... (volunteer) at the charity.
13. I'm considering .... (buy) a new car.
14. We took a break. We stopped........... (drink) some water.

General Exercises on Lessons 1& 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We stayed at a beautiful .... when we went on a trip.
   a. resort b. charity c. airline d. company
2. My father works for the Egyptian .... He flies the plane once a month.
   a. School b. Post office c. Hospital d. Airline
3. We spent the day .... the beach, sunbathing and swimming.
   a. in b. over c. on d. under
4. Let's go to the .... and buy some new clothes.
   a. shopping mall b. beach c. resort d. cinema

5. The book ___________ the life of a famous person.

a. writes b. makes c. describes d. volunteers

6. We will go on ___________ soon. We will visit Aswan.

a. vacation b. car cable c. balloon d. flight

7. The story is ___________, I can't stop reading it.

a. interest b. boring c. terrible d. fascinating

8. Tourists visit Egypt to see the historical ___________.

a. airlines b. hospitals c. stadiums d. sites.

9. The Pyramids of Giza are one of the places of ___________ all over the world.

a. amazing b. fantastic c. interest d. staycation

10. My dad suggested ___________ a hi-air balloon ride.

a. try b. to try c. trying d. to trying

11. He finished ___________ the report.

a. writing b. write c. writes d. to write

12. Let's start ___________ a new language.

a. learning b. to learning c. learns d. learn to

13. She hopes ___________ the championship.

a. to winning b. won c. wins d. to win

14. They decided ___________ in the countryside.

a. to live b. lives c. living d. lived

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following box:

warm - airline - staycation - resort - problem

We visited Hurghada last year. We stayed in a fantastic (1) ___________ on the beach. The sea was clear and (2) ___________, and we went swimming every day. We saw lots of beautiful fish! We really want to go again! The only (3) ___________ is that I don't think the (4) _______________ is going there next year, so we will have to fly with a different one.

3 Complete the following dialog :

Sama and Rasha are talking about the last weekend.

Sama : Hello, Rasha. Where did you spend your last weekend?

Rasha : I ❶ ---------------------------------- in Hurghada.

Sama : Where did you stay?

Rasha : In a fantastic ❷ ---------------------- on the beach.

Sama : How was the sea there?

Rasha : It was clear and ❸ ----------------------.

Sama : ❹ ----------------------- you enjoy your weekend?

Rasha : Yes, I enjoyed there.

4 Complete the sentences with correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. They promised ------------ (go) with us to Alexandria.
2. He offered ------------ (help) me with the homework.
3. We plan to --------------- (buying) a new apartment.
4. You don't need ----------- (worry) about that exam.
5. We should avoid ---------- (pollute) the environment.

5 Write a paragraph of about 80 words on:

(مجاب عنه فى آخر الوحدة)

"Amazing staycation"

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

tourism (n)	السياحة	professional (adj)	متخصص/محترف
natural resources (n)	مصادر طبيعية	solar energy (n)	طاقة شمسية
single-use (adj)	يستخدم مرة واحدة	electricity (n)	كهرباء
waste (n)	نفايات/مخلفات	sustainable (adj)	مستدامة
community (n)	مجتمع	awareness (n)	فهم/وعي/معرفة
homestay (n)	الإقامة مع عائلة	tourist industry (n)	صناعة السياحة

Vocabulary

المفردات الإضافية

planet (n)	كوكب	eco-tourism (n)	سياحة بيئية
group (n)	مجموعة	local people (n)	سكان محليون
way (n)	طريقة	history (n)	تاريخ
visitor (n)	زائر	wind (n)	رياح
materials (n)	مواد خام	busy (adj)	مزدحم
plastic (n)	بلاستك	competition (n)	منافسة/مسابقة
type (n)	نوع	ongoing (adj)	مستمر/متواصل
bin (n)	سلة قمامة	rent (v.ed.)	يؤجر
fresh (adj)	طازج	present (v.ed.)	يقدم
culture (n)	ثقافة	choice (n)	اختيار
payment (n)	دفع (مال)	prepare (v.d.)	يجهز/يعد
owner (n)	مالك	solve (v.d.)	يحل
flexible (adj)	مرن	attempt (v.ed.)	يحاول
break (n)	راحة/فسحة	improve (v.d.)	ينمي/يطور
activity (n)	نشاط	damage (v.d.)	يتلف/يدمر
towel (n)	فوطة/منشفة	cause (v.d.)	يسبب
swimming pool (n)	حمام سباحة		

Definitions

natural resources	مصادر طبيعية	things from nature that people use
single-use	يستخدم مرة واحدة	something which people use once and then throw away
waste	نفايات/مخلفات	all the things that people throw away
community	مجتمع	a group of people who live in the same place and share a way of life
homestay	الإقامة مع عائلة	a trip where visitors stay in the home of another family,usually in exchange for payment

Expressions & Prepositions

protecting the planet	حماية الكوكب	good for	مفيد لـ
plan vacations	يخطط رحلات	bad for	ضار لـ
do things	يفعل أشياء	a plan for	خطة لـ
It's important to + inf	من المهم أن	problems with	مشاكل لـ
cause problems	يسبب مشكلات	make notes about	يدوّن ملاحظات عن
make sure	يتأكد	at the same time	في نفس الوقت
make it hard	يجعله صعبًا	in exchange for	في مقابل
have a memory	لديه ذاكرة	reasons for	أسباب لـ
do a homestay	يقوم بإقامة منزلية	on a homestay	في إقامة منزلية مع عائلة
solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	turn off the lights	يطفئ الأنوار
have a rest	يأخذ فترة راحة	do hobbies	يمارس هوايات
as well as	بالاضافة الى		

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite المضاد	
bad	سيء	terrible	good	جيد
worried	قلق	anxious - nervous	calm	هادئ
ongoing	متواصل	continuous	finished	منتهي
real	حقيقي	true	false	زائف

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
throw away	يرمي بعيدًا	threw away	thrown away
teach	يتعلم	taught	taught
think	يفكر/يعتقد	thought	thought
grow	ينمو/يزرع	grew	grown
bring	يحضر/يجلب	brought	brought

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 remember / remind

- **remember** تذكّر (من تلقاء نفسه)

Ex. I remembered my first day at school.

- **remind** يذكر (شخص يذكر شخص)

Ex. My mother reminded me to buy some milk.

2 look after / look for / look at / look + (صفة)

- **look after** يعتني بـ

Ex. A vet looks after sick animals.

- **look for** يبحث عن

Ex. We're looking for a sunny day for the picnic.

- **look at** ينظر إلى

Ex. I need to look at my schedule.

- **look + (صفة)** يبدو

Ex. The resort looks nice.

3 make + obj + adj

Ex. You could make this resort better for the planet .

Check on Language Notes ✓

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I am looking ___________ my book. I can't find it.
   a. around b. for c. after d. at
2. That song ___________ me of my childhood.
   a. aims b. reminds c. remembers d. remains
3. She looks ___________ her elderly parents.
   a. around b. on c. after d. up
4. She ___________ the time we went to Paris.
   a. reminds b. aims c. remains d. remembers
5. Look ___________ the beautiful sunset. It is interesting.
   a. around b. for c. after d. at

Reading

SB Page (72)

Read and listen to the article

استمع إلى النصوص

SB Page (72)

Many people enjoy traveling to different cities and countries –there's a lot to see and do in our amazing world! But when people travel, it can cause problems. Tourists often want to visit the same place at the same time. This can make some famous places too busy, then stores, restaurants, and transportation(1) can't work well. There can also be problems with waste(2), which is bad for the environment(3). Of course people want to travel – but how can we do this as well as protecting the planet(4)?

Many professionals(5) in the tourist industry think about eco-tourism(6) when they plan vacations. They do things like visiting places where tourism is good for the community, for example, where local people teach visitors about their food or history. It's important to think about how visitors use natural resources(7), too.



Many resorts save water, or use wind or solar energy for electricity. And of course, everyone has to choose the right materials – single-use plastics are bad for the environment, so it's better to use things which can be used again and again.

When tourism is sustainable, people can continue to visit all the beautiful and interesting places in our world.

١. نقل
٢. نفايات
٣. مشكلات
٤. حماية الكوكب
٥. متخصصين
٦. سياحة بيئية
٧. مصادر طبيعية

Awareness of sustainable tourism

Tourism can do many good things for communities, and it's important for people to be able to travel and see the world. However, it's also important to think about the environment. Sustainable tourism does things in a way that doesn't damage the planet and improves the lives of local people. This type of tourism is good for people and good for the planet.

Why do a homestay?

In recent years, more people are choosing not to stay in big hotels, but to try doing a homestay instead. There are many reasons for this.





- You often begin learning more about the culture of a place as soon as you arrive in(1) a person's home. Very often, the owner of the homestays gives you information about the things you can do and see nearby. They might also help with transportation, or suggest places where you can stop to eat lunch when you are out. All of this is good for the local community(2), because it makes people try different things and visit new places in the area.
- In some cases, the owner of the home is still there, and you can use one or two rooms in the house. In other cases, you rent the whole house. In both cases(3), you see what a real home is like in the place you're visiting. This is often more interesting than a hotel, where the rooms look the same. Also, if you have a problem, the owner will try to help you solve it.
- You can often stay for a night, a week, or longer. Homestays can be more flexible(4) than big resorts, which might not allow shorter breaks at busy times of year.
- Usually, you don't have to bring anything with you; the homestay will have somewhere to cook, and everything you expect to find in a home. If you need to remember to bring things like towels, the owner tells you first. Homestays are beginning to become a popular choice for travelers(5), and it's easy to see why. It's good to read online reviews to find good places to stay. If someone remembers having a great homestay, they often want to share their experiences with others! It's unlikely that people will stop staying in hotels completely, but there's a lot more choice for travelers today.

١. يصل إلى
٢. مجتمع محلي
٣. كلتا الحالتين
٤. مرن
٥. رحالة

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. Doing a ___________ can help you learn about the culture of the place you visit.
   a. homestay b. repair c. fight d. flight
2. It helps the local ___________ when visitors try new things.
   a. places b. community c. tourist d. transportation
3. Homestays are often more ___________ than hotels, because they are real homes.
   a. boring b. noisy c. nearby d. interesting
4. Some big ___________ don't let people stay for short breaks when they're busy.
   a. cases b. towels c. resorts d. factories
5. The ___________ usually has everything you usually have in a home.
   a. desert b. homestay c. class d. park
6. A good way to find a homestay is to read online ___________ .
   a. reviews b. blogs c. lessons d. flights

Bit by Bit Exercises

7. The football team was trained by a ___________ trainer. They won the cup.
   a. careless b. lazy c. professional d. stupid
8. We can use ___________ energy to power our homes.
   a. swimmer b. social c. solar d. historical
9. Public ___________ of climate change is growing.
   a. service b. awareness c. transportation d. roads
10. ___________ energy sources, like solar energy are becoming more popular.
    a. Ongoing b. Social c. Sustainable d. Historical
11. Some factories created a lot of ___________ It's bad for the environment.
    a. waste b. hotels c. money d. juice
12. We must protect our natural ___________ for future generations أجيال المستقبل.
    a. resources b. staycation c. wind d. seas
13. ___________ plastics are bad for the environment.
    a. Traditional b. Old c. Single-use d. Factories
14. ___________ organizes holidays at natural areas as rainforests.
    a. Waste b. Eco-tourism c. Resources d. Single-use

15. .... the planet is important for us.
   a. Growing   b. Damaging   c. Protecting   d. Painting
16. I will .... to answer all your questions.
   a. bring   b. attempt   c. become   d. climb
17. We need .... solutions to solve these problems.
   a. terrible   b. flexible   c. amazed   d. interest
18. If you don't have a car, you can .... one.
   a. paint   b. make   c. take   d. rent
19. Sustainable tourism helps .... the lives of local people
   a. improve   b. solve   c. make   d. create
20. I used a / an .... to dry my hands after washing them.
   a. tower   b. faucet   c. towel   d. soap

Expressions & Prepositions Exercises

21. More people are doing .... instead of staying in hotels.
   a. a homestay   b. vacations   c. apartments   d. exercises
22. Some factories can .... problems for the environment.
   a. remember   b. introduce   c. remind   d. cause
23. Wool was sent to Egypt in .... for linen or papyrus.
   a. exchange   b. expect   c. great   d. present
24. .... sure that you do your homework every day.
   a. Take   b. Make   c. Bring   d. Do

Language قواعد لغوية

Verbs followed by gerund or to infinitive with different meanings:

• الأفعال التالية يتبعها (gerund \ to + inf) مع اختلاف المعنى بين الصيغتين

forget	ينسى	regret	يندم
stop	يتوقف	remember	يتذكر
quit	يتوقف عن	go on	يستمر
try	يحاول	begin	يبدأ

forget ينسى	- **They forgot to meet them there.** ينسى أن يفعل شيء - **They forgot meeting them there.** فعل شيء ثم نسي أنه قد فعله
stop يتوقف	- **She stopped to buy healthy foods.** يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء - **She stopped buying unhealthy foods.** يتوقف عن فعل شيء
remember يتذكر	- **He remembered to close the door.** يتذكر أن يقوم بفعل بشيء ما (شيء سوف يحدث) - **He remembered closing the door.** يتذكر أنه فعل شيء ما (شيء حدث في الماضي)
try يحاول	- **More people try doing a homestay.** يحاول فعل شيء ما (على سبيل التجربة) - **The owner will try to help you solve it.** يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا جديدًا (يبذل مجهودًا في ذلك)
begin يبدأ	- **You can often begin learning more about the culture.** يبدأ فى نشاط مستمر بالفعل - **Homestays are beginning to become a popular choice for travelers.** بداية لشيء جديد لم يكن يفعله
regret يندم	- **I regret staying up so late last night. Now I'm tired.** نادم على فعل شئ - **We regret to inform you that your job application has not been successful.** اعتذار رسمى عن شئ

Exercises on Language

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. If you begin .... at 1.00, the meal will be ready at 4.00.
   a. to cooking b. cook c. cooking d. to cook
2. People began .... worried when the lights went out.
   a. to feel b. to feeling c. feeling d. feel
3. My friends and I stopped .... a poster about a sports competition.
   a. to read b. to reading c. read d. reading

Bit by Bit Exercises

4. I remember .... Paris when I was very young.
   a. visit b. visiting c. to visit d. to visiting
5. Please remember .... the door on your way out.
   a. to lock b. to locking c. locking d. lock
6. I will never forget .... taken to see the circus.
   a. to be b. to being c. being d. be
7. Did you remember .... Ahmed last night?
   a. phones b. phone c. to phone d. phoning
8. Don't forget .... how many guests are coming on Saturday.
   a. to find out b. finding out c. find out d. to finding
9. I forgot .... to the chemist's on my way home. I had to go back to bring the medicine.
   a. to go b. going c. to going d. to gone
10. We all tried .... him, but he just wouldn't listen to any of us.
    a. stopping b. stop c. to stop d. to stopping
11. If you want to stop coughing, why don't you try .... some water?
    a. drink b. to drink c. drinking d. to drinking

12. I regret .... you that there's been an accident.

    a. tell b. telling c. to telling d. to tell

13. He regretted .... in the same job for so long.

    a. to stay b. to staying c. staying d. stay

14. She got annoyed because her husband stopped .... in every shop window.

    a. looking b. to looking c. to looking d. to look

15. Just stop .... and listen for a moment.

    a. to talk b. talking c. to talk d. to talking

16. She got a degree in Physics and then went on .... a course in maths.

    a. take b. taking c. to take d. to taking

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

SB Exercises

1. Do you remember .... (take) lots of photos last time we went out?
2. Can you try .... (get) home early tonight, because Grandma is coming over.
3. I stopped .... (watch) that TV show last year – I don't think it's funny anymore.
4. Did you remember .... (turn off) the lights?
5. We have to try .... (do) some new hobbies, it might be fun!

Bit by Bit Exercises

6. I tried .... (go) climbing in the mountains last year on vacation, but I didn't like it!
7. We regret .... (tell) you that the train will be late for half an hour.
8. I regretted .... (tells) Ali my secret. He told everyone.
9. If you have a problem with the signal, try .... (turn) off and on again.

Speaking

Asking and answering about ways to make tourism better for the planet:

السؤال والإجابة عن طرق لجعل السياحة أفضل للكوكب:

Question	Answer
- How can we reduce pollution in historical sites? - كيف يمكننا الحد من التلوث في المواقع التاريخية؟	- We can help visitors to walk or cycle, not use cars. - يمكننا أن نساعد الزائرين أن يمشوا أو يركبوا الدراجات بدلاً من استخدام السيارات.
- How can we reduce importing food? - كيف يمكننا تقليل استيراد المواد الغذائية؟	- We can grow and cook local food. - يمكننا أن نزرع ونطهو الطعام المحلي.
- How can we build environmentally friendly hotels? -كيف يمكننا بناء فنادق صديقة للبيئة؟	- Build the hotel using local materials. - قم ببناء الفندق مستخدمًا مواد خام محلية.
- How can we overcome the hot weather? - كيف يمكننا التغلب على الطقس الحار؟	- Have lots of large swimming pools so people don't get too hot. - قم ببناء حمامات سباحة واسعة حتى لا يشعر الناس بالحرارة الشديدة.
- How can we reduce rubbish in our streets? - كيف يمكننا تقليل القمامة في شوارعنا؟	- We need bins where people can see them, so they can use them. - نحتاج سلات قمامة في مكان يستطيع الناس أن يروهم ليمكنهم استخدامهم.

General Exercises on Lessons 3& 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ___________ tourism is better for the environment.
   a. Sustainable　b. Business　c. Historical　d. Local
2. Tourism professionals can ___________ vacations.
   a. play　b. turn off　c. reduce　d. plan
3. *We should have too many places to sit ___________ the beach.*
   a. in　b. on　c. under　d. over
4. We stayed at a beautiful ___________ in Hurghada.
   a. cave　b. resort　c. garden　d. park

5. Please, put .... bins where people can see them.

a. waste b. water c. parks d. cable car

6. A / An .... is a trip where visitors stay in the home of another family.

a. campsite b. housework c. homestay d. travel

7. Homestays can be more .... and great than big resorts.

a. terrible b. flexible c. wet d. awful

8. The coffee shop is .... on Saturday. There are too many people.

a. free b. deserted c. empty d. busy

9. She does .... like reading and painting.

a. plans b. vacations c. hobbies d. paints

10. I regret .... you that the meeting is canceled.

a. to tell b. tell c. telling d. to telling

11. I remember .... you at the party last year.

a. to meet b. to meeting c. meeting d. meet

12. I stopped .... last month. I feel better now.

a. smoking b. to smoke c. smoke d. to smoking

13. I tried .... her, but she didn't answer.

a. calling b. to calling c. to call d. call

14. Egyptian Airways regret .... the cancellation of the flight to Madrid.

a. to announce b. announce c. announcing d. to announcing

2 Read and complete the text with words from the following box:

visitors - busy - professionals - problems - waste

Many people enjoy traveling to different cities and countries. But when people travel, it can cause (1) .... .Tourists want to visit the same place at the same time. This can make some famous places too (2) .... , then stores, restaurants, and transportation can't work well. There can also be problems with (3) .... , which is bad for the environment. Many (4) .... in the tourist industry think about eco-tourism when they plan vacations.

3 Complete the following dialog:

Eman and Dina are talking about sustainable tourism

Eman : Many people enjoy traveling to different cities and countries all over the world.

Dina : That's interesting, but sometimes this is bad for the (1) ....

Eman : Sure. When people travel, it can (2) .... problems.

Dina : How can we protect the planet?

Eman : Many (3) .... in the tourist industry think about eco-tourism when they plan vacations.

Dina : What else?

Eman : It's better to use things which can be (4) .... again and again.

Dina : You are right.

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I stopped .... (buy) a newspaper on my way to work.
2. I remember .... (promise) to help you.
3. I tried .... (explain) the problem, but she didn't understand.
4. While running, she stopped .... (drink).

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How can tourism be better for the planet"

....

....

....

....

....

استمع إلى المفردات

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

AI = Artificial Intelligence (n.)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	period (n.)	نُقطة
AI-generated (adj.)	مصمَّم بواسطة الذكاء الاصطناعي	question mark (n.)	علامة استفهام
landscapes (n.)	مناظر طبيعية	exclamation point (n.)	علامة تعجُب
guidebook (n.)	دليل سياحي	comma (n.)	فاصلة
responsible (adj.)	مسؤول/جدير بالثقة	colon (n.)	نقطتان فوق بعضهما

Vocabulary

المفردات الاضافية

website (n.)	موقع الكتروني	airplane (n.)	طائرة
advertisement (n.)	اعلان	sustainable (adj.)	غير ضار بالبيئة
aquarium (n.)	حوض السمك	shuttlebus (n.)	حافلة مكوكية
app (n.)	تطبيق	airport (n.)	مطار
break (n.)	فسحة/استراحة	tired (adj.)	متعب
stall (n.)	كشك	tourist (n.)	سائح
surprise (n.)	مفاجأة	beauty spot (n.)	موقع طبيعي جميل
excitement (n.)	اثارة	include (v. d)	يشمل
trash can (n.)	سلة قمامة	separate (v. d)	يفصل بين
energy (n.)	طاقة	explore (v. d)	يستكشف
untouched (adj.)	بلا مساس/غير متأثر	shop (v. ped)	يتسوق
effect (n.)	تأثير	harm (v. ed)	يضر
accurate (adj.)	دقيق/منضبط	hurry (v. ied)	يسرع
incredible (adj.)	رائع	miss (v. ed)	يفقد
variety (n.)	تنوع/تشكيلة	dump (v. ed)	يتخلص من
Cape Town	مدينة كيب تاون	print (v. ed)	يطبع

Expressions & Prepositions

spend time/money	يقضي وقت/يصرف مال	on vacation	في أجازة أو عطلة
take hours	يستغرق ساعات	famous for	مشهور بـ
do the hard work	يقوم بالعمل الشاق	learn about	يتعلم عن
look worried	يبدو قلقا	smiled at	يبتسم لـ
walk past	يمشي مارا بـ	on the phone	على الهاتف
put things back	يعيد الاشياء	care about	يهتم بـ
waste water	يهدر الماء	turn off lights	يطفيء الانوار
type (sth) into	يطبع (يكتب) شيئا في	on the trip	فى الرحلة
a city break	استراحة فى المدينة	in case	تحسبا لـ

Synonyms & Antonyms

الكلمات وعكسها

Word	الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym / Opposite	المضاد
hard	صعب/شاق	difficult	easy	سهل
famous	مشهور	well-known	unknown	غير معروف
quiet	هادىء	calm	noisy	صاخب
include	يشمل/يتمضن	involve	exclude	يستبعد/يستثنى

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present		Past simple	Past Participle
spend	يقضي	spent	spent
take	يأخذ/يستغرق/يستقل	took	taken
find	يجد	found	found
show	يوضح/يبين	showed	shown
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn
leave	يترك/يغادر	left	left

Language Notes ملاحظات لغوية

1 spend time + v.ing

Ex. They spend time reading funny stories.

2 take + time + to + inf

Ex. It can take hours to plan what to do and how to travel.

3 That's the best way to + inf

Ex. That's the best way to see everything!

4 arrived in \ arrived at \ get to \ reach

- **arrive in** يصل الى مكان كبير (مدينة/محافظة/دولة/قارة)

Ex. She arrived in Cairo last week.

- **arrive at** يصل الى مكان صغير (مبنى مثلا)

Ex. She arrived at the airport an hour ago.

- **get to** يصل الى (تأتي مع جميع الأماكن/مع وجود حرف الجر)

Ex. She got to the airport an hour ago. \ - She got to Cairo last week.

- **reach** يصل الى (تأتي مع جميع الأماكن/بدون حرف جر)

Ex. She reached the airport an hour ago.

Ex. She reached Cairo last week.

5 do/did

- يمكن استخدام do/did قبل الفعل الاساسي للجملة للتاكيد

Ex. I don't think I do want to carry these now!

Check on Language Notes ✓

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My little sister spends time -------- at websites.
   a. looking b. look c. to look d. to looking
2. When we arrived -------- Paris, it was too cold.
   a. at b. for c. to d. in
3. They -------- to the cinema two hours ago.
   a. got b. arrived c. packed d. reached
4. It took us three hours -------- there.
   a. get b. getting c. to getting d. to get
5. We -------- the top of the mountain at midday.
   a. arrived b. reached c. got d. took
6. That is the best way -------- this problem.
   a. solve b. solving c. to solve d. to solving

Reading

SB Page (60)

استمع إلى النصوص

Read the description of an AI-generated city tour and answer the questions.

AI City Breaks

Are you planning to visit a new city? Don't spend time reading travel guides and looking at websites. It can take hours to plan what to do and how to travel. Just type the place you're visiting into our app, and let Artificial Intelligence do the hard work!

Read and listen to the story

Last year, my family and I decided to visit Cape Town in South Africa. It's famous for amazing landscape, beautiful buildings, and of course the incredible Table Mountain. My mom bought some guidebooks. "Why have you got those?" asked Dad. "I want to learn about Cape Town," said Mom. "That's the best way to see everything!" "They're big and heavy[1]," said Dad. "We can't carry[2] them everywhere. We can use our phones to find maps[3] and information online." "It still takes time to find information online," said Mom. "And the maps are very small!" "You're right," said Dad. My brother Mazen smiled at me. "I have an idea!" he said.

١. ثقيل
٢. يحمل
٣. خرائط
٤. حافلة مكوكية
٥. في حالة/تحسبا لـ

When we arrived in Cape Town, we took a shuttlebus[4] from the airport to our hotel. It was lovely, with beautiful rooms, but we were all tired after the trip. Mom and Dad put the books on the table. Mom looked at them and laughed. "I don't think I do want to carry these now! Can we use your phone?" Dad looked worried. "I used it too much on the trip," he said. "It isn't working." "Oh no!" said Mom. "There's so much to see- I don't want to miss anything!" Mazen laughed. "I can help!" he said.

He showed us his phone, and some paper. "I asked AI to plan a city break for us in Cape Town. Here it is! There's a list of places we should see on my phone. I printed it too, in case[5] our phones didn't work!" "That's amazing!" said Dad. "Where are we going first?" "It says we start at a museum which is near the hotel," Mazen said.

We had to hurry round the museum because Mazen wanted to go to a large street market next. "We can't miss that," he said. The market was great, but I was getting hungry. We walked past a stall selling hot food. "Can I get something to eat?" I asked. "We haven't got time- sorry!" said Mazen. "We're eating in one hour in Greenmarket Square. We're going to a big aquarium[6] first." We hurried around the city, going past lots of interesting stores and beautiful streets, before we got to the aquarium. "The aquarium is amazing, Mazen," said Mom. "But I think we're a long way from our hotel now." Mazen looked at his map. "Oh yes," he said. "I don't think I told AI where to finish the tour." "Well- we've seen some amazing things. Thank you, Mazen- and thank you to your AI app! But maybe tomorrow we'll have a slower day!" said Mom.

٦. حوض السمك

SB Page (78)

It's great to visit different places around the world, but it's also important to be a responsible tourist. There are lots of things that you can do to help make your vacation more sustainable. This is good for the planet, so it's good for you!

1. This is simple: don't drop trash[1]- ever! If you can't find a trash can, put things back in your bag until you find one. Remember to leave your favorite, untouched, beauty spot the way you found it.
2. Think about how you travel. Airplanes and cars use a lot of energy- can you walk, take a train, or cycle[2]? You often see more that way too.
3. Think about visiting a quieter place. The most famous tourist sites can get too busy, but there are lots of things to see in other places. Don't be afraid to try visiting somewhere new.
4. Save energy when you're on vacation: turn off lights and don't waste water, just like you would at home.
5. Spend money in the local area. Tourism can be good for communities[3] when people shop and eat locally, and explore the area they are staying in.

١. يرمي القمامة
٢. يركب الدراجة
٣. مجتمعات

Remember! **We live on a beautiful planet, and we want to keep it this way!**

Reading Skill مهارة القراءة (الاجابة بالاسفل)

1. What should you do if you can't find a trash can while traveling? ______________________
2. What is one suggestion for more sustainable travel? ______________________
3. What can be inferred from the text? ______________________

Writing Skill مهارة الكتابة (جمل تساعد فى موضوع الكتابة)

1. It's also important to be a responsible tourist. من المهم أن تكون سائحا مسؤولا.
2. There are lots of things that you can do to help make your vacation more sustainable.
هناك الكثير من الأشياء التي يمكنك القيام بها للمساعدة في جعل إجازتك أكثر حرصا على البيئة
3. Save energy when you're on vacation: turn off lights and don't waste water, just like you would at home.
وفر الطاقة أثناء إجازتك: أطفئ الأضواء ولا تهدر المياه، تمامًا كما تفعل في المنزل.

Answers:
1. I should put my trash back in my bag until I find a trash can.
2. One suggestion is to consider walking, taking a train, or cycling instead of using airplanes or cars, as they use a lot of energy.
3. We can infer that being a responsible tourist helps make your vacation more sustainable and is beneficial for the planet.

Using spelling and punctuation accurately

لكي تكتب جملة انجليزية صحيحة، لابد من استخدام علامات الترقيم في الكتابة. وفيما يلي شرح لأهم علامات الترقيم ومواضع استخدامها:

a. question mark (?) علامة الاستفهام

وتستخدم في نهاية السؤال، سواء كان السؤال يبدأ بفعل مساعد أو بكلمة من كلمات الاستفهام:

- Can you help me with my homework?
- Where do you come from?

b. point (.) النقطة

وتستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية

- I have only one sister .
- I am a student .

c. exclamation point (!) علامة التعجب

وتستخدم في نهاية الجملة الخبرية لإبراز أهميتها أو لجعلها أكثر تشويقا:

- I got a top mark in the exam !
- Get out of the classroom !

d. coma (,) الفاصلة

وتستخدم لفصل كلمتين أو أكثر في قائمة أو للفصل بين أكثر من صفة تصف إسم بعدها

- We bought apples, peaches, and bananas today.
- It was a long, noisy, and exhausting flight.

e. colon (:) النقطان المتعامدتان - فوق بعضهما

وتستخدم قبل كلمة أو عدة كلمات تشرح أو تفسر معلومة تسبقها:

- We had four lessons at school today: Arabic, English, Maths, and science.
- You have only two options: keep quiet, or leave the class.

Exercises on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

SB Exercises

1. If you can't find a .... can, put things back in your bag until you find one.
   a. bottle b. flash c. trash d. hotel
2. Airplanes and cars use a lot of ....
   a. energy b. water c. food d. light
3. When you're on vacation, turn off lights and don't .... water.
   a. spend b. drink c. buy d. waste
4. Let's take the .... to the airport.
   a. stores b. homestay c. traveler d.shuttlebus

Bit by Bit Exercises

5. I saw many colorful fish at the ....
   a. planetarium b. aquarium c. voyage d. vacation
6. The market was full of colorful .... selling fruits and vegetables.
   a. stalls b. roads c. libraries d. stories
7. Artificial .... is changing the world around us.
   a. importance b. historian c. chance d. intelligence
8. I bought a / an .... to help me travel around the city.
   a. guidebook b. cookbook c. magazine d. newspaper
9. The beach is a popular beauty .... for tourists.
   a. sport b. spring c. spot d. application
10. The view from the mountain top was .... I really liked it.
    a. terrible b. dirty c. accurate d. incredible
11. I got a \ an .... birthday party from my friends.
    a. surprise b. guidebook c. information d. cake
12. The far island remained .... by human development.
    a. untouched b. incredible c. terrible d. social
13. The new law had a positive .... on the environment.
    a. information b. landscape c. effect d. application
14. The latest news was .... I found that right.
    a. accurate b. advertisement c. intelligence d. responsible

15. The market offers a \ an .... of fresh fruits and vegetables.
   a. shuttlebus b. library c. variety d. excitement
16. A .... tourist respects the local culture and environment.
   a. responsible b. social c. terrible d. historical

Expressions and Prepositions Exercises

17. Dropping litter in streets can .... the environment.
   a. save b. harm c. paint d. travel
18. Egypt is famous .... its fine weather.
   a. from b. to c. for d. in
19. I walked .... the park on my way home.
   a. past b. post c. last d. list
20. I .... all my money on a new pair of shoes.
   a. save b. took c. dumped d. spent
21. I really .... about my family and friends. I love them very much.
   a. care b. great c. make d. spent

Speaking

Asking and answering about your region:

- السؤال والاجابة عن منطقتك

Question	Answer
- What can tourists see and do here? - ما الذي يمكن للسياح رؤيته والقيام به هنا؟	- They can visit the pyramids, explore historic temples, and take boat rides on the Nile River. - يمكنهم زيارة الأهرامات ، واستكشاف المعابد التاريخية، والقيام بجولات بالقارب على نهر النيل.
- Does it get busier at different times of the year? - هل يصبح المكان أكثر ازدحاما في أوقات مختلفة من السنة؟	- Yes, it gets busier during the cooler months, from October to April. - نعم، يصبح المكان أكثر ازدحامًا خلال الأشهر الأكثر برودة، من أكتوبر إلى أبريل
- Why do people want to visit different places in Egypt? - لماذا يرغب الناس بزيارة أماكن مختلفة في مصر؟	- Because Egypt offers a mix of adventure, relaxation, and learning opportunities. - لأن مصر تقدم مزيجًا من المغامرة والاسترخاء وفرص التعلم.

General Exercises on Lessons 5& 6

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My dad suggested .... a hi-air balloon ride.
   a. trying b. to trying c. to try d. try
2. We decided .... a staycation instead.
   a. have b. to having c. to have d. having
3. We love .... different places.
   a. visiting b. visit c. to visiting d. visits
4. We chose .... in Luxor for two weeks.
   a. to stay b. staying c. stay d. stays
5. We're planning a \ an .... with lots of fun activities.
   a. staycation b. car cable c. landscape d. sustainable
6. I saw an interesting .... for a new phone.
   a. information b. articles c. newspaper d. advertisement
7. The beautiful .... of the countryside is amazing.
   a. landscape b. review c. trash d. towers
8. I booked my hotel through a travel .... on my phone.
   a. station b. airport c. app d. beach
9. The children were filled with .... on Christmas morning.
   a. excitement b. happy c. pleased d. interesting
10. I like to .... for clothes at the shopping mall.
    a. burn b. harm c. shop d. waste
11. I need to .... my homework before class tomorrow.
    a. buy b. print c. travel d. break
12. I .... we go for a walk in the park.
    a. explore b. take c. ask d. suggest

2 Read and complete the text with words from the box:

sustainable - beauty spot - waste - responsible - drop

It's great to visit different places, but it's also important to be a (1) .... tourist. There're things you can do to help make your vacation more (2) .... .This is good for the planet, so it's good for you! Don't (3) .... trash. If you can't find a trash can, put things back in your bag until you find one. Remember to leave your (4) .... the way you found it.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. We really enjoyed .... **(go)** to places in the city which we don't often visit.
2. We plan .... **(spend)** the weekend in Alex.
3. She spent her time .... **(watch)** TV.
4. It took me two hours .... **(finish)** my homework.

4 Complete the following dialog:

Tamer and Emad are talking about sports.

Tamer : Do you like sports, Emad?

Emad : Yes, I do.

Tamer : Which (1) .... do you like?

Emad : I like football.

Tamer : What (2) .... playing it today?

Emad : It's a great (3) ....

Tamer : Do you agree that football is the most popular sport?

Emad : Yes, I (4) .... with you.

Review on Unit 12

Key Vocabulary

المفردات الرئيسية

airline (n)	خطوط جوية/رحلة طيران	guide (n)	مرشد
tour (n)	جولة	resort (n)	منتجع
staycation (n)	اجازة داخلية	shuttlebus (n)	حافلة مكوكية
walking tour (n)	جولة تمشية	historical sites (n)	مواقع أثرية
water park (n)	ملاهي مائية	cable car (n)	التلفريك
the natural world (n)	العالم الطبيعي	a hi-air balloon ride (n)	ركوب منطاد الهواء
shopping mall (n)	مركز تسوق	hot air balloon (n)	منطاد الهواء الساخن
Sustainable tourism	سياحة مستدامة	professional (adj)	متخصص/محترف
tourism (n)	السياحة	solar energy (n)	طاقة شمسية
natural resources (n)	مصادر طبيعية	electricity (n)	كهرباء
single-use (adj)	يستخدم مرة واحدة	sustainable (adj)	مستدامة
waste (n)	نفايات/مخلفات	awareness (n)	فهم/وعي/معرفة
community (n)	مجتمع	tourist industry (n)	صناعة السياحة
homestay (n)	الإقامة مع عائلة	period (n.)	نُقطة
AI = Artificial Intelligence (n.)	الذكاء الاصطناعي	question mark (n.)	علامة استفهام
AI-generated (adj.)	مصمَّم بواسطة الذكاء الاصطناعي	exclamation point (n.)	علامة تعجُّب
landscapes (n.)	مناظر طبيعية	comma (n.)	فاصلة
guidebook (n.)	دليل سياحي	colon (n.)	نقطتان فوق بعضهما
responsible (adj.)	مسؤول/جدير بالثقة		

Language قواعد لغوية

Verbs followed by gerund or to + inf.

- **When we use one verb after another verb, the second verb is usually in the gerund form (-ing) or the (to + infinitive).**

- عندما نستخدم فعل بعد فعل آخر، فإن الفعل الثاني عادة يكون مضافا له (V+ing. OR to+ inf)

• Verb + gerund (infinitive + ing)

- Some verbs are followed by the gerund form (V+ing.)

- بعض الافعال يأتي بعدها الفعل مضافًا له (ing) مثل الأفعال التالية:

enjoy	يستمتع	consider	يفكر في
suggest	يقترح	avoid	يتجنب
practice	يمارس	keep / save	يحفظ /يحافظ على
don't mind	لا يمانع	admit	يعترف
finish	ينهي	prevent	يمنع
recommend	يوصي	dislike	لايحب
go	يذهب	spend	يقض وقت/يصرف مال

Ex. We really enjoyed going to places in the city which we don't often visit.

Ex. My dad suggested trying a hi-air balloon ride.

• Verb + to + infinitive

- Other verbs are followed by the (to + infinitive) form

- أفعال أخرى يأتي بعدها (to + inf) مثل الأفعال التالية.

want	يريد	decide	يقرر
choose	يختار	plan	يخطط
hope	يأمل /يتمنى	learn	يتعلم
agree	يوافق	offer	يعرض
expect	يتوقع	intend	ينوي
refuse	يرفض	arrange	يرتب
promise	يوعد	need	يحتاج
ask	يسأل - يطلب	aim	يهدف

Ex. We decided to have a staycation instead.

Ex. Next year, we plan to stay in Egypt again.

Language قواعد لغوية

Verbs followed by gerund or to infinitive with different meanings:

• الأفعال التالية يتبعها (gerund \ to + inf) مع اختلاف المعنى بين الصيغتين

forget	ينسى	regret	يندم
stop	يتوقف	remember	يتذكر
quit	يتوقف عن	go on	يستمر
try	يحاول	begin	يبدأ

forget ينسى	- They forgot to meet them there. ينسى أن يفعل شيء - They forgot meeting them there. فعل شيء ثم نسي أنه قد فعله
stop يتوقف	- She stopped to buy healthy foods. يتوقف لكي يفعل شيء - She stopped buying unhealthy foods. يتوقف عن فعل شيء
remember يتذكر	- He remembered to close the door. يتذكر أن يقوم بفعل بشيء ما (شيء سوف يحدث) - He remembered closing the door. يتذكر أنه فعل شيء ما (شيء حدث في الماضي)
try يحاول	- More people try doing a homestay. يحاول فعل شيء ما (على سبيل التجربة) - The owner will try to help you solve it. يحاول أن يفعل شيئًا جديدًا (يبذل مجهودًا في ذلك)
begin يبدأ	- You can often begin learning more about the culture. يبدأ فى نشاط مستمر بالفعل - Homestays are beginning to become a popular choice for travelers. بداية لشيء جديد لم يكن يفعله
regret يندم	- I regret staying up so late last night. Now I'm tired. نادم على فعل شئ - We regret to inform you that your job application has not been successful. اعتذار رسمى عن شئ

Paragraphs& Emails

فقرات انشائية و رسائل بريد الكتروني عن موضوعات وردت بالوحدة

Lessons 1, 2

I live in Galala City, and it's beautiful! Last year we didn't want to go away, so we had a staycation! We went on a walking tour and saw the historical sites. We saw the water parks and the boats, as well as new cable car. It has views over the mountains and the Red Sea! I explored this beautiful city with fresh eyes, visiting local museums, art galleries, and historical sites. I also did some activities like hiking and biking. I feel that I learned lots of things about my city that I didn't know before!

Lessons 3, 4

Many people enjoy traveling to different cities and countries –there's a lot to see and do in our amazing world. But when people travel, it can cause problems. Many professionals in the tourist industry think about eco-tourism when they plan vacations. They do things like visiting places where tourism is good for the community. It's important to think about how visitors use natural resources, too. Many resorts save water, or use wind or solar energy for electricity. All that can make the planet better.

Al Azhar Test

My favorite place to spend the weekend is the park near my house. It's quiet and green, perfect for relaxing. I love walking on the paths, reading under the trees, or having a picnic with my family. Sometimes, I play with my brothers and sisters there. It's a peaceful place to enjoy nature and landscape. I like it very much.

Test Unit 12

Homestays are a great way to experience a new culture and meet local people. Instead of staying in a hotel, you stay with a local family in their home. This gives you a great opportunity to learn about their customs, traditions, and daily life. You can practice your language skills, try local food, and explore the area with your host family. Homestays are beginning to become a popular choice for travelers. Homestays aren't often more expensive than hotels.

Al Azhar Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. How does reading help your mind?
   a. It makes you forget things.
   b. It makes you excited.
   c. It improves your knowledge.
   d. It makes you bored.
2. Why is reading a good habit?
   a. It helps you relax and reduces stress
   b. It makes you tired and bored.
   c. It stops you from learning new things.
   d. It makes you earn more money.

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialog:

Lily and Ben are talking about traveling:

Lily : Hi, Ben! Do you like traveling?

Ben : Yes, I love it! Visiting new places is so (1) ....

Lily : Me too! What's your favorite part of traveling?

Ben : I love trying new foods and meeting people from different (2) ....

Lily : That's fun! Do you think (3) .... is good for places?

Ben : It can be! Tourism brings money to local communities, which helps them grow.

Lily : But are there any problems with tourism?

Ben : Sometimes, too many tourists can harm nature.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The beautiful .... of the New Administrative Capital is wonderful.
   a. landscape b. review c. trash d. landfill
2. This new .... on my phone helps me listen to music anytime.
   a. station b. spot c. button d. app
3. At the end of a question, we should put a ....
   a. colon b. question mark c. comma d. point
4. You should avoid .... too much TV.
   a. watch b. to watch c. watching d. watches
5. She spent three hours ....
   a. slept b. sleeping c. to sleep d. sleeps

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Recycling is one of the easiest ways to help the planet. When we recycle, we turn old things like paper, plastic, and glass into new products. This saves energy and reduces waste. Recycling also keeps trash out of oceans and forests, protecting animals and nature. Everyone can recycle at home, school, or work. Just separate your trash and use recycling bins. Small actions like this can make a big difference for the Earth. Let's all work together to keep our planet clean and healthy!

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think recycling is important for the environment?

----

2. What are things you recycle at home or school?

----

3. How can we encourage more people to recycle?

B. Choose the correct answer:

4. What is one benefit of recycling?
   a. It makes more trash. b. It saves energy.
   c. It harms animals. d. It damages the environment.
5. Where can you recycle things?
   a. Only at school b. Only at home
   c. Only at work d. At home, school, or work

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. My sister enjoys **spend** the weekend at home. (......................)
2. I intend **do** my homework after dinner. (......................)
3. I enjoyed **play** chess with my friend. (......................)
4. You should stop **play** video games. They can waste your time. (......................)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

(مجاب عنه آخر الوحدة)

"My favorite place to spend the weekend."

Test on Unit 12

A: Listening

1 A- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Cairo is the .... city in Africa.
   a. nearest b. smallest c. tallest d. biggest
2. Rahma lives in ....
   a. the Nile River b. Cairo c. the Nile Delta d. Alexandria
3. More than .... million people live in Cairo.
   a. 20 b. 25 c. 30 d. 35

B- Listen and complete:

4. Rahma lives in Cairo with her ....
5. Cairo is the .... of Egypt.
6. Cairo has a hot .... climate.

B. Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We stopped at the top of the mountain to admire the ....
   a. resort b. landscape c. tower d. review
2. Riding a/an .... is a fun way to explore a new city.
   a. cable car b. airline c. flight d. ship

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

experiences - completely - reviews - homestays - choice

Homestays are beginning to become a popular choice for travelers, and it's easy to see why. It's good to read online (1) .... to find good places to stay. If someone remembers having a great (2) .... they often want to share their (3) .... with others! It's unlikely that people will stop staying in hotels completely, but there's a lot more (4) .... for travelers today.

4 Read the following text then answer the questions:

The Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall. It stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island. You can reach the Cairo Tower by crossing the Qasr al Nil Bridge. Qasr al Nil Bridge is 382 metres long. It has two lion statues at each end. It crosses over the Nile. Many people like to walk along the pavements of the bridge in the evenings. There are wonderful views of the river from the bridge. Tourists and visitors visit the Cairo Tower every day. At night, the colors on the tower **change**.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Cairo Tower is --------- metres tall.

   a. 382 b. 187 c. 200 d. 1961

2. The opposite of the underlined word "change" is ---------.

   a. cross b. damage c. leave d. stay the same

B. Answer the following questions

3. Give a suitable title for this passage.

   ----

4. When did the Cairo Tower open?

   ----

5. How long is the Qasr al Nil Bridge?

   ----

6. Why do you think many people like to walk along the bridge in the evening?

C. Writing

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I tried --------- climbing in the mountains last year on vacation, but I didn't like it

   a. go b. going c. to go d. to going

2. We love --------- to different places around the world.

   a. traveling b. travel c. travels d. to traveling

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

1. We have to try --------- (do) some new hobbies – it might be fun!
2. I remembered --------- (close) the window. I didn't forget to do that.

3. I forgot .... (meet) him at the party last week.
4. We plan .... (had) a picnic this weekend.

7 Complete the following dialog:

Ahmed and Ali are talking about making tourism better for the planet

Ahmed : Hi, Ahmed, What are you reading?

Ali : I am reading a book about ❶ ....

Ahmed : What does it say?

Ali : It says how we can make tourism ❷ .... for the planet.

Ahmed : How can we do that?

Ali : We can help visitors to walk or ❸ .... not use cars.

Ahmed : What else can we do?

Ali : Put waste bins where people can see them, so the resort looks ❹ ......

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80)words on:

(مجاب عنه قبل الاختبار)

"Homestays"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Review (D)

Vocabulary

المفردات

Green transportation (n)	وسائل مواصلات صديقة للبيئة	energy (n)	طاقة
carbon emissions (n)	انبعاثات الكربون	hybrid car (n)	سيارة هجينة (تعمل بالكهرباء والوقود)
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجة		
walking (n)	المشي	electric car (n)	سيارة كهربائية
forms of (n)	وسائل	alternative (adj)	بديل
short distances (n)	المسافات القصيرة	short trips (n)	رحلات قصيرة
air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	fuel (n)	وقود
traffic (n)	ازدحام المرور	renewable energy (n)	طاقة متجددة
driving (n)	القيادة	the cleanest (adj)	الاكثر نظافة/صداقة للبيئة
make a difference (n)	يُحدث فارق	eco-friendly (adj)	صديق للبيئة
the environment (n)	البيئة	especially (adv)	بالاخص
public transportation (n)	وسائل المواصلات العامة	efficient (adj)	فعال
similarly (adv)	بالمثل	reduce (v) (d)	يقلل
sustainable (adj)	مستدام/صديق البيئة	run on (v)	يشتغل علي/يستخدم
traditional (adj)	تقليدي	charge (v) (ied)	يشحن
streetcar (n)	ترام	carry (v) (ied)	يحمل
electricity (n)	الكهرباء	replace up (v) (d)	يستبدل/يحل مكانه
passenger (n)	مسافر		

Definitions

eco-friendly	صديق البيئة	not harmful to the environment.
streetcar	ترام	an electric train that operates in cities.
efficient	فعال	working quickly, easily, and in an organized way
renewable	متجدد	something that can be replaced and doesn't run out.
run on	يشتغل علي/يستخدم	to use.

Reading

SB Page (80)

استمع إلى النصوص

Green transportation is a way of traveling that is better for the environment. It reduces carbon emissions, saves energy, and helps protect the planet.

Leg Power



Cycling[1] and walking are the cleanest forms of transportation. They don't produce any carbon emissions and they're great for traveling short distances[2]. Traveling to work or school by bike or on foot helps reduce air pollution[3] and traffic. Cycling instead of driving, even a few times a week, can make a big difference[4] to the environment.

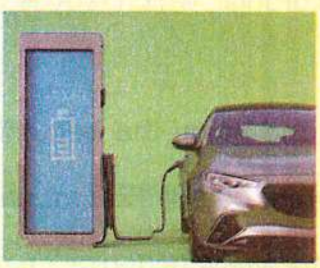
Public Transportation



Trains, streetcars[5], and buses are much more eco-friendly[6] than cars or planes, especially for longer distances. Streetcars, which run on electricity, are a green and efficient[7] way to travel, especially in cities. Like buses and trains, streetcars can carry a lot of passengers[8] at once, which greatly lowers[9] the carbon emissions per person. For example, a full bus can replace[10] up to 50 cars on the road which helps reduce both pollution and traffic. Similarly, trains use less energy and produce fewer carbon emissions than planes or cars. Traveling by trains, streetcars, or buses is a great way to be sustainable and to help protect the environment.



Hybrid and Electric Cars



For people who have to drive, hybrid or electric cars are a greener alternative[11] to traditional cars. Hybrid cars use both electricity and fuel. For shorter trips, hybrid cars often don't need to use fuel and can run on electricity alone. Electric cars are even cleaner but only if they're charged with renewable energy[12].

١. ركوب الدرجات
٢. مسافات
٣. تلوث الهواء
٤. يحدث فرق كبير
٥. عربات الترام
٦. صديق للبيئة
٧. فعال
٨. ركاب
٩. يقلل
١٠. يحل محل
١١. بديل
١٢. طاقة متجددة

Making a Difference

How can you change the way you travel to help reduce carbon emissions and lower air pollution?

SB Page (81)

Travel announcements

Please listen to the following announcement for the next train to leave Misr station, Alexandria.

The next train to leave from platform three is the Talgo Train Number 2022, to Cairo. The train leaves at 7 a.m. and arrives at Ramses II station Cairo at 9.30 a.m. The journey time is two hours and thirty minutes. Please go to platform three. The train leaves in 15 minutes.

The Blue Sky Bus Company Bus services between Luxor and Hurghada on 22nd November.

The Blue Sky Bus Company offers three services a day between Luxor and Hurghada. Buses leave from Luxor Central Station from Monday to Thursday at 8 a.m., 9.30 a.m. and 2.30 p.m. The journey time takes four hours. From Friday to Sunday there are two services that leave at 12 p.m. and 4 p.m. Please go to the website for more details and to book your tickets.

There is a new fast ferry service from Nuweiba to Aqaba in Jordan. The fast ferry leaves Aqaba every day - except Saturdays, at 12 p.m. The journey takes one hour. There is a return ferry from Nuweiba every day - except Saturdays, which leaves at 3.30 p.m. It arrives in Aqaba at 4.30 p.m.

Alternatively, the slow ferry offers a chance to relax and enjoy the beautiful scenery. The slow ferry from Aqaba to Nuweiba leaves every day at 12 a.m. and takes three hours. The slow ferry from Nuweiba to Aqaba leaves every day at 2 p.m.

Please check with the ferry company the day before your travel to know if there have been any changes to the timetable.

SB Page (82)

Last summer, Mom and Dad planned a vacation[1] for us in Florida but we had to have a staycation instead. We were supposed to fly with an airline to a beautiful resort[2] by the beach, but then Dad was sick for a few days and we had to cancel our flight. We were very disappointed, so Mom booked[3] a local city tour and asked a guide to show us around. We even took a shuttlebus to visit a nearby[4] nature park. It wasn't what we planned, but it turned out to be great fun!.

١. عطلة
٢. منتجع سياحى
٣. حجز
٤. قريب

SB Page (83)

A: Did you enjoy having a staycation this year?

B: Yes, thanks. We were planning to visit Jordan but we couldn't go.

A: We're going to Marsa Alam. So I need to remember to take my underwater camera.

B: The coral reefs in Marsa Alam are amazing. Promise to send me some photos.

A: Of course! My dad suggested uploading them onto my social media page so that everyone can see them.

B: Good idea!

General Exercises

Reading

SB Page (84)

Ashraf and Sara's vacation

Ashraf : Hey, Sara! How was your vacation?

Sara : It was great! I went to Alexandria to visit my aunt and cousins. We went to the beach almost every day. What about you?

Ashraf : Wow, that sounds fun! I went to the Red Sea with my family. We stayed near a nature reserve. I saw lots of colorful fish and even some dolphins!

Sara : That's so cool! Did you swim a lot?

Ashraf : Yes! We went snorkeling and saw coral reefs. It was beautiful. My dad and I also tried diving, but I was a bit scared at first.

Sara : I understand. In Alexandria, I visited the Citadel of Qaitbay and ate seafood. My cousins and I also went to the library. It's huge!

Ashraf : I've heard about that library. Did you like it?

Sara : Yes! It's very interesting. I want to go back again.

Ashraf : I think I want to visit Alexandria next time!

Sara : And I want to see the Red Sea!

Ashraf : Did you eat any special food in Alexandria?

Sara : Yes! My aunt made feteer with honey. It was delicious! We also ate fresh fish by the sea. What about you?

Ashraf : We had lots of seafood, too. We even tried grilled octopus. It was strange, but I liked it. One night, we had a barbecue on the beach.

Sara : That sounds amazing. Did you see any animals at the nature reserve?

Ashraf : Yes, I saw some sea turtles and many different birds. We also went on a boat ride to see a coral island. The water was so clear!

Sara : I love boat rides! In Alexandria, we took a small boat around the harbor. We watched the sunset. It was so beautiful!

Ashraf : I want to do that someday. It sounds so relaxing.

Sara : It was! We also went shopping in the markets. I bought a new scarf and some bracelets. What about you?

Ashraf : We visited a small town near the Red Sea. I got a cool seashell necklace. It's a nice memory from the trip.

Sara : We both had great vacations! Maybe next time, we can go together!

Ashraf : Yes, that would be awesome!

SB Page (85)

"A busy day at the market"

October, 22nd

Today, I volunteered at a food stall in our local market. I helped my uncle at his fruit and vegetable stall. The market opened early, and we set up the stall while it was still dark. My uncle showed me how to arrange the fruit and vegetables, with the tomatoes at the front because they were on sale. We also put the apples and oranges in tidy rows to make them look fresh and colorful. People came as soon as the sun rose, buying both small and large amounts. I had to weigh everything carefully, making sure not to make any mistakes. In the afternoon, I felt tired, so I took a short break, drank some water, and ate a sandwich. The market got busier, and my uncle asked me to count the money. At the end of the day, we packed up and cleaned the stall. On the way home, my uncle thanked me, and I felt happy I hope to help again next week.

Hadeel

1 Complete the text about clean transportation with the prepositions in the box.

in x 2 - into - on - over - through

In the future, clean transportation will be very important. People will travel (1) ...... electric cars and buses. These vehicles will drive quietly (2) ...... the roads. There will be bike lanes (3) ...... every city, and people will ride bicycles (4) ...... parks and neighborhoods. Some cities will have trains that move quickly (5) ...... the streets, using clean energy. At charging stations, cars will get power from solar panels. Many people will walk to work or school, going (6) ...... buildings without using any fuel. This will make our cities quieter and the air cleaner.

2 Complete the short text about writing tips with the words from the box.

avoid - clear - first - friendly - positive - suggestions

Tips are a way of giving advice or (1) ...... to help someone in a particular situation. Tips should be (2) ...... and easy to follow. When writing tips, use short and simple sentences. (3) ...... difficult words and use (4) ...... language. Start with the most important points (5) .... It can be good to use bullet points or numbers to make the tips easy to read. Always focus on what the reader needs to know and try to be helpful and (6) ......

Listening Material

Bit by Bit نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بأسئلة الاستماع الواردة فى وحدات كتاب

Unit 7

Al Azhar Test

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Keeping your body and mind healthy is important for a happy life. Eating healthy foods like fruit, vegetables gives your body the energy it needs. Regular exercise, like walking, running, or playing sports, strengthens your muscles and heart.

Test on Unit 7

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Studying can sometimes feel like a big mountain to climb! But don't worry, it doesn't have to be hard. Here are a few simple tips to make studying easier and more fun. You should find your best time to learn. Some people like to study in the morning, while others prefer the afternoon or evening. Make a plan. Create a study schedule.

Choose a quiet place where you can concentrate. It could be your bedroom, the library, or even a park. Make sure you have everything you need, like books, pens, and snacks.

Study for two or three hours. Take short breaks for about 20-30 minutes. This will help you stay focused.

Unit 8

Al Azhar Test

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

"In the new city, there are many great facilities like parks, schools, and shops. Public transportation is very easy to use, with buses and trains that go all over the city. This makes it simple for people to travel quickly and safely. The city is designed to be comfortable and convenient for everyone who lives there."

Test on Unit 8

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

"Public parks are great places to relax and have fun. They often have green spaces, playgrounds, and sports facilities. People can go to parks to exercise, play games, or simply enjoy the fresh air. Parks are important for our mental and physical health. They can help reduce stress and improve our mood. It's important to take care of our parks and keep them clean."

Unit 9

Al Azhar Test

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Mohab. My last name is Ali. I'm fourteen. I live in Alexandria, in the north of Egypt. I can speak English. I like writing letters and taking photos with my new camera. My hobbies are reading and swimming.

Test on Unit 9

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Heba was shopping yesterday. She went to the butcher's . She bought a kilo of meat. She paid the butcher 400 pounds .

She went to the greengrocer's. She bought tomatoes and carrots .She paid forty pounds for the tomatoes and sixty pounds for the carrots. At last, she went to the bakery and bought bread for twenty pounds . She walked home at twelve o'clock.

Unit 10

Al Azhar Test

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Research shows that some teenagers spend a massive hours looking at a screen every day. To their surprise, they gave some kids nasty food while they were looking at screens. The kids didn't notice the food and started eating. They quickly took the food away. This proves that looking at the screens is dangerous.

Test on Unit 10

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

This week at school, we're talking about digital habits. I thought about how, when, and how often I use digital technology and I realized that my digital habits are quite good. For example, I never watch video or look at my phone for too long in the evening. I usually read a book in the hour before I go to bed instead to give my eyes a rest from looking at a screen.

Unit 11

Al Azhar Test

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

I wanted to travel around the world, but I had no money. I read an amazing story called "Around the world in Eighty days" instead. It was a great story.

Test on Unit 11

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

My name is Noura. Sham El Nessim is my favorite time of the year. We enjoy it at the start of spring. Sham El Nessim started in 2700 BCE! Today, most Egyptians have a picnic in a park or next to the Nile with their families. Many people also go to the beach where they make sandcastles and swim in the sea. On this day, we eat a lot of special food.

Unit 12

Al Azhar Test

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

"Reading is a great way to learn new things and improve your mind. It helps you relax, reduces stress, and makes your imagination stronger. You can read books, magazines, or even online articles. Reading every day can also improve your vocabulary and knowledge. It's a fun and useful habit for everyone!"

Test on Unit 12

My name is Rahma. I live in Cairo with my parents. Cairo is a big city in Egypt. It is the capital of Egypt. It is the biggest city in Africa. More than 20 million people live in it. It is located in northern Egypt. It is on the Nile River. It is near the Nile Delta. Cairo has a hot desert climate.

Bit by Bit

كتب فى اللغة الإنجليزية

Hello!

Beyond Words

SECOND TERM

ملحق تسميع المفردات

والواجب المنزلي



1st PREP

2025

الصف الأول الإعدادي

الفصل الدراسى الثاني

دار غــزة

للطبع والنشر والتوزيع

ghazzahouse@gmail.com

Review on Unit 7 (Helping each other to learn)

lessons 1 & 2

جهاز	مخادع/صعب/محير ....
طاقة	حلو الفراولة ....
ضوء الشمس	اقتراحات ....
كهرباء	تجربة حياتية ....
مواد معاد تصنيعها	طبيعى ....
الوقت الحاضر/الآن	صديق للبيئة ....
تلوث	عرض تقديمى ....
خطأ شائع	يقلل/يخفض ....
يخطط	يظلل/يبرز/يلقى الضوء ....
يسترخى	يضع خط تحت ....
يتذكر	يركز ....
يُذَكِّر	صحراء ....
يحمى	حلو/تحلية ....
يطبع	كوكب ....
نفايات/مخلفات/قمامة	متوتر ....
زميل الفصل	ارشادات بسيطة ....
يعيد تدوير	لمبات كهربائية ....

Expressions & Prepositions

يبحث عن	يفكر فى ....
يعطى نصيحة	امام ....
يطلب نصيحة	يركز على ....
ذكر نفسك بـ	قلق بشأن ....
يربط شيء بـ	لديه مشاكل مع ....
له تأثير على	يكتب عن ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يتعلم	....	....
.... يتهجى	....	....
.... ينسى	....	....
.... يبدأ	....	....
.... يأخذ	....	....
.... يفكر	....	....
.... يفهم	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The magician did some .... games.
   a. eco-friendly b. tricky c. quite d. helpless
2. What can we do to .... pollution in our city?
   a. increase b. damage c. represent d. reduce
3. I have a final test tomorrow and I need to .... on my study.
   a. focus b. ignore c. forget d. break
4. I want to have lunch at a good restaurant. Do you have any ....?
   a. pollutions b. suggestions c. weather d. statues
5. If you are tired, you should take a ....
   a. park b. run c. print d. break
6. I had a lot of interesting .... during my visit abroad.
   a. experiences b. experiments c. planets d. electricity
7. I usually have chocolate cake for ....
   a. desert b. design c. dessert d. drum
8. Tarek often .... the important notes in blue.
   a. highlands b. highlights c. highways d. high-classes
9. .... means of transportation include walking and cycling are useful for the environment.
   a. Eco-friendly b. Polluted c. Harmful d. Dangerous
10. It's .... for babies to cry when they hear loud sounds.
    a. unusual b. natural c. funny d. quiet
11. What .... Hanaa eat for breakfast?
    a. do b. does c. doing d. is

12. Where did you .... the last weekend?

a. spent b. spends c. spend d. spending

13. Why .... Mahmoud sad yesterday?

a. is b. were c. did d. was

14. **A:** When did you watch the movie? – **B:** ....

a. Tomorrow b. Yesterday c. Next week d. Next year

15. How old .... you? I'm eleven.

a. are b. was c. is d. were

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

notes - study - tips - tapes - breaks

A study plan is important for learning and doing well in school. Here are some simple ❶ .... for studying well. Find a quiet place where you can ❷ .... without noise. Make a timetable to organize your study time. Try different ways to study, like reading, making ❸ ...., or using flashcards. Take short ❹ ....This will help you stay focused. Finally, with a good plan, studying can be easier and more fun.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What .... (do) people do in the past?
2. Which subject do you .... (liked)?
3. How often .... (do) Ahmed practise football?
4. What time .... (does) it?
5. When .... (do) you get up yesterday?

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Ezz and Farah are talking about helping the environment.

Ezz : Hi Farah! Did you think about helping the environment?

Farah : Yes, I did. It's a big ❶ ....

Ezz : I agree it's a problem, but what can we do about it?

Farah : We can ❷ .... our waste.

Ezz : That's a good idea. What else can we do?

Farah : We can ❸ .... paper and plastic.

Ezz : You're right. What about using the public ❹ ....?

Farah : That's great! I'll start doing these things.

Ezz : Me too. It was nice talking to you.

Farah : Thank you! My pleasure.

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Simple tips for studying"

....

....

lessons 3 & 4

بحث علمى	خلية الكائن الحي ....
الحياة الحقيقية	نشيط/حيوى/عامل/فعال ....
متعاون/مفيد	بشكل طبيعى ....
حقيقة	مخ ....
كائن حى	حقيقة ....
حيوان منوى	رأي ....
انشطة	اتصال ....
منطقة	يفسر/يشرح ....
مريض/صبور	يخلق/ينشئ ....
طيبة/عطف	بيانات/حقائق ....
حفيد	مملكة ....
موقع مكان	بالرغم من ....
قاعدة	معقد ....
قاموس	حل المشكلات ....
الة حاسبة	فى اى وقت ....
يتأكد/يفحص	بالضبط ....
ينتمى/يخص	التكنولوجيا ....
يتحكم فى	كافى ....

Expressions & Prepositions

يعمل بجد	هام لـ ....
فخور بـ	يتفق مع ....
يبحث فى القاموس	يعمل بحث ....
فى رأيك	يستمر/يواصل ....
كلما تدربت كلما تحسنت	هذا لطف منك ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
ينام	....	....
يعرض/يبين	....	....
يشعر	....	....
يعنى	....	....

Homework Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I was lazy in the past but I'm .... now.
   a. asleep b. active c. quite d. helpless
2. **A:** I think heathy food is important for us? **B:** I agree .... you.
   a. by b. to c. from d. with
3. It's a/an .... that the sun rises from the east.
   a. opinion b. sunset c. fact d. cell
4. There is a .... between fine weather and good mood.
   a. pollution b. suggestion c. contact d. connection
5. Cell phones, tablets and computers are forms of ....
   a. nature b. technology c. subjects d. farming
6. I don't know the meaning of this word. I'll look it .... in the dictionary.
   a. for b. after c. up d. to
7. Our body consists of billions of ....
   a. brains b. hearts c. lungs d. cells
8. Although the teacher .... the lesson many times, I didn't understand it.
   a. explained b. forgot c. hid d. caught
9. In my ...., Al Ahly and Zamalek are great clubs in Africa.
   a. fact b. opinion c. truth d. way
10. I'm proud .... Dr Madgy Yacoub. He is famous all over the world.
    a. with b. of c. from d. with
11. That is the house .... I was born.
    a. which b. when c. where d. who
12. Football is the sport .... I play every week.
    a. where b. when c. which d. who
13. I saw my friends .... often played football in the park.
    a. which b. who c. when d. where
14. This is the boy .... father is a doctor.
    a. which b. whose c. where d. who

15. Friday is the day --------- we go swimming.

   a. when   b. that   c. who   d. where

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The tourists ----------- (which) visit Egypt always take photos of the Pyramids.
2. Othman teaches a class of students ----------- (who) first language is Arabic.
3. That's the bookcase ----------- (when) I keep my books.
4. Here is the place ----------- (where) grandpa always used to talk about.
5. I want a coat ----------- (who) will keep me warm.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

opinion - disagree - best - fact - agree

Facts and opinions are two different types of statements that we often use in our daily lives. A ❶ ----------- is something that can be true or false. For example, "The Earth goes around the sun" is a fact because it is based on scientific evidence. On the other hand, an ❷ ----------- is a personal belief or judgment that someone has, which may not be based on facts. For example, saying "Chocolate ice cream is the ❸ ----------- flavor" is an opinion because it reflects what someone likes, but others might ❹ -----------.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Badr and Roshdy are talking about doing activities.

Badr : What kind of activities do you enjoy doing?

Roshdy : I enjoy playing ❶ ------------------------------.

Badr : How did you learn to play chess?

Roshdy : I learned to play it ❷ ------------------------------ There are many resources available online to learn.

Badr : Was it ❸ ------------------------------ to learn?

Roshdy : It was actually quite easy to learn the basic rules. But becoming good at chess needs a lot of practice.

Badr : How much ❹ ------------------------------ do you do?

Roshdy : I try to practice playing online or with friends every day, even if it's just for a short time.

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Our brain"

----

lessons 5 & 6

خريطة ذهنية	مزعج ....
مفكرة تأملية	ايقاع / تواتر / تناغم ....
مفكرة يومية/مذكرات	تقاليد ....
مشاعر	افكار ....
نجاح	فخور ....
ناجح	صبر ....
يقدر/يثمن	يشجع ....
حبات الخرز	يرمز الى/ يمثل ....
عجلات اضافية	يتنبأ ....
يبدل (يستخدم دواسة الدراجة)	حرفة ....
خطة عمل	مجتمع ....
عملية	تنوع ....
افريقى	قوة ....
خائف/مرعوب	شجاعة ....
مركز / منتصف	سلام ....
يدعم/يشجع/دعم	امل ....
يسقط	مثالى/رائع ....
يواصل	حرف يدوية ....
يصف	قيمة ....
	ثقة ....

Expressions & Prepositions

يعرف/يكتشف	.الصديق وقت الضيق ....
فى البداية	واصل التقدم ....
بعد وقت قصير	يستسلم ....
يسقط	يتعلم من ....
يدون ملاحظات عن	فى النهاية ....
	متوتر قليلا ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يقضي وقت/يصرف مالا	....	....
.... يحتفظ بـ/يبقى	....	....
.... يستسلم	....	....
.... يمسك	....	....
.... يسقط	....	....
.... يدع	....	....
.... يرجع/يعود	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She records her thoughts and feelings in a ---------.
   a. tradition b. journal c. fact d. map
2. We want to --------- students to read more.
   a. encourage b. dislike c. stop d. pedal
3. Ahmed El Gendi --------- Egypt and won a gold medal at the Olympics.
   a. failed b. predicted c. represented d. behaved
4. It's very --------- to live in a crowded city. I prefer the country because it's quiet.
   a. annoying b. helpful c. friendly d. active
5. If you want to be successful, work hard and never ---------.
   a. look up b. think about c. give up d. look for
6. I really --------- the information that my teacher always gives me.
   a. spend b. appreciate c. ride d. fall
7. Egypt is a great country with a rich culture and ---------.
   a. traditions b. direction c. corrections d. separation
8. The customer waited for a long time so the shop assistant thanked him for his ---------.
   a. journal b. handicrafts c. patience d. process
9. The students worked hard and the teacher was --------- of them.
   a. lazy b. proud c. sad d. angry

10. She spends much time .... TV. She should stop doing that.
    a. watch   b. watches   c. watched   d. watching
11. I learned patience and hard work .... my father.
    a. from   b. of   c. by   d. to
12. Don't .... litter on the floor, put it in the bin.
    a. fall   b. drop   c. pick   d. predict
13. Sarah used .... to make necklaces and bracelets.
    a. beads   b. weeks   c. peace   d. hope
14. The boy was .... when he saw the dangerous dog.
    a. active   b. funny   c. scared   d. proud
15. My dad held the back of the bike so I wouldn't ....
    a. fall   b. drop   c. agree   d. sleep

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

give - amazing - grow - nervous - trying

Learning to ride a bike can be difficult! I felt (1) .... at first, and I fell down a few times. But I didn't (2) .... up! My dad helped me. He held the back of the bike to help me balance, and I kept (3) .... I tried to pedal, but I almost fell a few times. After a while, my dad let go of the bike for a few seconds, and I rode a little by myself! Finally, I learned to ride a bike! It felt (4) ....

3 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Egypt is a great country in the north of Africa. Cairo, which is a very big city, is the capital. People in Egypt speak Arabic. Egypt is famous for the Pyramids of Giza, the fine weather and the Nile. The Nile is the longest river in the world. Tourists visit Egypt to enjoy the beauty of nature. We love our country very much. We work hard to help Egypt develop. Everyone does their <u>**best**</u> to make Egypt one of the best countries in the world.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Egypt is a ....
   a. country   b. city   c. continent   d. village
2. The opposite of the word "**best**" is ....
   a. worst   b. largest   c. smallest   d. youngest

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do tourists visit Egypt?

----

4. What language do people in Egypt speak?

----

5. Why do we work hard?

----

6. What is the capital of Egypt?

----

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Rana and Mayven are talking about a typical day in life.

Rana : Hi Mayven! How was your day?

Mayven : It was pretty good! But there were some annoying moments in class.

Rana : Really? What (1) ....?

Mayven : Well, during math class, I had a (2) .... It was hard to understand the lesson.

Rana : I know how that feels. Sometimes, it takes time to understand new things.

Mayven : You're right! I tried to stay calm, and finally I could solve the math problems. I felt so (3) .... of myself!

Rana : That's awesome! Did you have any fun today after school?

Mayven : Yes! My friends and I played football at the park. They always (4) .... me to score goals.

Rana : Wow! Your friends are kind and friendly.

5 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Learning to ride a bike."

Review on Unit 8 (New life in old cities)

Lessons 1 & 2

دورة رياضية/بطولة	الريف ......
خبرة أو تجربة حياتية	مَرافق/تجهيزات ......
مقالة	نُمو/زيادة ......
عنوان (كتاب أو مقالة)	أعمال البناء ......
واثق من نفسه	السُكان/تعداد السكان ......
اثر تاريخى	تخطيط المُدُن ......
بيوت الطيور	مُخَطِّط / القائم بالتخطيط ......
خجول	قائد ......
صِحي/سليم	حظيرة ......
آمِن/في أمان	ممشى محاطة بسياج ......
يتطوع/متطوع	مَرِح/كثير اللعب ......
يحترم	يخطط/خطة ......
يعِد (يعطي وعدا)	الأمان/السلامة ......
يكتشف	مجتمع ......
يشمل/يتضمن	نوعية/جودة ......
يتيح/يوفر	التعليم ......
يحسن/يطور	مساحة ......
يفتح/مفتوح	منطقة/ضاحية ......

Expressions & Prepositions

يلتقط القمامة	يشعر بالفخر ......
بالاضافة الى	يكون صداقات جديدة ......
يلتقط صورة	يبقى على اتصال ......
بعد ذلك بقليل	ينتقل إلى (يعزّل) ......
لا استطيع الانتظار حتى..	متوتر بشأن ......
يودع	قريب من ......

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... ينمو/يزداد	....	....
.... يبني	....	....
.... يصبح	....	....
.... يقود	....	....
.... يشتري	....	....
.... يُطعِم	....	....
.... يرقد/يتمدد	....	....
.... يرسم	....	....
.... يشرق	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We spent the weekend in the ...., enjoying the beautiful fields and fresh air.
   a. seaside b. countryside c. bedside d. fireside
2. The new gym has great ...., including a swimming pool and tennis courts.
   a. activities b. disabilities c. difficulties d. facilities
3. There is new .... happening near here. they are building a shopping mall.
   a. construction b. production c. instruction d. pollution
4. The .... of the small town is just over 10,000 people.
   a. information b. transportation c. population d. communication
5. City .... helps decide where schools, parks, and roads should be built.
   a. drawing b. painting c. building d. planning
6. A good .... listens to others and makes good decisions.
   a. reader b. leader c. heater d. scooter
7. Our farm in the village has a large .... where we keep farm animals.
   a. enclosure b. treasure c. theatre d. reporter
8. The neighbours' dog is very.........., jumping and running around the garden all day.
   a. careful b. painful c. playful d. fearful
9. I plan to .... at the local charity this weekend. Would you like to come?
   a. organize b. volunteer c. include d. respect
10. The guards .... the castle from any attackers.
    a. protect b. threaten c. endanger d. damage
11. I .... late for the lesson, so the teacher was angry with me.
    a. was arriving b. was arrived c. arrive d. arrived

12. My sister .... her piano lesson, so she didn't answer the telephone.
    a. had b. is having c. was having d. has
13. I .... for the bus, but it was late. So, I decided to walk to the club.
    a. was waited b. waited c. waiting d. wait
14. I first .... my friend Ali five years ago, when we were in primary two.
    a. was knowing b. was known c. know d. knew
15. Last night, I .... my homework and went to bed early.
    a. finish b. was finishing c. finished d. was finished

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

confident - feel - solution - healthy - quality

"I read an article about how to live a healthy life. It said that eating good food and exercising are the best ❶ .... for staying strong and happy. The ❷ .... of the food you eat is very important. After reading the article, I felt more ❸ .... that I can make better choices for my health. I will try to follow the advice to ❹ .... better."

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (meet) my friend Ali at the club yesterday.
2. I .... (do) my homework all afternoon yesterday, so I didn't go to the club.
3. Sorry, I was sleeping. I .... (not hear) you come in.
4. I .... (come) to see you twice, but you weren't at home.
5. What were you doing when I phoned? – I .... (watch) TV.
6. Robin Hood .... (take) from the rich and gave to the poor.
7. Hey, did you talk to your father about the picnic? – Yes, I .... (am).
8. My father .... (go) to London on business twice last year.
9. The question was too difficult. No one .... (know) the answer.
10. .... (Are) you watch the game on TV? No, I didn't.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Sam is talking to his friend Alex about his first day at his new school.

Alex : Hi, Sam! How was your first day at the new school?
Sam : Hi, Alex! It was good. I ❶ .... new friends.
Alex : That's great! You must feel ❷ .... of yourself.
Sam : Yes, I do. It was hard, but fun at the same time.
Alex : What is your new school like?
Sam : It's nice. The school is ❸ .... of many interesting activities.
Alex : That ❹ .... cool. Did you join any of the school clubs?
Sam : Yes, I joined the art club. I think it will be fun.
Alex : I'm sure it will be. I'm happy for you, Sam!

lessons ③ & ④

مالِك / صاحب	رصيف للمُشاة ....
مُحاوِر	محطة مترو أنفاق تحت الارض ....
حل	مُراهِق ....
يخطط ذهنيا/خريطة ذهنية	التلوُث ....
مُغلَق	لافتة / علامة ....
متشابِه	موقف سيارات تحت الارض ....
مسبب للإحباط	تحت الأرض ....
شاعر بالإحباط	قديم ....
مبدع	يزعِج / يضايق ....
البقالة	مهام ....
محل	ملعب كرة السَلَّة ....
هدية تذكارية	مباني سكنية ....
ذكرى	أنشطة ....
يقتَرِح	كُلِيَّة ....
يحدد / يعيِّن	مساحات مفتوحة ....
تعليق / يعلِّق	زبون / عميل ....
يقدم	كُشك بالسوق ....

Expressions & Prepositions

يقضي وقتا بالخارج	يبدو أن ....
يشارك	يصحح الأمور ....
على مر السنين	ينشئ خريطة ذهنية ....
يبدو مثل	يرسم خطة ....
قادر على	يقدم عرض تقديمي ....
	يجني الكثير من الأموال ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يعرف/يعلم	....	....
يكتب	....	....
يأتي	....	....
يتسكع	....	....
يعطي	....	....
يبيع	....	....
يفقد	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some shop owners use the .... in front of them to display their goods.
   a. sidewalks b. colleges c. tunnels d. comments
2. I usually take the .... to the city center. It's much faster than buses.
   a. highway b. motorway c. subway d. railway
3. The .... gathered at the park to play basketball after school.
   a. signs b. teens c. activities d. stalls
4. The train .... was very busy with people waiting for their trains.
   a. passenger b. sidewalk c. task d. station
5. There is too much .... in the city, especially in the air.
   a. population b. solution c. pollution d. information
6. You can walk through a/an .... tunnel to reach the other side of the street.
   a. overground b. underground c. published d. basketball
7. Her phone is ...., and she plans to buy a new one next month.
   a. outdated b. updated c. downloaded d. uploaded
8. Finding a .... space in the city center can be difficult.
   a. sleeping b. parking c. shopping d. walking
9. The taxi driver .... me with his loud music. I asked him to stop it.
   a. pleased b. decided c. bothered d. helped
10. Many people prefer public .... to avoid traffic jams.
    a. pollution b. population c. instruction d. transportation
11. While he was driving to work, he .... the news on the radio.
    a. was hearing b. heard c. was heard d. hears
12. We were waiting for the train when it .... to snow.
    a. started b. was started c. is starting d. starts

13. I broke my arm .... I was skiing last winter.
    a. what b. which c. while d. who
14. We were having breakfast .... the school bus arrived.
    a. where b. when c. while d. which
15. The little girl .... when the waiter took her plate.
    a. still ate b. was still eaten c. is still eating d. was still eating

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

positive - customer - similar - comment - suggest

"A customer came into the shop where I work and asked for a new phone. I showed him a few options that were (1) .... to the one he had before. "I would (2) .... this one," I said, pointing to a phone with great features. He smiled and made a (3) .... about how helpful I was. The (4) .... decided to buy the phone I recommended."

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I saw your sister while she .... (walk) in the park.
2. He was working on his project .... (what) I visited him yesterday.
3. My father was still sleeping when I .... (leave) for school.
4. In our .... (neighbour), there's a small park where we spend our weekends.
5. I .... (read) an article when the train arrived.
6. In the park, the children .... (play) football while I was reading a book.
7. When I arrived at the party, everyone .... (dance) and singing.
8. The students .... (study) for the test when the teacher arrived.
9. I woke up while it .... (snow) outside.
10. While she was painting the disk, her cat .... (knock) over the paint can.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Sami is talking to his friend Hani about a problem in their neighbourhood

Sami : Hey, do you like living in this neighborhood?
Hani : It's okay, but there's (1) .... to hang out with friends.
Sami : You are right. What do you (2) ....?
Hani : It sounds like we need more community spaces.
Sami : Yes. There (3) .... to be more places for young people to have fun.
Hani : Maybe we can suggest it to the city council.
Sami : That's a good idea. We could ask them to (4) .... a new youth club.
Hani : Let's do it!

Lessons 5 & 6

اكتشاف	توأمان / توائم ....
حقل	متعة / إثارة ....
حشد / مجموعة	أرجوحة ....
حي / جوار	هيكل التسلق ....
فناء	إجراء / عملية ....
تأثير / يؤثر	مفتون / منبهر ....
هادئ / مُسالِم	يساهم ....
ضخم / عملاق	شقّة ....
يتأمل / يتدبر	منزلَق زحليقة ....
يجرّب / يحاول	بوّابة ....
يدرك	العمل الجماعي ....
يلاحظ	مقعد طويل ....
يدردش	سياق / موقف ....

Expressions & Prepositions

في الطابق العُلوِي	متشوق لـ ....
يكتشف / يعرف	يستمتع ....
يسيطر أو يستولي على	يُحدِث تغييرات ....
مليء بـ	يقوم بعمل جيد ....
يبطئ / يتأنى	ينشئ ....
تأثير أو يؤثر على	يجرّب شيء ....
يَحدُث / يجري	يشير الى ....
	فى طريقهم للمنزل ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يقضي / ينفق	....	....
يترك / يغادر	....	....
يبني	....	....
يفهم	....	....
يعني	....	....
يفعل / يؤدى	....	....
يرقد	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children spent hours playing on the climbing _________ at the playground.
   a. culture b. structure c. context d. nature
2. Baking a cake is a simple _________ that anyone can follow.
   a. progress b. success c. address d. process
3. The little girl was _________ by the colorful butterflies in the garden.
   a. fascinated b. organized c. painted d. generated
4. Everyone should _________ to the team's success by sharing ideas.
   a. control b. realize c. contribute d. reflect
5. Our team won the match because of their good _________.
   a. homework b. roadwork c. woodwork d. teamwork
6. After the meeting, I took a moment to _________ on what we discussed.
   a. reflect b. think c. correct d. protect
7. We decided to _________ the city's old streets to learn about its history.
   a. nod b. explore c. contribute d. spend
8. The _________ of the hidden treasure made everyone happy and excited.
   a. playground b. bench c. discovery d. swing
9. The teacher's encouragement had a positive _________ on the students.
   a. contract b. celebration c. document d. impact
10. The _________ sound of the rain helped me sleep better.
    a. terrible b. peaceful c. fearful d. careful
11. The teacher gave us _________ homework today.
    a. so much b. too many c. so many d. too
12. We don't have _________ chairs for everyone in the meeting room.
    a. so much b. too many c. enough d. too much
13. My uncle has _________ money. He is very rich.
    a. too many b. so much c. not enough d. so many
14. The money I have is _________ to buy a phone. Would you lend me 1000 pounds?
    a. too much b. enough c. so many d. not enough

15. She received .... praise on her new dress. She felt very happy.
   a. so many b. so much c. not enough d. too many

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

giant - proud - changes - explore - together

I live in one of the new cities. The community decided to make ① .... to the park. Everyone worked ② ...., and it was fun. They built a ③ .... playground where kids could have fun. The neighbors felt ④ .... that they contributed. Now, when they see the happy children, they nod in agreement, feeling part of something special.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He ate .... (too) food at the buffet. Now he feels sick.
2. There isn't .... (many) light in the room to read comfortably.
3. You brought .... (much) clothes for the holiday. The suitcases are full.
4. There isn't .... (many) space in the car for all your toys.
5. She bought .... (too much) stories to read. I don't think she'll read them all.
6. I can't eat .... (too many) chocolate. It's unhealthy.
7. She ate .... (enough) pizza for dinner, and now she is sick.
8. Sorry, I don't have .... (many) time to go the park today.
9. There's .... (too many) noise outside! I can't concentrate.
10. You put .... (too much) books on the shelf! They are too heavy.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends volunteer to help the workers at a park

A : What's going on in the park today?
B : They're ① .... new swings, slides, and climbing structures.
A : That sounds exciting! Do you think we'll ② .... fun?
B : Definitely! I always ③ .... part of the community at these events.
A : Me too. I love how they build playgrounds for the kids.
B : It's great to see everyone come together.
A : Yes, it really brings the neighborhood closer.
B : Let's go and ④ .... the workers!

General on Units 7-8

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. What is the brain made up of?

a. Bones   b. Neurons   c. Muscles   d. Blood

2. The brain helps us to ---------.

a. fly   b. swim   c. eat   d. think

3. How many nerve cells are in the brain?

a. Billions.   b. Hundreds.   c. Thousands.   d. Millions.

B: Listen and complete:

4. We --------- things using the brain.

5. The --------- protects the brain.

6. The brain is the --------- center of your body.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Please, read the text and --------- the difficult words using your yellow marker.

a. trick   b. connect   c. highlight   d. reduce

2. You should --------- a break if you feel tired.

a. take   b. make   c. do   d. give

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

suggestions - patience - advise - natural - worry

Learning a new skill can be tricky. It might take time and (1) -----------. Sometimes it feels hard and you might want to give up. But don't (2) -----------! Try to find ways to make it fun. You can ask for help from a friend or teacher. They might have some good (3) -----------. Remember to practice and be patient with yourself. Learning is a (4) ----------- part of growing up.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Water is very important for life. Every living thing needs water to survive. Humans need to drink water every day to stay healthy. Water helps our bodies work well. It keeps us cool, helps us digest food, and cleans our bodies. Plants need water to grow. Without water, they cannot make food. Animals also need water to live. They drink water and use it to find food. We should not waste water. It is important to save water for the future. Always remember to drink enough water every day. Water is precious, and we must take care of it. By saving water, we help the planet and all living things.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What is the main idea of this text?
   a. Water is only for drinking.
   b. Water is not important for plants.
   c. Water is essential for life.
   d. Water is only found in rivers.
2. Why is water important for humans?
   a. It makes us sleepy.
   b. It helps our bodies function properly.
   c. It makes us feel cold.
   d. It has no important function.

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why do animals need water?

----

4. What are some ways to save water at home?

----

5. How does water help plants grow?

----

6. What can you do to help save water?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... did you do at the park yesterday?
   a. Why　b. When　c. What　d. Where
2. That's the car .... my father bought last week.
   a. which　b. who　c. when　d. what

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (When) did you last see your friend Ali? – At the sports club.
2. This is the boy .... (what) won the race.
3. When she phoned, I .... (do) my homework.
4. .... (Are) you sleeping when I arrived? I didn't see you.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Salem is worried about his tomorrow's presentation

Hatem : Hi, Salem. Are you ready for the presentation tomorrow?

Salem : Not yet. I need to ① .... my presentation more.

Hatem : That's a good idea. Did you make ② ....?

Salem : Yes, I made notes to help me remember.

Hatem : Great! Remember, you will ③ .... our class.

Salem : I know. I don't want to ④ .... anyone by being nervous.

Hatem : Don't worry. Just practise your presentation a few more times.

Salem : Thanks, Hatem. I will do that.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How I learned to play chess"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Review on Unit 9 (Plans with friends)

lessons ① & ②

سوق تجاري	مدخل ....
حوار	حقيقي ....
دولة	مزيف ....
مُندَمِج	مهمل ....
دار عرض (سينما)	يحفظ/يحافظ على ....
فيلم حركة	يتضمن/يشتمل على ....
بعد/ماراب	يهتم ....
مقهى/كافتريا	خائف ....
عبر/ على الإنترنت	متوتر ....
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	غاضب ....
الاعمال المدرسية	مكتئب ....
صورة	قلق ....
يدرك	متحمس ....
يلاحظ	مسرور ....
يخطط	مندهش ....
يرسل رسالة نصية	مضحك ....
ينضم	وحيد ....

Expressions & Prepositions

تحفظ وعدها	متوتر قليلا بشان ....
يعمل خطط	يؤدي بشكل جيد ....
يقضي وقت مع	لا تقلق ! ....
يبدو جيدا !	يستمتع ....
يشعر بالسعادة و الاندماج	يبحث عن ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يخسر	....	....
.... يخبر	....	....
.... يقابل	....	....
.... يحضر	....	....
.... يفهم	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... to the school is on the left side of the building.
   a. room b. entrance c. office d. class
2. Is this a .... diamond or a fake one?
   a. bad b. false c. real d. wrong
3. Don't buy that .... watch; it's not worth the money.
   a. fake b. good c. real d. right
4. I .... about you and your feelings.
   a. careful b. carefully c. care d. look
5. I felt .... when they didn't invite me to the party.
   a. interested b. boring c. outline d. left out
6. Please .... your voice down in the library.
   a. keep b. have c. turn d. put
7. Let's .... some fruits in our diet.
   a. do b. leave c. include d. cook
8. I'm afraid .... spiders. I don't like them at all.
   a. of b. at c. about d. from
9. It is normal to feel .... before a job interview.
   a. happy b. nervous c. sad d. sorry
10. He got ....when she broke his phone.
    a. sorry b. happy c. angry d. excited
11. I'm feeling .... about the bad news we hear every day.
    a. upset b. delighted c. happy d. afraid

12. She's ________ about her sick mother.

a. excited b. pleased c. happy d. worried

13. I'm ________ to go on vacation. I always dreamed of it.

a. worried b. excited c. afraid d. nervous

14. I'm ________ with your work.

a. worried b. online c. pleased d. airline

15. I was ________ to see you here.

a. upset b. sad c. surprised d. some

16. I'm a ________ tired. I can't go to work today.

a. few b. bit c. many d. some

17. She gave a great ________ about climate change.

a. presentation b. party c. outline d. impression

18. There is a good ________ on TV. tonight. Let's watch it.

a. presentation b. class c. movie d. action

19. She ________ badly on the test.

a. did b. made c. had d. could

20. Don't ________! Everything will be okay.

a. hurry b. worry c. sorry d. bury

21. I ________ eat dinner at 7 PM tonight.

a. am b. was c. will d. have

22. I ________ to visit my grandparents tomorrow.

a. was going b. going c. am going d. will

23. He is saving. He ________ a new car next month.

a. is going to buy b. will buy c. is buying d. has bought

24. I think It ________ later this afternoon.

a. rains b. will rain

c. is going to rain d. is raining

25. She ________ for the exam all weekend as she planned.

a. will study b. is going to study c. is studying d. studies

26. Hurry up! The movie ---------- in 10 minutes.

a. will be started b. will start c. started d. has started

27. We ---------- be home by 10 PM.

a. are b. will c. have d. were

28. They have decided that they ---------- travel to Europe this summer.

a. am going to b. going to c. are going to d. will

29. My younger brother ---------- be 7 next April.

a. is going to b. going to c. are going to d. will

30. If you don't study hard, you ---------- with us on the next journey.

a. aren't coming b. won't come

c. aren't going to come d. don't come

31. She promised that she ---------- her homework soon.

a. will finish b. is going to finish c. is finishing d. finishes

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

upset - excited - included - posted - cared

The school was holding a talent show. Sarah was ❶ ------------ to participate and had practiced her singing for weeks. However, when the list of performers was ❷ ------------, she felt ❸ ------------. Her name was left out. Sarah was afraid to ask why and worried that her singing wasn't good enough. She felt nervous and angry that she wasn't ❹ ------------.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. She has decided that she ------------ (learn) how to play the piano.
2. He ------------ (fix) the broken window. It's decided.
3. If she passes the exam, she ------------ (be) very happy.
4. I ------------ (go) to the gym tomorrow. This is my intention.
5. She is studying hard. She ------------ (get) high marks.
6. I ------------ (call) you later. I promise.
7. They ------------ (visit) their grandparents this weekend.

8. He ___________ (cook) dinner tonight. It's his plan.

9. A: I'm moving house tomorrow. B: I ___________ (come) and help you.

10. A: I'm cold. B: I ___________ (turn on) the fire.

11. A: There's someone at the door. B: I ___________ (get) it.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Ola and Nour are talking about studying together.

Ola : Shall we study English tomorrow?

Nour : I'm sorry. I can't.

Ola : ❶ ____________________________________ are you saying that?

Nour : As I'm going to hospital to visit my ill cousin Mai.

Ola : Hospital! Why is she. ❷ ____________________________________?

Nour : She had an ❸ ____________________________________.

Ola : When did that accident happen?

Nour : It was ❹ ____________________________________.

Ola : I hope she will be all right soon.

Nour : Thank you.

Lessons 3 & 4

رسالة	هدف جيد / غرض محبب ....
موعد	ينشر الخبر (الموضوع) ....
تمرين	التمويل الجماعي ....
صيدلية	جمهور ....
رابط	يعرض/يقدم ....
شركة	يدعم/يساعد ....
لسوء الحظ	يجمع (مال) ....
قائمة	يحدث فارق ....
يستخدم	كلية ....
يشارك	اكثر مراعاة للبيئة ....
يروج لـ	منشور/يشارك منشور ....
يذكر	فكرة ....
تسرع/يسرع	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي ....

Expressions & Prepositions

يشعر بالفخر	يجمع الناس سويا ....
نصل هناك	في كل أنحاء المدينة ....
يستحق مكافأة/عزومة	يشكر على ....
يبدو رائعا	يصمم صفحة لـ.... ....
لن يفوتنا شيئ	يتحدث عن ....
لديه تأثير مهم على	يقرر ان ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يسمع	....	....
يعطي	....	....
يشتري	....	....
ينمو	....	....
يشعر	....	....
ينشر	....	....
يكتب	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Crowdfunding is a great way to .... money for important projectsa.
   a. raise b. rise c. spend d. steal
2. I would like to offer my help and ....for your new project.
   a. link b. group c. tool d. support
3. Going to ....is a significant step towards a brighter future.
   a. museum b. college c. home d. temple
4. Let's donate for a good ....like helping homeless animals.
   a. link b. cause c. tool d. support
5. They ....over $10,000 for the charity.
   a. rose b. spread c. raised d. helped
6. Let's create a .... on social media to promote our cause.
   a. page b. book c. tool d. lesson
7. We can .... a difference in the world by helping others.
   a. do b. make c. have d. pay
8. The news .... quickly through social media.
   a. went b. published c. spread d. supported
9. Let's work towards a .... future.
   a. greener b. colder c. worse d. further
10. We should support .... businesses.
    a. social b. local c. tool d. support
11. The school's science project won an award.
    a. link b. group c. tool d. support
12. She .... a picture of the event on the Facebook.
    a. linked b. posted c. tool d. support
13. Social media is a powerful .... for communication.
    a. link b. group c. tool d. street
14. She ....her story on social media.
    a. spent b. shared c. raised d. pasted
15. I'm ....to be a part of this wonderful community.
    a. surprised b. upset c. nervous d. proud
16. Please, ...the word about the next charity event.
    a. say b. get c. talk d. spread

17. They used crowdfunding to raise money for their new business.
    a. link b. group c. tool d. support
18. She _________ to volunteer at the local shelter.
    a. talked b. offered c. helped d. supported
19. Climate change has an important _________ on our planet.
    a. help b. effect c. cause d. rain
20. To make our city greener, they _________ more trees in the park.
    a. raised b. planted c. painted d. helped
21. We _________ for the airport at 5 AM tomorrow.
    a. leave b. are leaving c. left d. would leave
22. They _________ with the client at 2 PM.
    a. meeting b. meet c. are meeting d. going to meet
23. I _________ the doctor this afternoon as arranged.
    a. am seeing b. seeing c. will see d. saw
24. We _________ for vacation next month.
    a. leaving b. leave c. would leave d. are leaving
25. I _________ a meeting next week. Everything was prepared.
    a. will attend b. am attending c. attend d. going to attend
26. We _________ a picnic this weekend. Would you like to come?
    a. are having b. have c. will have d. going to have
27. I _________ my friends for coffee tomorrow.
    a. meet b. am meeting c. meeting d. was meeting
28. They _________ to a new house next month.
    a. are moving b. moving c. move d. moved
29. We _________ tennis later this afternoon.
    a. played b. play c. going to play d. are playing
30. She _________ a party next weekend. She invited her friends.
    a. will have b. has c. is having d. was having
31. I _________ the doctor for a check-up tomorrow morning.
    a. will see b. am seeing c. seeing d. was seeing
32. We _________ dinner at new restaurant this Sunday.
    a. going to have b. having c. will have d. are having
33. She _________ for her exams all weekend.
    a. studies b. is studying c. studying d. is studied

34. The school .... a field trip to the zoo next Wednesday.

    a. is organizing   b. organizes   c. organized   d. organizing

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

page - make - park - tool - greener

A group of friends wanted to ❶ .... a difference in their community. They decided to start a local project to make their town ❷ .... They planned to plant trees in the local ❸ .... To raise money for the project, they decided to use crowdfunding. They created a ❹ .... online and posted it on social media to spread the word. Many people donated, and they successfully raised enough money to plant a lot of trees.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I .... (meet) my friends for dinner tomorrow evening.
2. We .... (visit) the museum next week.
3. She .... (have) a party on Saturday.
4. They .... (travel) to Spain next month.
5. He .... (play) tennis with his brother tomorrow afternoon.
6. My parents .... (go) to a concert this weekend.
7. The band .... (perform) at the festival next Friday.
8. We .... (take) a cooking class next Tuesday.
9. He .... (fly) to New York for a business trip tomorrow.
10. They .... (move) into their new house next week.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar meets a Japanese tourist.

Omar : Welcome to Egypt. Can you speak English?

Tourist : Yes. I can.

Omar : ❶ .... do you come from?

Tourist : I come from Japan.

Omar : How ❷ .... will you stay here?

Tourist : I will stay here for two weeks.

Omar : Is this your first visit to Egypt?

Tourist : Yes, of ❸ ....

Omar : What places will you visit here in Egypt?.

Tourist : I will visit ❹ ....

Omar : Have a nice stay in Egypt.

Tourist : Thank you very much.

lessons 5 & 6

تحدي	قارب ....
الجمال	يشارك ....
تحديثات	مغامر ....
تجربة	ودود ....
قرار	شجاع ....
بمهارة	السلام ....
مريض	خلفية/بيئة ....
الشجاعة	يخدع ....
قوي	خادم هارب ....
خاص	مغامرة ....
الامان	خجول ....
مخاطر	شغوف ....
يموت	سيرة ذاتية ....
يكسب مالا	اصلي ....
يتصرف	حياة مهنية ....
يحتفل	صحفي ....
يطفو	قائد السفينة او الطائرة ....
ينشر (كتاب مثلا)	مخترع ....
الادب	ملخص ....
	الصداقة ....

Expressions & Prepositions

يستمتع بجمال الطبيعة	ينتقل/يعزل ....
يشعر بالارتياح	في سن ....
يبقى على اتصال بـ	باحثا عن ....
يظهر الاهتمام	يبقى متصلا بـ ....
يتشارك الصور	يطفو على ....
يجري مكالمة فيديو	يعتمد على ....
يكون صداقات جديدة	وجه لوجة ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يغادر	....	....
.... يقابل	....	....
.... يصبح	....	....
.... يزداد/ينمو	....	....
.... يفهم	....	....
.... يشعر	....	....
.... يوضح/يعرض	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Friendship is compared to a.......... in the passage.
   a. destination b. journey c. lesson d. memory
2. Friends offer .... and understanding to each other?
   a. money b. gifts
   c. encouragement d. nothing
3. Friendship can make us...........
   a. selfish. b. mean. c. better. d. boring.

B: Listen and complete:

4. We can learn new things and .... by spending time with friends.
5. Friendship can change us for the ....
6. Friendship can teach us empathy, compassion, and the importance of ....

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is the art of written work.
   a. English b. Adventure c. Literature d. Biology
2. A ....is a small, flat boat made from logs tied together.
   a. ship b. raft c. tool d. train

3. Let's _________ our ideas with each other.

a. divide b. do c. share d. mail

4. All countries want to live in _________. No one wants war.

a. risk b. adventure c. fight d. peace

5. This international company has employees from different cultural_________

a. countries b. backgrounds c. backbones d. media

6. He _________ me into believing his story.

a. lied b. shared c. understood d. tricked

7. This is a / an _________ painting. It is very expensive.

a. original b. terrible c. fake d. false

8. This dress was made of good_________. It was made of silk.

a. subject b. plastic c. tool d. material

9. Sorry, I'm busy right now. I'll speak to you _________.

a. latter b. later c. late d. lately

10. They have _________opinions on the matter.

a. differ b. difference c. differently d. different

11. She is a skilled_________. She can fly any kind of planes

a. driver b. pilot c. teacher d. scientist

12. She has a successful _________as a lawyer.

a. career b. adventure c. literature d. work

13. He works as a _________for a good newspaper.

a. scientist b. journalist c. dentist d. pianist

14. We listened to some _________music. It was fantastic.

a. adventurous b. noisy c. classical d. original

15. He is very smart. He _________solved the puzzle.

a. badly b. cleverly c. lately d. hardly

16. Our _________is the most important thing.

a. safety b. adventure c. challenge d. sense

17. Let's write a .... of the story.

a. lesson b. group c. summary d. mail

18. Thomas Addison was a famous......... He made many new things.

a. singer b. inventor c. teacher d. player

19. .... the summer, we often go to the beach.

a. Although b. During c. When d. While

20. Cats have a very good .... of hearing.

a. scene b. sense c. job d. trick

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

escaped- raft - enjoy - bring - background

Literature can ❶ .... people closer together, regardless of their ❷ .... For example, the classic adventure story of "The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn" shares the story of an ❸ .... servant who tricks his way to freedom on a ❹ .... down the Mississippi River. This story, and many others in literature, show us that even though our backgrounds and careers may be different, we can all enjoy and learn from the same stories.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Malak is asking Shams about her mother.

Malak : Good morning Shams. How are you?

Shams : Good morning Malak. Fine, thank you

Malak : What's your mother's ❶ ...., Shams?

Shams : She's a doctor.

Malak : ❷ .... does she work?

Shams : At El Sheffa hospital in New Cairo.

Malak : Is it far from your house?

Shams : Yes, it ❸ .... far.

Malak : How does you mother go to work?

Shams : She goes by ❹ ....

Review on Unit 10 (The online generation)

Lessons 1 & 2

الصفحة الرئيسية	يرسل طلبات صداقة ....
اقتراح	يغير الاعدادات ....
التسوق الإلكتروني	يرفع فيديو ....
إعلان	الخوارزميات ....
الطاقة المتجددة	خيال علمي ....
هائل /ضخم	التعلم الألي ....
معتاد/طبيعي	خاص ....
فظيع/رهيب	يخصص ....
مهتم	جيل من الناس ....
تعبيرات (الوجه)	بحث ....
يُنزل من	مراهق ....
يُحمل إلى	تطبيق ....
ينقر على	تكنولوجيا ....
يلاحظ	نظام ....
يتسوق	مهمة/وظيفة ....
منصة البث	عروض تلفزيونية ....
ينظر الى شاشة	بيانات/معطيات ....
	لديه حساب ....

Expressions & Prepositions

اعلان ل	يتصل بالإنترنت ....
قدر من الوقت	يقوم بأداء الواجب ....
يترك/يضع الهاتف	يتلقى رسالة ....
من أجل تمشية	يتخذ قرار ....
يطفى	يؤدي مهام ....
يخرج من مكان (للنزهة)	يحل مشكلة ....
في المستقبل	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يرسل	....	....
.... يوضح/يبين	....	....
.... يأتي	....	....
.... يشتري	....	....
.... يفهم	....	....
.... يعطي	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The internet is terrible! I want to .... photos of my birthday to my account but I can't.
   a. download b. upload c. load d. test
2. My mom says I shouldn't .... at my screen for more than an hour at a time.
   a. look b. see c. sleep d. eat
3. Haneen's account on Facebook is ...., not public.
   a. usual b. special c. usually d. private
4. .... help computers follow rules to do tasks quickly.
   a. Algorithms b. Headphones c. Mice d. Buttons
5. When teachers use technology, students are more interested .... learning.
   a. on b. in c. at d. to
6. Plants .... if they don't get enough water.
   a. would die b. die c. dies d. died
7. What .... if you leave ice in the sun?
   a. happening b. happened c. happens d. happen
8. If students .... understand something, teachers help them.
   a. doesn't b. won't c. didn't d. don't

9. You get four ---------- you add two and two.
   a. where b. what c. how d. when
10. If you ---------- much time playing, you feel really tired.
   a. spent b. spend c. spending d. spends

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you stay online too long, your eyes ------------ (hurts).
2. I go to bed early if it ------------ (be) a school night.
3. If I stay out late, I always ------------ (got) a taxi home.
4. Water ------------ (boil) if you heat it to 100 degrees Celsius.
5. What ------------ (you / do) if you are cold?

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Ahmed and Eman are talking about friend requests

Ahmed : What are you doing, Eman?
Eman : I am ❶ -- my social media.
Ahmed : Do you have an ❷ -- on Facebook?
Eman : Yes, I have many friends ❸ -- .
Ahmed : Do you know all of them?
Eman : Not all of them!
Ahmed : You shouldn't ❹ ------------------------------ friends on Facebook with people you don't know.

lessons 3 & 4

بين	قيمة ....
رفاهية/سعادة	المحاسِن/المميزات ....
نسخة	مدمن على ....
اتخاذ القرار	المساوئ/العيوب ....
منظم	يقيم/يقدِّر ....
مهارة	يفوق فى الاهمية/يرجح ....
تأثير	سيئ/فظيع ....
مادة كيماوية	طبقاً ل/تبعا ل ....
يطلق/يحرر	عادة ....
يبدو	دراسة/يدرس ....
يتبع	تفاصيل ....
يُضيف	رأسى ....
	موقف ....

Expressions & Prepositions

يفكر بشأن	يلتقط صور ....
فى موقف	يتخذ قرار ....
مدمن على	يرسم جدول بيانى ....
على سبيل المثال	يتخذ الإجراء (القرار) ....
مميزات و عيوب	يدون ملاحظات على ....
اقدم قليلا	يركز على ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يفهم	....	....
يعطى	....	....
ياخذ/ يلتقط	....	....
يفكر	....	....
يغادر	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To know the total number, we have to .... the values together.
   a. feed b. meet c. add d. stir
2. Write the pros in one .... and the cons in the other one.
   a. obelisk b. column c. needle d. wall
3. To .... means to be more important than something.
   a. way b. wait c. outweigh d. weight
4. My phone is the same .... my friends' phones.
   a. more b. than c. so d. as
5. Using the internet a lot has a negative effect on teenagers' ....
   a. brains b. feet c. arms d. noses
6. We .... help them if they want our help.
   a. would b. do c. will d. did
7. We won't .... there in time of we don't leave now.
   a. gets b. got c. getting d. get
8. .... get a good grade. if I do my homework well?
   a. Will I b. I will c. Will d. Does I
9. If you .... a birthday party, you will get many presents.
   a. having b. has c. had d. have
10. Where .... you go if you have free time?
   a. will b. does c. did d. would

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

make - outweigh - cons - take - decision

I want to buy a new phone next week so I use a chart of pros and (1) .... to help me make my (2) ....easily. The phone looks great, but it is very expensive. I can (3) .... good photos with it. The pros (4) .... the cons so I've decided to buy it.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If you decide to have a party, ... (will tell) me.
2. If my father.......... (will arrive) tomorrow, I will meet him.
3. She will do sports if she .... (felt) better.
4. If you .... (not / be) careful, you will hurt yourself.
5. If it .... (rain), I will take my umbrella.

Lessons 5 & 6

التكنولوجيا الرقمية	حدث (هام) ....
راحة	عجز/إعاقة ....
ملف التعريف الشخصي	مرض ....
أبرز وأهم جزء	المباراة النهائية ....
ضد	مقهي ....
يضحك	إنجاز ....
يحدث	الفريق الأوليمبي ....
يعبر	موجز/ملخص ....
يرد	بطل رياضي ....
يقارن	مندهش ....
يسترخي	رسائل ....
يدرك	عادات رقمية ....

Expressions & Prepositions

تلعب ضد	تقوم بأشياء كثيرة ....
يتحدث بشأن	يعطي قسطًا من الراحة ....
يفكر بشأن	يستخدم كرسي متحرك ....
لمدة طويلة	ذو إعاقة ....
يقارن بـ	يحدد ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يدع	....	....
.... يضرب/يصدم	....	....
.... يفوز	....	....
.... يخبر	....	....
.... يخسر	....	....
.... يفكر	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The concert was the best .... of the year.
   a. event b. accident c. incident d. most
2. On a .... day, Rana was crossing the road when a car hit her.
   a. good b. nice c. terrible d. great
3. I couldn't walk after I had a .... when I was child.
   a. sadness b. happiness c. sickness d. meal
4. Zamalek won the .... match. They got the cup.
   a. first b. second c. final d. shortest
5. If you want to play tennis, don't .... your wheelchair stop you.
   a. let b. set c. put d. cut
6. A/An .... means something that makes it difficult for someone to do things.
   a. ability b. flexibility c. nobility d. disability
7. Mesk updated her .... with a new picture.
   a. file b. profile c. fact file d. face
8. I realized that my digital habits are .... good.
   a. quiet b. quit c. quite d. queen
9. I shouldn't compare myself .... others online.
   a. off b. of c. into d. to

10. I can go to the club .... the weekends.

a. in b. on c. about d. next

2 Complete the following dialogue:

Omar and Ali are taking about digital habits.

Omar : Can I ask you some questions?

Ali : Yes, you can.

Omar : Do you have any ❶ .... habits?

Ali : Yes, I have. ❷ .... about you?

Omar : I always look at my screen for too long.

Ali : You should give your eyes some ❸ ....

Omar : What's your worst digital habit?

Ali : Oh! I ❹ .... myself to others online.

Test on Units 9&10

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Mona is my .... sister.
   a. smaller b. little c. older d. shorter
2. She loves ....
   a. tennis b. table tennis c. handball d. volleyball
3. Mona showed me how to hold the ....
   a. ball b. table c. gloves d. bat

B: Listen and complete:

4. I hold the bat in my .... hand.
5. I threw the ball into the ....
6. If I hit the ball, it went into the ....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to download an .... to help me with my homework.
   a. map b. app c. notebook d. screen

2. Social media is a powerful tool to .... the word.

a. predict b. damage c. spread d. reduce

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

growth - reducing - population - Construction - facilities

There's a hospital, a swimming pool, and other (1) .... in our town. It has got a (2) .... of 21,000 people and it is in the countryside so there are lots of beautiful green spaces. The town is getting bigger and there's a lot of (3) .... happening at the moment. (4) .... will be great for the town but we need good planning so they don't build on all the green spaces.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Long ago, people could only walk or travel on boats, donkeys, horses or camels. Then people invented bicycles and later cars, trains and planes. In the future, we will have small electric cars. **They** will be easy to drive in traffic. These cars won't use petrol. They will use electricity, so they will be **better** for the environment. Now a lot of cities have too many cars. These cities will build metro lines, so people will be able to get around the cities quickly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**They**" refers to ....

a. people b. bicycles c. boats d. small electric cars

2. Electric cars will be to drive in traffic ....

a. hard b. easy c. dangerous d. terrible

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea in the passage?

....

4. How could people travel long ago?

....

5. Why will electric cars be better for the environment?

....

6. What does the underlined word "better" refer to?

....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Look at these clouds, it .... rain.

   a. is going   b. raining   c. is going to   d. won't

2. If she .... tired, she goes to bed.

   a. felt   b. feels   c. feel   d. feeling

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3. If she .... (will have) a problem, I'll help her.
4. We .... (have) a party tomorrow.
5. I will .... (am) thirteen years old next month.
6. If water boils, it .... (turn) into steam.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Reem and Dalia are talking about Dalia's cousin.

Dalia : This is a photo of my cousin.

Reem : ❶ .... is her name?

Dalia : Her name is Aisha.

Reem : How ❷ .... is she?

Dalia : She is 13 years old.

Reem : Where does she live?

Dalia : She ❸ .... in Cairo

Reem : What's her favorite food?

Dalia : She likes ❹ ....

Reem : Does she go to a prep school?

Dalia : Yes, she does.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your good and bad digital habits"

....

....

....

....

Review on Unit 11 (Clean transportation)

lessons ① & ②

رحلة طويلة	مركبة كهربائية ....
موقف القطار أو الحافلة	محطة شحن ....
محطة اتوبيس	وقود صديق للبيئة ....
يزود / يمد	خدمة سريعة ....
يقلل	رصيف (في محطة قطار) ....
ينتج	سيد (سادة) ....
يدمر	مزود الكهرباء ....
بيان / اعلان	جدول مواعيد ....
ممر (حارة) الدراجات	طاقة ....
مغادرة	كهربي ....
جهة الوصول	غاز ....
النقل / المواصلات	حل ....
وقود	أحد الاقارب ....
	مطار ....

Expressions & Prepositions

ضار لـ	يحرق وقود ....
فى قطار ليلي	يقود سيارة ....
يصل الى	يدمر البيئة ....
يأتي من	يستغرق حوالي ....
على جانب الـ	يسبب مشاكل صحية ....
	يتجول ....

Unit 11 Clean transportation

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يغادر	....	....
.... يأخذ/يستغرق	....	....
.... يقود دراجة	....	....
.... يحرق/يحترق	....	....
.... يقود سيارة	....	....
.... يقصد/ يعني	....	....
.... يكتشف	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We need to find a more sustainable form of ---------.
   a. apartment b. green spaces c. transportation d. information
2. Electric --------- can reduce air pollution.
   a. vehicles b. powder c. furniture d. advice
3. Clean --------- sources, like solar power, are becoming more common.
   a. cloud b. tool c. tower d. fuel
4. The city is adding more --------- to encourage cycling.
   a. bike lanes b. landscapes c. baths d. traffic
5. --------- can be a fun and social experience.
   a. Movies b. Jokes c. Carpooling d. Stories
6. --------- is generated from various sources, such as coal and natural gas.
   a. Journey b. Electricity
   c. Announcement d. Transportation
7. The train arrived at --------- number 10.
   a. platform b. stop c. station d. pavement
8. --------- from cars and factories pollute the air.
   a. Population b. Transportation c. Emissions d. Directions
9. The electricity --------- was cut off so we used our phones to see in the dark.
   a. supply b. vehicle c. changing d. tools
10. I looked at the --------- to see when the train to Alexandria leaves.
    a. timetable b. platform c. station d. building
11. The concert --------- at 8 PM and ends at 11 PM.
    a. starts b. started c. start d. starting

12. The store opens at 9 a.m. and .... at 6 p.m..
   a. closed b. closing c. closes d. close
13. What time .... the library open? - It opens at 10.
   a. do b. does c. did d. will
14. Do the buses .... at this time?
   a. arriving b. arrived c. arrive d. arrived
15. The class......... at 5 p.m.
   a. begins b. begin c. beginning d. began

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The bus .... (arrive) at the station at 3 p.m.
2. It's 8:00 now. When does the next bus from Alexandria to Giza ..... (leaving)?
3. When........... (is) the theatre close?
4. The school starts at 9 a.m. and .... (finish) at 3 p.m.
5. The bank .... (opening) at 9 a.m. . We should be there at 8:30.
6. Which platform .... (do) the bus leave from?
7. This train is the express service and it .... (arriving) in two hours.
8. The underground........... (leave) at 8 a.m. tomorrow morning.
9. The meeting........... (does) at noon every Tuesday.
10. Which platform does the 11:00 bus to Cairo .... (leaves) from?

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

emissions - transportation - vehicles - reduce - population

Clean transportation is the future of the planet. It includes using ❶ .... and fuels that produce fewer harmful ❷ ....Electric vehicles, powered by clean electricity, are a main part of this shift. They ❸ .... air pollution and greenhouse gas emissions. Public ❹ .... like trains and buses can be more environmentally friendly than individual cars by choosing cleaner forms of transport.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Ziad and Fares are at the train station

Ziad : Excuse me, do you know when the next train to Cairo leaves?
Fares : Let me check the timetable. Ah, It leaves from ❶ .... at 10:30 a.m.
Ziad : Great, thanks. How long does the journey ❷ ....?
Fares : It usually takes about two ❸ ....
Ziad : Is it a direct train or do I need to change trains?
Fares : It's a direct train.
Ziad : Thanks a lot for your help.
Fares : You're welcome. Have a good ❹ ....!

lessons 3 & 4

يتنفس	موارد غذائية ....
يشحن	عبر الشارع ....
يولد	نفق ....
يستبدل	إلى الأمام مباشرة ....
يذكر	انعطف أول طريق يمين\يسار ....
ودود	النقل - المواصلات ....
مساحات خضراء	بوضوح ....
طريق دائري	اضافي ....
طاقة صديقة للبيئة	إيجابية المناخ ....
واصل السير	اعبر الطريق ....
ترتيب/امر	مركز رياضي ....
يستبدل	سائح ....
منشأت/مرافق/مباني	نموذجى ....
مميز	مخططون ....
ضوضاء	مسارات الجري ....
اتجاهات	يذكر ....
طاقة	مؤدب ....

Expressions & Prepositions

على اليمين/اليسار	يستدير يمينا ....
قادر على أن	يستدير يسارا ....
على الطريق الدائري	يربي حيوانات المزرعة ....
يعطى معلومات محددة	يعطى الاتجاهات ....
فى الحقيقة	يمارس تمارين ....
على الجانب الاخر	

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يقصد / يعني	....	....
.... يحفظ /يحافظ على/يربي	....	....
.... يسمع	....	....
.... يعطي	....	....
.... يبني	....	....
.... يزرع	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The map shows the .... to the city center.
   a. straight b. information c. directions d. transportation
2. We need to find new .... of energy.
   a. sources b. roads c. pollution d. baths
3. We'll take the .... road to avoid the city center traffic.
   a. direction b. street c. landscape d. ring
4. Solar and wind power are examples of......... energy.
   a. power b. green c. underground d. local
5. Water is a valuable natural.........
   a. resource b. furniture c. information d. energy
6. We need to find a more sustainable form of.........
   a. expression b. mention c. transportation d. travelling
7. Our bodies .... heat to stay warm.
   a. generate b. introduce c. include d. cause
8. The .... of exercise is well-known.
   a. emissions b. planners c. importance d. sports centers
9. The new cities will also have bike lanes and running ....
   a. rice b. paths c. voice d. bathe
10. In new cities, you won't hear any noise from cars or ....any dirty air.
    a. avoid b. cause c. harm d. breathe
11. We have a big family dinner ....Christmas.
    a. on b. at c. in d. for
12. .... weekdays, I don't have much free time.
    a. On b. With c. To d. In

13. .... 2020, I visited the Egyptian Museum.

a. For b. At c. Through d. In

14. We're celebrating my friend's birthday .... May 15th.

a. in b. at c. to d. on

15. Let's meet .... the third floor of the building.

a. to b. in c. on d. close

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ring - emissions - charging - produce - breathe

In new cities, no cars can go into the center of the cities, so you cannot hear any noise from cars or (1) .... any dirty air. People can only drive their cars on the (2) .... road that goes all around each city. Nobody can drive through the city. There will be (3) .... stations to help to charge electric vehicles. The cities will have bike lanes and running paths so that people can do exercise or travel around without producing any carbon (4) ....

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Let's meet .... (to) the bus stop after school.
2. .... (In) the weekend, I sometimes go camping.
3. The supermarket is .... (cross) the road from the school.
4. .... (On) January, many people go on winter vacations.
5. The sound system was excellent .... (to) the concert.
6. We never go to schools .... (in) Friday.
7. I want to go for a walk .... (on) the afternoon.
8. I'm looking out the window .... (by) a train.
9. The sun shines .... (near) the clouds.
10. The plane flew .... (along) the city.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

A tourist is asking Sofyan about the way to the Egyptian Museum

Tourist : Excuse me, can you help me?

Sofyan : Sure, what do you want?

Tourist : How can I get to the Egyptian (1) ....?

Sofyan : Go (2) .... ahead, then turn right. It is on the corner.

Tourist : How long does it take to get there?

Sofyan : It takes about 30 (3) .... on foot.

Tourist : I think I should take a taxi. Thank you.

Sofyan : I agree with you. (4) ....

Lessons 5 & 6

نسخة/صيغة	مقابلة ....
سعادة	مجلس ....
شائع/منتشر	فجأه ....
مساعد	معركة/شجار ....
عقيد (رتبة عسكرية)	يهتف/يهلل ....
نسخة/صيغة	يعبر ....
نصائح	غاضب ....
مقابلة	قريب/مجاور ....
يتجنب	آمن ....
ينظم	قرن ..١ عام ....
مقتطف	التشارك في ركوب السيارة ....
ركاب	مجانى/غير شاغر ....
طرق مزدحمة	خط سكة حديد ....
	متوقع ....

Expressions & Prepositions

في القطار	يمنع شخص من ....
حول العالم	يستقل القطار ....
في النهاية	مفيد لـ ....
يقرر أن	يعبر الكوبري ....
يقع في	يشعر بالأمان ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يسقط / يقع	....	....
.... يقابل	....	....
.... يخبر	....	....
.... يعرف	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I learned a new language .... a website.
   a. on b. to c. with d. since
2. On the .... roads, you need to follow the traffic rules.
   a. tall b. expensive c. busy d. useful
3. Drinking water is good .... your skin.
   a. at b. to c. in d. for
4. To achieve great things, you sometimes have to take a \ an ....
   a. excerpt b. risk c. plane d. staycation
5. Please, take care when you .... off the train.
   a. push b. wash c. take d. get
6. We should......... our ideas before writing.
   a. avoid b. organize c. give d. talk
7. The programmer .... a new app. It helped the company to develop.
   a. organized b. forgot c. created d. wrote
8. I .... to see them at the party.
   a. respected b. included c. expected d. reminded
9. The student presented a \ an .... from his essay.
   a. excerpt b. expression c. articles d. topics
10. The 21st .... is the age of technology.
    a. country b. years c. century d. floor
11. I bought a new smartphone. ....is too expensive.
    a. They b. He c. It d. She
12. The cat chased the two mice. It ate ....
    a. them b. they c. their d. theirs
13. My car is red. .... is made in Germany.
    a. She b. It c. He d. I

14. The articles are about a thief. ________ interesting.
   a. They are   b. It is   c. It was   d. They were
15. The dog barked at the mail carrier. It scared ________ away.
   a. hers   b. him   c. you   d. them

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

lanes - environment - vehicles - stations – busy

Electric vehicles are better for our planet than other cars, but we need more charging (1) __________ in our town so it's easier for people to use them. Traveling by bike is good for the (2) __________, but it can be dangerous on the (3) __________ roads in our town. The town should have bike (4) __________ on Ranking Street and School Road. When people feel safe enough to ride their bikes, they won't drive their cars so often.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Sarah baked a cake. She decorated __________ (her).
2. The movie was exciting. __________ (He) had a surprising ending.
3. The coffee was too hot. __________ (It's) burned my tongue.
4. The weather was terrible. __________ (They) was raining and windy.
5. Mrs Amany asked a question. __________ (It) wanted the students to answer it.
6. The child cried loudly. __________ (It) wanted my attention.
7. The old man could not walk well. __________ (It) used a wheelchair.
8. The girl sat quietly. __________ (You) was shy.
9. The sad boy often cried. __________ (She) felt lonely.
10. The friendly teacher made friends easily. __________ (It) was popular.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Raghad is reading an excerpt from a novel

Hajar : Hi! What are you doing?
Raghad : Hi! I am (1) ______________________________.
Hajar : What are you reading about?
Raghad : It is an (2) ______________________________ from a novel.
Hajar : What is its (3) ______________________________?
Raghad : It's "Around the World Eighty Days".
Hajar : Is it interesting?
Raghad : Yes, it (4) ______________________________.

Review on Unit 12 Sustainable tourism

Lessons ① & ②

خطوط جوية /رحلة طيران	سيء جدًا ....
جولة تمشية	صافي ....
ملاهي مائية	مذهل / مبهر ....
مركبة	منتجع ....
يقترح	حافلة مكوكية ....
يصف	مواقع أثرية ....
ينظم	منطاد الهواء الساخن ....
يحدد	مراجعة /نقد ....
يخطط أن	إجازة /عطلة ....
جولة	رحلة جوية ....
إيجابي	اهتمام /إثارة ....
سلبي	التلفريك ....
مركز تسوق	ركوب منطاد الهواء ....
سياحة مستدامة	يعطي وعد ....
مرشد	اجازة داخلية ....

Expressions & Prepositions

في نهاية الـ	يبحث (عن شيء حوله) ....
ينظم رحلات طيران	يتفق ان ....
يقضي إجازه داخلية	يقضي وقت في ....
يتكلم عن	يتعلم عن ....
يرغب في	على الشاطئ ....
يركب	مزيج من ....
يعرف /يكتشف	يأخذ أجازة ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يركب	....	....
.... يطير	....	....
.... يقضي	....	....
.... يتعلم	....	....
.... يذهب بعيدًا	....	....
.... يبني	....	....
.... يفهم	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... offers daily flights to many destinations around the world.
   a. railway station b. council c. airline d. charity
2. We'll cook delicious meals at home during our.........
   a. staycation b. picnic c. voyage d. trip
3. The walking .... included a visit to the old town.
   a. tower b. hiking c. race d. tour
4. The .... has a variety of water rides.
   a. zoo b. water park c. swimming pool d. forest
5. The .... ride is a bit scary for some people.
   a. cable car b. camping c. monkey d. floor
6. The .... is a great place to relax.
   a. curtain b. space c. carpet d. resort
7. The tour......... recommended visiting the museum.
   a. planning b. guide c. travel d. company
8. Can you......... the person in the photo?
   a. organize b. remind c. identify d. fly
9. The .... said the movie was excellent.
   a. review b. theatre c. charity d. planner
10. We want to go on a trip where you visit places of.........
    a. space b. environment c. business d. interest
11. I enjoy .... time with my family.
    a. spend b. spending c. to spend d. spends
12. I feel like .... pizza tonight.
    a. to eating b. eat c. to eat d. eating

13. I promise _________ you later.
    a. call b. to call c. to calling d. calling
14. I suggest _________ to the movies.
    a. to go b. go c. going d. to going
15. I love _________ scientific books.
    a. reads b. read c. to reading d. reading

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

historical - parks - staycation - path - cable car

I live in Galala City, and it's beautiful! Last year we didn't want to go away, so we had a (1) ___________! We went on a walking tour and saw the (2) ___________ sites. We saw the water (3) ___________ and the boats, as well as the new (4) ___________. It has views over the mountains and the Red Sea!

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Henry is considering ___________ (take) up a sport.
2. We decided ___________ (travel) to Paris next year.
3. We love ___________ (visits) different places around Egypt.
4. We all like ___________ (look) around museums.
5. Next year, we plan ___________ (stay) in Egypt again.
6. They couldn't get time off work, so we chose ___________ (stay) in Luxor.
7. I hope ___________ (go) there soon – it sounds interesting.
8. Our parents suggested ___________ (visit) some places we don't go to very often.
9. I started ___________ (learn) English in 2018.
10. He wants ___________ (learn) a new language.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Jasmine are talking about a visit to the Pyramids

Mona : Hi, Jasmine. How are you?
Jasmine : Hi, Mona. (1) ___________________________, thank you.
Mona : Did you visit the Pyramids?
Jasmine : Yes, I (2) ___________________________.
Mona : When did you visit them?
Jasmine : (3) ___________________________ year.
Mona : Was there (4) ___________________________ with you?
Jasmine : Yes, he told us lots of fascinating things about them.

lessons 3 & 4

مزدحم	نفايات/مخلفات ....
منافسة/مسابقة	مجتمع ....
يؤجر	الإقامة مع عائلة ....
يحل	متخصص/محترف ....
ينمي/يطور	مرن ....
يتلف/يدمر	طاقة شمسية ....
يسبب	صناعة السياحة ....
السياحة	زائر ....
مصادر طبيعية	مواد خام ....
مستدامة	بلاستك ....
فهم/وعي/معرفة	سلة قمامة ....
ثقافة	طازج ....
دفع (مال)	مالك ....
يستخدم مرة واحدة	سياحة بيئية ....
	سكان محليون ....

Expressions & Prepositions

في مقابل	يخطط رحلات ....
أسباب لـ	يتأكد ....
يطفئ الأنوار	لديه ذاكرة ....
يمارس هوايات	يحل مشكلة ....
حماية الكوكب	بالاضافة الى ....
من المهم أن	خطة لـ ....
يسبب مشكلات	يقوم بإقامة منزلية ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
يفكر/يعتقد	....	....
يتعلم	....	....
يرمي بعيدًا	....	....
يحضر/يجلب	....	....
ينمو/يزرع	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A\An .... is a trip where visitors stay in the home of another family.
   a. tourism b. store c. homestay d. journey
2. .... coffee cups are a major source of waste.
   a. Single-use b. Machine c. Equipment d. Wood
3. .... can create jobs for local people.
   a. Tour b. Natural resources c. Tourism d. Tourists
4. The sugar cane factory created a lot of ....
   a. waste b. population c. honey bee d. salt
5. Tourism professionals can plan .... which are better for the planet.
   a. vacations b. plastics c. airline d. devices
6. This furniture is made of wood from .... sources.
   a. plastic b. wool c. metal d. sustainable
7. Stop trying to treat yourself, and see a \ an ....
   a. guide b. professional c. doctors d. planner
8. We need to find a way to store solar......... for use even in the winter.
   a. energy b. device c. planes d. flights
9. The athletes were preparing for the.........
   a. path b. housework c. competition d. electricity
10. I need to be more......... with my timetable.
   a. flexible b. interesting c. boring d. surprised
11. I stopped......... two years ago. I no longer smoke.
   a. smoking b. to smoking c. smokes d. smoke
12. I stopped .... some milk on my way home.
   a. buy b. buying c. to buy d. to buying
13. He says he feels a lot better since he stopped .... so much bread.
   a. eats b. to eat c. eating d. to eating
14. I know it's difficult but try not......... about it too much.
   a. thinking b. to thinking c. think d. to think
15. Please, remember .... your appointment if you are unable to attend
   a. to cancel b. cancel c. to canceling d. canceling

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

waste - vacations - cause - flights - professionals

Many people enjoy traveling to different places. But when people travel, it can ❶ .... problems. Tourists want to visit the same place at the same time. This can make some famous places too busy. There can also be problems with ❷ ...., which is bad for the environment. Many ❸ .... in the tourist industry think about eco-tourism when they plan ❹ ....

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. There's no milk. I forgot .... (buy) more when I went to the supermarket .
2. They stopped at the petrol station .... (fill) the car up.
3. He'll never forget .... (leave) his daughter at nursery school for the first time.
4. You've got the keys. I remember........... (give) them to you in the café this morning
5. I've stopped........... (buy) the newspaper because now I read the news online.
6. Have you tried .... (turn) the computer off and on again?
7. I'll never forget .... (meet) you for the first time in this café.
8. He forgot .... (lock) the door when he went out.
9. You'll be OK. I remember........... (be) really nervous on my first day too!
10. I always forget .... (set) my alarm for Monday morning.

4 Complete the following dialogue:

Mustafa and Mahmoud are talking about homestays

Mustafa : Hello, Mahmoud. Do you know about homestays?

Mahmoud : Hello, Mustafa. Yes, I ❶ ....

Mustafa : Have you been on a ❷ ....?

Mahmoud : Yes, I have.

Mustafa : Do you know if any homes near you offer homestays to ❸ ....?

Mahmoud : Sure. There are many homes near.

Mustafa : How can I find a homestay?

Mahmoud : A good way to find a homestay is to read online ❹ ....

lessons 5 & 6

مطار	يفصل بين ....
سائح	لا يصدق ....
علامة استفهام	مسؤول / جدير بالثقة ....
بلا مساس / غير متأثر	فاصلة ....
موقع طبيعي جميل	نقطتان فوق بعضهما ....
يستكشف	موقع الكتروني ....
يتسوق	اعلان ....
يضر	حوض السمك ....
يسرع	تطبيق ....
يفقد	فسحة / استراحة ....
يتخلص من	سلة قمامة ....
كشك	طاقة ....
مفاجأة	تأثير ....
اثارة	دقيق / منضبط ....
الذكاء الاصطناعي	تنوع / تشكيلة ....
مصمَّم بواسطة الذكاء الاصطناعي	مدينة كيب تاون ....
....	طائرة ....
منظر طبيعي	غير ضار بالبيئة ....
دليل سياحي	نُقطة ....
	حافلة مكوكية ....

Expressions & Prepositions

مشهور بـ	يستغرق ساعات ....
يبتسم لـ	يقوم بالعمل الشاق ....
في أجازة أو عطلة	يبدو قلقا ....
على الهاتف	يمشي مارا بـ ....
يهتم بـ	يهدر الماء ....
تحسبا لـ	استراحة فى المدينة ....
يتعلم عن	يقضي وقت/يصرف مال ....

Conjugations of Irregular Verbs

تصريفات الأفعال الغير المنتظمة

Present	Past simple	Past Participle
.... يرتدي	....	....
.... يترك/يغادر	....	....
.... يوضح/يبين	....	....
.... يبيع	....	....
.... يقضي	....	....

Homework — Exercises on Speaking, Vocabulary & Grammar

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She is studying .... at university.
   a. England b. literature c. excitement d. lights
2. I clicked on the .... on a website by mistake.
   a. agreement b. achievement c. comment d. advertisement
3. We saw dolphins and other sea animals at the ....
   a. aquarium b. water park c. swimming pool d. planetarium
4. There is a \ an .... at the market selling Egyptian cheese.
   a. stool b. stall c. still d. style
5. .... is used in many different industries.
   a. UN b. AI c. TMS d. URL
6. The earthquake changed the.......... It damaged it.
   a. air b. water c. industry d. landscape
7. The .... gave me some useful tips for traveling. It is very useful.
   a. tour guide b. traveller c. guidebook d. leaves
8. The view from the mountain top was .... .I liked it very much.
   a. boring b. incredible c. frightened d. awful

9. The small village between the hills was a true beauty ....

a. spot   b. slide   c. ride   d. top

10. The government is .... for public services.

a. plans   b. good   c. incredible   d. responsible

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sustainable - cane - responsible - can - beauty

It's great to visit different places around the world, but it's also important to be a (1) .... tourist. There are lots of things that you can do to help make your vacation more (2) ....This is good for the planet, so it's good for you. This is simple: don't drop trash – ever! If you can't find a trash (3) ...., put things back in your bag until you find one. Remember to leave your favorite, untouched, (4) .... spot the way you found it.

3 Complete the following dialogue:

Magdy is asking Mustafa some questions.

Magdy : When were you born?

Mustafa : I was (1) .... in 2000.

Magdy : Where were you born?

Mustafa : I was (2) .... in Cairo.

Magdy : Do you (3) .... sports?

Mustafa : Yes, I do.

Magdy : What (4) .... of sports do you like?

Mustafa : I like swimming.

Test on Units 11&12

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. More and more towns and cities now have ---------.
   a. lakes b. airlines c. Niles d. bike lanes
2. --------- help lower carbon emissions.
   a. Carpooling b. Smoking c. Traveling d. Bike lanes
3. Find a friend or relative who wants to go to the same ---------.
   a. space b. place c. star d. sky

B: Listen and complete:

4. Bike lanes to make it for people to ride their bikes ---------.
5. If you really need to travel by car, try ---------.
6. Carpooling can reduce the number of cars on the roads by about ---------.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. **A:** We've seen some amazing things. **B:** You are right. Thank you to your AI ---------.
   a. PDF b. SMS c. app d. TV
2. The untouched landscape of National Park is famous for its natural ---------.
   a. beauty b. hobby c. healthy d. freely

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

supply - Electric - emissions - means - Electricity

Your vehicle needs to be either electric or use clean fuel. (1) ---------- vehicles are cars that you connect to the electricity (2) ---------- at a charging station and that gives the car the power it needs to move. Using electricity (3) ---------- that no dangerous carbon (4) ---------- come out of the car when you drive it. By 2030, there will be so many electric vehicles.These vehicles will use much less oil than they do now.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

We know that we need oxygen to breathe. We also know that trees breathe in carbon dioxide. We need to plant more trees to help stop pollution. About two percent of the earth is rainforests, but people cut down trees in rainforests every day. Two thirds of the earth's rainforests are not there anymore. And it's not just rainforests that are in danger. We cut down trees and plants all over the world, even in Egypt. Cutting down trees is too **harmful**. All people can help the environment when **they** plant trees. So, we should plant more trees.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ....
   a. people b. gases c. plants d. rainforests
2. The underlined word "**harmful**" means ....
   a. surprised b. wonderful c. sustainable d. damaging

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

   ....

4. What can we do about the problem of pollution?

   ....

5. What kind of gas do trees breathe in?

   ....

6. What do you think of planting trees? Why?

   ....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He's stopped .... Spanish classes and changed to English.
   a. taking b. take c. to take d. takes
2. We considered .... a new car.
   a. to buying b. buys c. buying d. to buy

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. He suggested .... (go) to the beach.
2. I want .... (avoid) talking about these topics.

3. He admitted .... (make) a mistake.

4. She had to stop halfway through the race .... (repair) the wheel on her bike.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ameer is asking Basel about his new smartphone.

Ameer : Your smartphone is very nice. Is it new?

Basel : Yes, (1) .... is.

Ameer : When did you buy it?

Basel : I bought it (2) .... week.

Ameer : How (3) .... is it?

Basel : It's L.E. 8,000.

Ameer : Oh! It's too (4) ....

Basel : I don't think it is expensive.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Being a responsible tourist"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

General tests on the Second Term

امتحانات عامة على الفصل الدراسى الثاني

Test 1

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. It is useful to .... new words.
   a. light b. night c. highlight d. fight
2. It is difficult to remember how to......... them.
   a. spill b. spell c. tell d. read
3. I was in grade......... last year.
   a. six b. eight c. seventeen d. seven

B: Listen and complete:

4. When you read a ...., it is useful to underline new words.
5. It is easy to remember the ....of the words.
6. I have some .... to help you learn.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. There are many .... in our town, like a hospital and a basketball court.
   a. similarities b. differences c. facilities d. meanings
2. Which .... does the train leave from?
   a. pavement b. platform c. sidewalk d. track

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

emissions - Taxis - passengers - streetcars - efficient

Trains, streetcars, and buses are much more eco-friendly than traditional cars or planes. ❶ ...., which run on the electricity, are a green and an ❷ .... way to travel. Like cars and trains, streetcars can carry a lot of ❸ ....at once, which greatly lowers the carbon ❹ .... per person.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

My name is Heba and I am in prep one. I recently went on a visit to the zoo, and it was so much fun! I saw all sorts of amazing animals, including lions, giraffes, and monkeys. My favorite part was seeing the elephants, because they were so big and **majestic**. I also saw a baby elephant, and **it** was so cute and playful. I also saw flamingos, and they were so colorful and graceful. The zoo was a great place to learn about all the different animals and see them up close. I can't wait to go back and see even more amazing creatures.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to a/an ....
   a. elephant b. lion c. zoo d. baby elephant
2. The underlined word "**majestic**" means ....
   a. awesome b. bad c. terrible d. horrible

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What was Heba's favorite part?

....

4. What was the zoo a great place for?

....

5. Why does Heba want to go back to the zoo?

....

6. What did Heba see there?

....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The match .... at 9 o'clock.
   a. starts b. will start c. end d. will end
2. While I .... the birds, they suddenly flew away.
   a. watching b. am watching c. was watching d. watches

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I promise I .... (call) you later.
2. That's the boy .... (who) father is a teacher at the school.

3. Where did you .... (went)?
4. I stopped .... (watch) that TV show last year- I don't think it is funny any more.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about their staycations.

Youssef : Did you enjoy having your staycation this year?

Salah : We were planning to ① .... Alexandria but we couldn't.

Youssef : We'll go to Marsa Alam. So I need your ② .... camera to take some photos.

Salah : I promise I will give it to you. ③ .... will you travel?

Youssef : Next week. I will stay there for one week.

Salah : The ④ .... there are amazing. Promise to send me some photos.

Youssef : Of course.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Green transportation"

Test 2

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. .... cars use both electricity and fuel.
   a. Bird b. Bread c. Hybrid d. Board
2. We have to use modern ways to help reduce........ emissions.
   a. carbon b. cartoon c. carton d. oxygen
3. For people who have to........, electric cars are green.
   a. dive b. drive c. five d. move

B: Listen and complete:

4. Electric cars are greener than .... cars.
5. Electric cars are .... with renewable energy.
6. Electric cars are even ....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mesk and Eman are .... They were born at the same time and have the same parents.
   a. brothers b. cousins c. twins d. men
2. .... is very bad for the environment.
   a. Cycling b. Driving cars c. Walking d. Biking

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

villages - planes - small - plans - driving

People started planning green cities for the future in Egypt in 2010. Today, there are many ❶ .... to build new green cities in Egypt. In fact, we call these new places cities, but most of them are ❷ .... places. They are more like ❸ ....than big cities like Cairo. The small places make it easier to travel around them without ❹ ....cars.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

In Zagazig, there is a brave community helper named Muhammed. He is a fire fighter. Every day, he puts on his shiny red helmet and jumps into his big red fire truck. When the alarm rings, he rushes to the fire station.

He slides down the pole and hops into the fire truck. He helps people in need. Muhammed wears a thick, yellow jacket to protect himself from the flames. He carries a hose to spray water on the fire and save the day. Sometimes, he even rescues cute kittens stuck in tall trees. Muhammed is a hero in Zagazig. Children wave and smile when they see him. He teaches them about fire safety.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Children ---------- Muhammed very much.
   a. love b. hate c. dislike d. kill
2. Muhammed works as a ----------
   a. volunteer b. firefighter c. teacher d. vet

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

----

4. What does Muhammed teach children in Zagazig?

----

5. When does he ruch to the fire station?

----

6. Why does he wear a yellow jacket?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The life in Egypt changed --------- the 2010s.
   a. on b. at c. in d. since
2. My dad suggested --------- a hi-air balloon ride.
   a. try b. trying c. tries d. tried

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Do you remember .... (take) lots of photos last time we went out?
2. If students don't understand, Will .... (help) them.
3. It was last summer .... (where) I learned to swim.
4. Rana .... (go) to the park and met her friends.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Farah and Asmaa are talking about shopping.

Farah : Are you going to go shopping tomorrow?

Asmaa : Yes. I am ❶ .... Reem at the shopping mall.

Farah : ❷ .... are you going to buy?

Asmaa : We are going to buy ❸ ....

Farah : Clothes! Can I ❹ .... too?

Asmaa : Sure. I'll text you tomorrow.

Farah : Thank you.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Digital habits"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 3

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. We spent a few hours picking up trash on ....
   a. Friday b. Monday c. Tuesday d. Sunday
2. Volunteers use special .... to pick up the trash.
   a. bags b. bins c. pins d. grabbers
3. The team .... gave us gloves and trash bags.
   a. readers b. leaders c. riders d. fighters

B: Listen and complete:

4. Some volunteers were .... like me.
5. Last month, I joined a weekend volunteer ....
6. We started .... each morning.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want to .... all the new words in the text in yellow so it's easy to see them.
   a. highlight b. delete c. eraser d. lighter
2. To .... means to make something clear or easy to understand.
   a. import b. expert c. explain d. exit

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

beads - rhythm - annoying - encouraged - in

Today, I spent the afternoon with my grandmother she showed me how to make a necklace from colored (1) .... The beads were very small and I kept dropping them which was (2) .... ! I wanted to give up but she (3) .... me to keep going. As I continued, I found a (4) .... and started to enjoy it.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Today, I spent the afternoon with Donia. Donia is my older sister who loves sport. So today, she was teaching me how to play table tennis. I was really excited because it looks fun and I wanted to learn. First, Donia showed me how to hold the bat in my right hand. Then, she showed me how to throw the ball into the air with my left hand and hit it with my bat. At first, I couldn't hit the ball. If I hit the ball, it went into the net. I was really **upset** but Donia told me to keep trying. She was very kind and she didn't get angry. She kept showing me what to do.

After a while, I actually hit the ball over the net! I was so pleased! I practiced again and I got better. Then Donia said "Ok, I'll hit the ball to you and now you hit it back to me." After a while, we were hitting the ball to each other. I missed the ball sometimes but it was fine. In the end, I could play a game. Donia won the game of course but that didn't matter. Today was a great day!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Donia told her sister to keep ....
   a. tiring b. tired c. trying d. sleeping
2. The underlined word "**upset**" means ....
   a. pleased b. unhappy c. happy d. glad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of sport is in the text?

....

4. Who loves sports?

....

5. Do you think Donia is kind? Why / Why not?

....

6. What is the passage about?

....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We love .... different places.
   a. visit b. visits c. to visit d. to visiting

2. I ________ movies on TV all day yesterday.

a. watch b. watching c. watches d. was catching

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The train to Aswan __________ (not) leave at 1:30.
2. We will finish building the city __________ (on) 2028.
3. It is difficult to understand people __________ (which) talk too fast.
4. We __________ (have) dinner when we heard someone outside.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ayman and Ali are worried about exams.

Ayman : You look very nervous!

Ali : Yes. I'm a bit nervous about my English ❶ ______________________.

Ayman : I'm good at English. Can I ❷ ______________________ you?

Ali : Sure. I am bad at spelling the new ❸ ______________________.

Ayman : You can remind yourself by ❹ ______________________ them to other words.

Ali : That's a great way. Thank you!

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to help our environment"

Test 4

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. One brain _________ can connect with up to 10.000 others.

   a. cell b. sell c. tell d. stole

2. Sleep is very important for_________ .

   a. teaching b. studying c. learning d. leaning

3. People believed the brain turn_________ when we slept.

   a. of b. off c. on d. out

B: Listen and complete:

4. Some parts of the brain stay _________ during sleep.

5. Sleep helps us _________ better.

6. When we _________ our brains make new brain cells.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Making a necklace using beads and string taught me _________.

   a. patience b. sickness c. illness d. appearance

2. China has the largest _________ in the world.

   a. information b. pollution c. population d. invention

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

on - artifacts - history - at - displays

Last week, I volunteered at the museum with my school history club. I love ❶ ________ and helping people! on Saturday, we arrived ❷ ________ 8:00 a.m. before the museum opened, and helped make some museum ❸ ________ . I helped some younger kids draw pictures of their favorite ❹ ________.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

The guard went through carriage after carriage asking if there was a doctor on the train. It was midnight and the passengers were all asleep. The train was traveling quickly. The guard found **one** at last and went to the driver's cabin. There, the doctor saw the driver of the train lying on the floor. When he examined him, he found that he was very ill and that he had to be taken to hospital soon. The train was still at full speed. Nobody knew how to stop the train. All those who were in the driver's cabin were afraid. The doctor examined the driver again and tried to make him tell them how to stop the train but he couldn't. At last, the guard used the wireless telephone and called the main line station. After a short time, the train was stopped at a small village and an ambulance took the driver to the hospital.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The doctor tried to make the driver tell them how to ---------- the train.
   a. drive b. run c. stop d. find
2. The people in the driver's cabin were ----------.
   a. frightened b. pleased c. happy d. laughing

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What does the underlined word "**one**" refer to?

   ----
4. Why did the guard go through carriage after carriage?

   ----
5. In your opinion, who saved the passengers?

   ----
6. What took the driver to the hospital?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We went to the mall and --------- a present for our mon's birthday.
   a. buying b. were buying c. bought d. buy
2. I --------- Karim outside the movie theatre in 5 minutes.
   a. meet b. met c. am meet d. am meeting

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Abd El-Rhman is the boy .... (which) aunt is our doctor.
2. Ashraf .... (read) a book in the library when I saw him.
3. Reem .... (feel) unhappy if she doesn't spend enough time outdoors.
4. I saw Rewan dive .... (through) the pool.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Sarah and Heba are talking about digital habits.

Sarah : Can I ask you some questions?

Heba : Yes, you can.

Sarah : Do you have any ❶ .... habits?

Heba : Yes, I have. ❷ .... about you?

Sarah : I always look at my screen for too long.

Heba : You should give your eyes some ❸ ....

Sarah : What's your best digital habit?

Heba : I use AI to do my ❹ ....

E: Writing

8 Write an e-mail of 80 words to your friend Youssef to tell him about your next staycation. Your name is Reyad and your email address is reyad 11@gmail.com and your friend's email address is yousseff@gmail.com.

New Message

To : .... Cc Bcc

From : ....

Subject : ....

....

....

....

....

....

Send

Test 5

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Our work helps --------- the wildlife.
   a. connect b. protect c. collect d. project
2. The sun was still--------- .
   a. riding b. raising c. rising d. reading
3. We drove to the park in our school --------- .
   a. bus b. car c. taxi d. train

B: Listen and complete:

4. Our job was was to clean up the hiking --------- .
5. We were still picking up --------- at lunch time!
6. Our class spent an amazing day volunteering at a --------- park.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Don't --------- your father when he is working.
   a. brother b. bother c. weather d. feather
2. I feel --------- when something happens, and I didn't think it would happen.
   a. pleased b. worried c. happy d. surprised

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

lanes - breath - center - breathe - ring

The streets of the new cities will be quiet and clean. No cars can go into the ❶ --------- of the cities, So you won't hear any noise from cars or ❷ --------- any dirty air. People can only drive their cars on the ❸ --------- road that goes all around each city. The cities will have bike ❹ --------- and running paths.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A scientist visited our school today and we all asked her some questions. I asked her why the sky was blue. She said that it was because we see blue light from the sun. Mona asked her what clouds were made of. The scientist said that clouds were made of **tiny** pieces of ice and water. Leila then asked her how cold it got in the desert. She answered that it was sometimes 0°C or colder at night! Finally, Leila asked the scientist if we would grow vegetables in more land of the desert one day. She said that this was possible but the **it** would be very difficult because of the cold weather at night. It was an interesting lesson and we all learned a lot of interesting facts!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What do you think the word "**tiny**" means? ....
   a. very cold b. very big c. very small d. very heavy
2. What does the underlined word "**it**" refer to? ....
   a. seeing blue light b. learning facts
   c. growing vegetables d. asking questions

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Why does the sky not look blue at night?
   ....
4. Why do you think that it would be very difficult to grow vegetables in a lot more of the desert?
   ....
5. Do you think the students were happy or not? Why not?
   ....
6. What were the clouds made of?
   ....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Next year, we plan .... in Egypt again.
   a. to stayed b. stay c. to stay d. staying

2. What time does the next train ________ in Luxor?

a. stop   b. stops   c. stopped   d. stopping

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. If they want our help, we ________ (would) help them.
2. This is the blue scarf ________ (who) Arwa gave to her mother.
3. He usually ________ (playing) tennis on Saturday.
4. Look at those black clouds. There ________ (be) a storm soon.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Yara and Mona are talking about evening plans.

Yara : Are you free this evening?

Mona : I am going to ❶ ________ the final match between Zamalek and Al-Ahly.

Yara : What ❷ ________ does the match start?

Mona : The match ❸ ________ at nine o'clock.

Yara : Where will you watch the match?

Mona : I will watch the match at ❹ ________ with my family.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"The brain"

Test 6

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I read the children a --------- which they loved.

   a. novel b. poem c. story d. book

2. I love children so I was --------- .

   a. worried b. excited c. nervous d. scared

3. I volunteered at a day --------- centre for children.

   a. care b. car c. cure d. cat

B: Listen and complete:

4. I helped --------- toys and games.

5. I arrived --------- in the morning.

6. We sang some --------- and drew pictures.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I feel --------- when my mom doesn't answer her phone for a long time.

   a. pleased b. happy c. glad d. worried

2. They didn't invite her to the party so she was feeling very --------- .

   a. made out b. put out c. left out d. sent out

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

protect - damage - growing - farm - green

The cities are also special because the people who live there will put new trees into the ground when they cut trees down. They will make all their own food by (1) --------- fruit in the city and keeping (2) --------- animals there. When a city only uses the (3) --------- energy it makes, and the people grow their food. This means that they won't (4) --------- the Earth.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Man has a big brain. He can learn, think and speak. Scientists used to think that people are different from animals because they can think and learn. Now, **they** know that animals can learn; dogs, rats, birds and worms can learn. So scientists now understand that people are different because they can speak. Animals can make noises when they are afraid, angry or unhappy. Monkeys are our nearest cousins. They can understand some things more quickly than people, and one or two have learned a few words, but they still cannot join words to make sentences or choose their words to **express** the best meaning. They can never think about the past or the future. Man has been able to develop civilization because he has language. Language is a wonderful thing we do as we have got big brains.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The meaning of "**express**" is ___________.

a. go b. want c. say d. run

2. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to ___________.

a. scientists b. animals c. monkeys d. birds

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

----

4. Are people different from animals because they can think and learn? Why/Why not?

----

5. How are monkeys different from people?

----

6. What is wonderful about man? Why do you think so?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. You are the person _________ help I need the most.

a. who b. which c. whose d. where

2. The sun _________ in the morning.

a. rises b. rise c. rose d. am rising

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The school ___________ (who) you go to now is one of the best in the area.
2. Eman ___________ (was having) a cat called Lolo when she was a child.
3. Our parents suggested ___________ (visit) some places.
4. I ___________ (call) you when I get there.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Rodina is at the train station.

Rodina : I want a ticket to Luxor, please.

Clerk : Single or return?

Rodina : Return. Which (1) ______________________ does the train leave from?

Clerk : From platform 6.

Rodina : How (2) ______________________ does the journey take?

Clerk : It takes 14 hours.

Rodina : When does the train leave?

Clerk : It (3) ______________________ in ten minutes.

Rodina : Thank you very much.

Clerk : You are (4) ______________________ .

E: Writing

8 Write an e-mail of 80 words to your friend Mamdouh to tell him about clean transportation your name is Hanaa and your email address is hanaa@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is mamdouh@gmail.com.

New Message

To : .... Cc Bcc

From : ....

Subject : ....

Send

Test 7

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. You can still use .... transportation.
   a. clean b. kill c. cool d. cold
2. You can travel by train instead of by ....
   a. bus b. car c. bike d. cart
3. More cities have bike ....
   a. lions b. lines c. lanes d. letters

B: Listen and complete:

4. Carpooling can reduce the .... of cars on the roads.
5. It can help reduce .... emissions.
6. Find a friend who goes to the same .... as you.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An .... is a person who gives information to visitors.
   a. vet b. guide c. tourist d. teacher
2. My cousin Ibrahim sent me a friend ....
   a. deliver b. order c. request d. test

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

famous - tired - tiring - shuttlebus - guidebooks

Last year, my family and I decided to visit Cape Town in South Africa. It is (1) .... for amazing landscape, and the incredible Table Mountain. My mom bought some (2) .... When we arrived in Cape Town, we took a (3) .... from the airport to our hotel. It was lovely, but we were all (4) .... after the trip.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Last summer holiday, Ahmed decided to make a journey by train from Cairo to Alexandria. He reached the station about half an hour before the departure of the train. The station was very crowded. He stood on the line and bought a second class ticket. The train came at the right time and everybody tried to get in the train fast. When the train left the station, Ahmed looked outside to enjoy the beauty of nature. The train was running through green fields. There were wheat plants here and there. It was a wonderful scene. Inside the train, passengers were talking together. Others were reading newspapers and magazines. One passenger stood and began to read out a poem he had written. Passengers clapped their hands after he had finished. Ahmed can't forget that journey as it gave him much pleasure.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When the train came in the station, passengers ___________ .

a. read newspapers b. clapped their hands
c. tried to get in fast d. talked together

2. The underlined word "**others**" refers to ___________.

a. passengers b. newspapers
c. magazines d. fields

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

----

4. What did Ahmed decide to do last summer?

----

5. When did Ahmed arrive at the station?

----

6. Why did Ahmed look outside the train?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We love _________ different places.

a. visiting b. to visit c. a and b d. visits

2. The train ---------- at 7:35 p.m.

a. not leave b. leave c. doesn't leave d. won't leave

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We are going ------------ (over) the tunnel now. Every thing will go dark.
2. If you do your homework well, you ------------ (would) get a good grade.
3. ------------ (Do) you visiting your uncle tomorrow?
4. I am hungry. I ------------ (am eating) a sandwich.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali meets a tourist in the street.

Ali : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from?

Tourist : I am from ❶ ....

Ali : England! Is this your ❷ .... visit to Egypt?

Tourist : No, this is my second visit.

Ali : What ❸ .... did you visit?

Tourist : I visited the Pyramids, and the Cairo Tower.

Ali : How ❹ .... are you going to stay here?

Tourist : I am going to stay for 3 weeks.

Ali : Have a nice stay!

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Life in a city and life in a village"

Test 8

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. A group of .... from my class volunteered at a community.
   a. teachers b. desks c. students d. girls
2. Because of the hot summer, we .... the garden.
   a. watered b. watched c. worked d. wanted
3. We volunteered .... days a week for a month.
   a. thirty b. three c. thirteen d. tree

B: Listen and complete:

4. We kept the soil ....
5. We looked .... the vegetables and fruit trees.
6. We kept the plants ....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. All the fans .... as the team came on to the field.
   a. cheered b. slept c. killed d. threw
2. .... means working quickly, easily, and in an organized way.
   a. Effect b. Affect c. Efficient d. Ancient

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

make - outweigh - cons - take - decision

I want to buy a new phone next week so I use a chart of pros and (1) .... to help me make my (2) .... easily. The phone looks great, but it is very expensive. I can (3) .... good photos with it. The pros (4) .... the cons so I've decided to buy it.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

A robot is a machine. But it is not just any machine. It is a **special** kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. Because it is a machine, it does not make mistakes. And it doesn't get tired. And it never complains.

Robots are all around us. Some robots are used to make things. For example, robots can help make cars. Some robots are used to explore dangerous places. Some robots are used to clean things. They can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognize words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Robots can explore ....

a. schools b. parks c. volcanoes d. cafes

2. As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that "**special**" means not ....

a. perfect b. normal c. expensive d. unusual

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?

....

4. Do you think robots will remain in the future?

....

5. What activities are robots used to?

....

6. Why don't robots get tired?

....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Do you know .... this bag belongs to?

a. which b. who c. where d. when

2. Tell me about the last time you ....

a. volunteer b. volunteers c. volunteered d. will volunteer

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Morning is the time .... (where) I learn best.
2. The volunteers arrived at the park. It was .... (rained) hard.

3. .... (While) I was watching the birds, they suddenly flew away.

4. Omar .... (take) an English test tomorrow.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Eman is asking Mona about the way to the park.

Eman : Can you tell me the way to the park?

Mona : Keep going straight 1 .... for about 300 meters. You'll see the park in front of you.

Eman : 2 .... it far?

Mona : No, it is near.

Eman : Can I go there on 3 .... or by taxi?

Mona : Either is OK.

Eman : Thanks for your 4 ....

Mona : You are welcome.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Cities in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 9

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I don't think the .... is going there next year.

a. way line b. lion c. airline d. line

2. We will have to .... with a different one.

a. fry b. fly c. flue d. lie

3. We visited Hurghada last ....

a. year b. fear c. month d. week

B: Listen and complete:

4. We stayed in a .... on the beach.

5. The sea was .... and warm.

6. We saw lots of .... fish!

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Tourists can experience the magic of .... sites in Egypt.

a. history b. historian c. historical d. historically

2. I live with an American family in......... and learn the language.

a. homeschool b. homestay

c. homesickness d. homeless

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

experience - farmer - inside - guide - busy

Last year we visited the Pyramids in Giza. A (1) .... told us lots of fantastic things about why they were built and why, what things, were (2) .... them. The only problem was the shuttlebus. It was (3) .... and we couldn't get on it. We took a taxi instead. It was an amazing (4) ....

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following, then answer the questions:

Good food, exercise and sleep are keys to good health. We need to eat foods that contain proteins, carbohydrates, fats and vitamins. Proteins are found in meat, fish and beans. Bread, rice and macaroni are **rich in** carbohydrates milk, cheese and butter contain fats. Vitamins are found in fresh fruits and vegetables. Exercise helps the blood to move around inside the body, carrying the food to all parts of the body. The body must have rest, so we must sleep enough time to be able to do our work.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The adjective "**rich in**" means ___________.
   a. little b. full of
   c. popular d. has a lot of money
2. ___________ takes food to all parts of the body.
   a. Beans b. Blood c. Bread d. Butter

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?
   ____
4. What are the keys to good health?
   ____
5. What must you do to be able to do your work?
   ____
6. Do you think exercise can be useful? How?
   ____

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I hope _________ to the Pyramids soon.
   a. going b. to go c. to went d. to going
2. Nermeen is _________ an English test tomorrow.
   a. take b. takes c. taking d. took

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. **A:** ___________ (Where) do you go there? **B:** By car.
2. This is the shop ___________ (who) I buy all my notebooks.

3. While I .... (be) in Paris, I met my friend.

4. He usually .... (play) tennis on Saturday.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Mazin is talking to Ahmed about school.

Mazin : Hi, Ahmed. How are you?

Ahmed : Hi, Mazin. I am ❶ ....

Mazin : What is your favourite ❷ .... of the week?

Ahmed : I like ❸ .... !

Mazin : ❹ .... do you like Monday?

Ahmed : Because. I have art and P.E.

E: Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How to help your community"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 10

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I realized that my digital habits are ________________ good.
   a. coin b. quite c. quit d. queen
2. I give my eyes a ________________ from looking at a screen
   a. test b. vest c. rest d. guest
3. I read a book in the hour ________________ sleeping.
   a. after b. before c. in d. during

B: Listen and complete:

4. We are talking about ________________ habits.
5. I never watch ________________.
6. I never look at my phone for too long in the ________________.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I want this jacket. I don't really ________________ about how much it costs.
   a. cure b. care c. car d. careful
2. The bike ________________ was painted green to make it more visible.
   a. lane b. line c. lion d. light

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

normal - live - growing - farm - special

The cities for the future will be (1) ___________ because the people who live there will put new trees into the ground. They will also make all their own food by (2) ___________ vegetables and fruit and keeping (3) ___________ animals in the city. I hope to (4) ___________ there in the future.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

We study a lot of subjects at school. Each subject teaches us certain things in our life. Foreign languages enable us to communicate with other people and know how other people think and talk. We learn the Arabic language to be able to tell others what we want and understand what others tell us. Mathematics helps us to think. History tells us about our own country and the people of the world around

us. Geography tells us about plants, animals and people, where and how <u>**they**</u> live and what they do. Physical education helps us grow strong and keep us fit. We learn Biology so as to tell us about living things. Computers are also very important because they help us do difficult sums quickly and can store information. They can also work with words and numbers.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. In ________________, we can learn about living things.
   a. Maths b. History c. English d. Biology
2. If you want to know about your own country, you should study ________________.
   a. physical education b. history c. English d. maths

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Suggest a suitable title for the passage.

   ____.
4. How is physical education useful?

   ____.
5. Why do we learn foreign languages?

   ____.
6. What does the underlined word "**they**" refer to?

   ____.

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I dislike ________________ away from my family.
   a. be b. am c. is d. being
2. I ________________ my friend Rodina next Saturday at 3 p.m. I called her.
   a. am meeting b. meets c. met d. meeting

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I was sitting in the park and suddenly I ________________ (see) an old school friend.
2. I think the weather ________________ (be) hotter next week.
3. On Monday, I'm ________________ (get) a haircut at 2 o'clock.
4. What ________________ (happen) if you mix red and orange?

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Hebe is asking Arwa about what she did yesterday.

Heba : Where did you go yesterday?

Arwa : I ❶ .... shopping.

Heba : Great! ❷ .... did you go with?

Arwa : With my mum.

Heba : What did you ❸ ....?

Arwa : We bought meat and rice.

Heba : ❹ .... did you come back?

Arwa : We came back at 3 o'clock.

E Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Your volunteering experiences"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 11

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Last week, I volunteered at the ....
   a. music b. museum c. moon d. metal
2. I helped children draw ....
   a. phones b. trees c. pictures d. future
3. We arrived .... the museum opened.
   a. before b. after c. during d. over

B: Listen and complete:

4. I saw a group of .... kids who need some help.
5. I loved helping others .... history.
6. I was ....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The children were .... and enjoyed running around the park.
   a. play b. played c. plays d. playful
2. Her dad pushed her on the ....
   a. cliff b. swing c. mountain d. hill

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

off - settings - like - of - doing

My dad thinks I spend too much time gaming. He changed the ❶ .... on my laptop so that it turns itself ❷ .... after one hour. I understand gaming can be bad for you if you can't stop ❸ .... it, but that's not what I'm thinking ❹ ....

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

Mr. Ahmed is a teacher of English at a preparatory school in a **remote** village in Upper Egypt. He is proud of his job. He does his best to make his students fluent in English as he thinks it is the most widely used language all over the world. Mr. Ahmed is a good model for young teachers because he is updating himself all the time by attending a lot of teaching workshops and using the net for the same purpose. He is

well-liked and respected not only by his students but also by each one in his village. Though he is still single, he treats his students in a fatherly way. He inspires **them** to be good citizens who will form the future of our beloved country. He believes that teaching has a great effect on everyone.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word "remote" in the first line means ....
   a. near b. close c. big d. far
2. Mr. Ahmed is ....
   a. married b. father of one son
   c. unmarried d. grandfather

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?
   ....
4. Why do you think learning English is important?
   ....
5. How is Mr. Ahmed a good model for young teachers?
   ....
6. What does the underlined word "**them**" refer to?
   ....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The film .... at six o'clock tonight.
   a. will start b. start c. started d. starts
2. If ice is heated, it ....
   a. melts b. melt c. will melt d. melting

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Ashraf stopped .... (eat) lunch at a café.
2. Arwa stopped .... (eat) when she was full.
3. Uncle Hassan .... (fall) asleep while he was watching TV.
4. Salah is my friend .... (which) lives with his grandparents.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Haneen is asking Yara about her father's job.

Haneen : What is your father's job?

Yara : He is a ❶ ....

Haneen : ❷ .... does he work?

Yara : He works in Zagazig prep school.

Haneen : Which ❸ .... does he teach?

Yara : He teaches English.

Haneen : Do his students like him?

Yara : ❹ .... He is a great man.

E Writing

8 Write a paragraph of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A trip to the beach"

Test 12

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. She showed me how to throw the ball into the ....
   a. fair b. find c. air d. stir
2. Today, I spent the .... with my older sister.
   a. afternoon b. noon c. morning d. night
3. She showed me how to hold the .... in my right hand.
   a. cat b. rat c. hat d. bat

B: Listen and complete:

4. I was .... because I couldn't hit the ball.
5. Donia told me to .... trying.
6. My older sister loves ....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Osman is clever and .... He is always trying new ideas and activities.
   a. adventure b. adventurous c. afraid d. shy
2. She was.......... by the colorful coral reefs while snorkeling.
   a. facinating b. amazing c. exciting d. facinated

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

population - left - sea - pollution - spaces

Today, my grandma showed me some old photos of our city. She could walk to the ❶ .... from her house. There were lots of green ❷ .... Now, there is hardly any open land ❸ ....The ❹ .... has grown so much that there are apartment buildings from here to the sea.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

Computers are very important and useful in our daily life. They are used everywhere: in banks, schools, hospitals, offices and at home. We can watch films and matches, listen to songs, read the news, send e-mails, draw pictures and chat with our friends by using computers. Although computers have made life easier and more comfortable, <u>they</u> have bad effects on our lives. When computers are used too much, they will develop a kind of addiction. A person who is addicted to the computer will spend most of his time alone and if he doesn't check his social networking sites,he feels unhappy. Computer addiction can also cause health problems such as bad eye-sight and becoming fat.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Some people become ---------- when they use computers for a long time.
   a. rich b. fat c. important d. useful
2. The underlined word ""they" refers to ---------.
   a. people b. games c. friends d. computers

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the text.

----

4. Where are computers used?

----

5. What will happen when computers are used too much?

----

6. How does a person feel if he can't check his social networking sites? why?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. We are ---------- to travel to Aswan next week. It's our plan.
   a. will b. go c. goes d. going
2. If you study hard, you ---------get good marks.
   a. won't b. will c. couldn't d. could

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. The tennis tournament lasted a week, so my dad ------------ (was driving) me to the court every morning.
2. A: How ------------ (does) you go to school? B: I go to school by bus.

3. Do you remember any words .... (who) you learned before?
4. My Mom tries .... (cook) a new dish every week.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Two friends are taking about volunteering.

Rana : What do you think of volunteering?

Farah: I think it is an ❶ .... thing.

Rana : ❷ .... can we volunteer to help our community ?

Farah : We can volunteer at many ❸ ....

Rana : charities! What can we do for them ?

Farah: We can ❹ .... our old clothes to the poor.

Rana : That's great.

E Writing

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Clean transportation"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 13

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Green transportation is ________ for the environment.
   a. worse b. better c. cheap d. letter
2. ________ helps reduce carbon emissions.
   a. Cycling b. Reading c. Baking d. Driving
3. It reduces carbon emissions and ________ energy.
   a. safe b. saif c. saves d. same

B: Listen and complete:

4. Green ________ helps protect the planet.
5. Cycling and walking don't produce any carbon ________.
6. Traveling to work or school by bike or on foot helps reduce ________.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To be ________ means to work quickly, easily, and in an organized way.
   a. calm b. efficient c. important d. fast
2. It's safer to cycle around town in the ________.
   a. boat b. ship c. cable d. bike lane

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

Construction - countryside - growth - population - planning

There's a hospital, a swimming pool, and other facilities in our town. It has got a (1) ________ of 21,000 people and it is growing so there are lots of beautiful green spaces. The town is getting bigger and there's a lot of (2) ________ happening at the moment. (3) ________ will be great for the town but we need good (4) ________ so they don't build on all the green spaces.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

My name is Mona. I want to be a doctor here in Cairo so I always work hard at school. My favorite subjects are science and computer studies. I also want to speak good English to other children in different places. My teacher is very good, but I also like to use technology. I use a tablet to practice my English. Sometimes I use my phone, too! Last year, I learnt English in London with my family. It was fantastic! I cycled to summer school every day, and I met students from different countries. I now have a friend from Uganda! My favorite place was a river in Cambridge. It was very **delightful to look at**, but I didn't swim in **it**.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to.........
   a. the bridge b. the subject c. the river d. Cambridge
2. The underlined "**delightful to look at**" means ....
   a. kind b. happiness c. terrible d. beautiful

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

   ....

4. What are Mona's favorite subjects?

   ....

5. Why does she want to speak English?

   ....

6. Is Mona right to use technology? Why?

   ....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Karim is my friend .... lives with his grandparents.
   a. which b. where c. who d. when
2. If you don't water plants, they ....
   a. dies b. dying c. die d. died

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. How .... (do) people study before there were electric lights?
2. .... (During) I was watching the birds, they suddenly flew away.
3. Look at those black clouds. There......... (be) a storm soon.
4. This is the garden in .... (when) we play.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona is reading an article about the brain

Mona : Hi, What are you doing?

Esra'a : I am reading an (1) ....

Mona : What is it about?

Esra'a : It is about the (2) ....

Mona : What does it say?

Esra'a : In the past, people believed the brain " (3) ....
off" when we went to sleep.

Mona : Is that true?

Esra'a : With new technology, we know some (4) ....
about the brain.

E Writing

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Something you did to take care of the environment"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 14

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I was in Grade .... last year.
   a. twenty b. seventeen c. eleven d. seven
2. When you read a text, it is useful to underline new ....
   a. words b. ideas c. furniture d. future
3. I find it .... to remember how to spell them.
   a. different b. difference c. difficult d. dangerous

B: Listen and complete:

4. I find it .... to remember the meaning of the words when I underline new words.
5. I read online that you can remind yourself of tricky spelling words by .... them to other words
6. From my experiences I have some .... to help you learn

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... means something that can be replaced and doesn't run out.
   a. Renewable b. Finished c. Recycled d. Non-renewable
2. It's easy to .... a video onto your social media page.
   a. make b. safe c. upload d. take

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

personalize - algorithms - grows - platform - streaming

Artificial intelligence is a type of technology that helps computer systems to do tasks that usually only humans can do. If you use ❶ .... platforms to watch movies or TV shows, you are using AI. The streaming platform uses ❷ .... to "learn" what types of movies or TV shows you like to watch. If you enter data by choosing movies, the algorithms learn what you like from

that data. The ③ .... then uses what it learned to ④ .... your homepage on the platform with suggestions for similar movies and TV shows.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

Many tourists come to Egypt from all over the world. Some of them come by ship, but most of them come by plane. Egypt is a popular place for a holiday. In Egypt, tourists can visit many exciting places and do many interesting things. In Alexandria and Hurghada, **they** can enjoy the wonderful beaches and delicious food. In Cairo, they like to visit the Pyramids. There, they ride camels and enjoy taking photos. In old Cairo, they visit many historical places. The most famous place in old Cairo is Khan El-Khalili. It is famous for its markets and bazaars. They go to Luxor and Aswan to enjoy the High Dam and the **ancient** temples. They always say that Egypt is a safe country.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined pronoun "**they**" refers to.........
   a. tourists b. Egyptians c. holidays d. Luxor and Aswan
2. The underlined word "**ancient**" is the same meaning as.........
   a. new b. modern c. happy d. very old

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the best title for the passage?
   ....
4. What can tourists enjoy in Alexandria and Hurghada?
   ....
5. How do most tourists come to Egypt?
   ....
6. Why do you think that tourist like Egypt?
   ....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. When you use too much data, your internet speed .... down.
   a. slow b. slows c. slowed d. to slow
2. The buses to Alexandria .... at 8 pm.
   a. leaves b. leaving c. leave d. is leaving

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. .... (While) the film, my best friend came to my house.
2. I .... (call) you when I get home.
3. We .... (meets) in elementary school five years ago.
4. If students don't understand something, will you .... (helping) them?

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Ali is talking to Ziad about learning how to ride a bike

Ali : Where were you today afternoon?

Ziad : With my dad. He was teaching me how to (1) .... a bike.

Ali : Wow! How did you feel?

Ziad : At first, I was (2) .... nervous.

Ali : How did he teach you?

Ziad : At the start, my dad held the back of the bike so I wouldn't fall. I tried to (3) ....

Ali : Did you fall?

Ziad : I almost fell a few times, but I didn't (4) .... up. In the end, I could ride it alone.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Cleaner ways to travel"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 15

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. People believed the brain "turned off" when we went to ---------.
   a. swim b. eat c. sleep d. fly
2. Now, we know that some parts of the brain stay --------- during sleep.
   a. useless b. noisy c. hungry d. active
3. In the ---------, people believed the brain "turned off" when we went to sleep.
   a. last b. fast c. past d. most

B: Listen and complete:

4. Sleep is very important for -----------.
5. People who get enough sleep can remember about -----------% more than those who don't.
6. ----------- it helps us remember things better

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. ---------means not harmful to the environment.
   a. Emission b. Environmentally c. King d. Eco-friendly
2. One of the --------- of a staycation is that you don't spend money on flights.
   a. pros b. programs c. cons d. problems

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

screen - quiet - digital - realized - quite

This week at school, we're talking about digital habits. I thought about how, when, and how often I use (1) ----------- technology and I (2) ----------- that my digital habits are (3) ----------- good. I never watch videos or look at my phone for too long in the evening. I usually read a book in the hour before I go to bed to give my eyes a rest from looking at a (4) -----------.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

Last August, the weather was very hot. We went to the beach near our house in Hurghada. Mary made a sandcastle. There was a cave in the rocks. Mary didn't want to go into **it** because she was **frightened**! Last October, we visited my uncle, aunt and cousins in Cairo. We had a picnic in Al Azhar Park. We ate delicious food, then we played games and my cousin Ali rode his bike. When I was eight, we went to Siwa. We swam in a lake, and climbed a mountain. We saw camels and slept in a tent in the desert. It was my favourite holiday!

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**it**" refers to_________.
   a. sandcastle b. cave c. holiday d. picnic
2. The underlined word "**frightened**" is the same meaning as_________.
   a. happy b. strong c. afraid d. angry

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the passage about?

----

4. What happened when they visited their relatives?

----

5. What did they do when they went to Al Azhar Park?

----

6. Do you think that they enjoyed their visit to Cairo? Why / Why not?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Rana _________ to the park and met her friends.
   a. goes b. go c. went d. going
2. If you _________ looking at the screen now, you get a headache.
   a. don't stop b. stop c. won't stop d. aren't stopping

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We __________ (will travel) to Luxor last summer by car.
2. I was reading a book __________ (while) my mom called me for dinner.
3. Cairo is the city __________ (where) I was born in.
4. I __________ (help) my friend Sara prepare the food for the party.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Taha and Hashim are talking about volunteering

Taha : Hello, Hashim. How are you?

Hashim : Fine, thank you.

Taha : Tell me about the last time you (1) ....

Hashim : Last summer, I volunteered at the zoo every weekend.

Taha : What did you do there?

Hashim : I started by feeding the monkeys. They were very (2) ....!

Taha : Did you (3) .... any photos?

Hashim : Here's a photo I took of them.

Taha : What else did you do?

Hashim : I also helped clean the lions' (4) ....

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Being a responsible tourist"

Test 16

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I spent the afternoon with my ....

a. grandmother b. mother c. grandfather d. family

2. My grandmother is from..........

a. Fayoum b. Alexandria c. Cairo d. Giza

3. My grandmother .... me to keep going.

a. encouraged b. discouraged c. helped d. killed

B: Listen and complete:

4. My grandmother showed me how to make a .... from different colored beads.
5. I wanted to .... but my grandmother encouraged me to keep going.
6. My grandmother's words made me think about how I always want quick ....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The .... is an electric train that operates in cities.

a. playground b. streetcar c. underground d. flight

2. I think eating .... food is the worst.

a. polite b. pleased c. healthy d. junk

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

highlights - looking - compare - including - profiles

I have one bad digital habit. I sometimes look at other people's photos on social media and ❶ .... myself to them. I know that you only see the ❷ .... on people's social media ❸ ...., but sometimes looking at these profiles makes me feel like I'm not good enough. I'm going to stop ❹ ....at other people's profiles and comparing myself to them from now on.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

Technology has changed the world around us. It refers to the use of scientific knowledge to create tools and solve problems. From simple tools like the bikes to complex machines like computers and spaceships, it has shaped human civilization. **It** has made our lives easier in many ways. We can communicate with people all over the world through the internet and smartphones. We can access information from anywhere in the world with just a few clicks. Technology has also **improved** healthcare, transportation, and communication, making our lives more comfortable.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**it**" refers to_________.

   a. technology b. information c. knowledge d. civilization

2. The underlined word "**improved**" is the same meaning as_________.

   a. built b. developed c. included d. explained

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the passage?

   ----

4. What are some simple tools that technology has created?

   ----

5. What is one way technology makes life more comfortable?

   ----

6. How do smartphones help us in our daily lives?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. _________ I met Randa, she was doing the shopping.

   a. While b. Because c. Who d. When

2. Uncle Maged fell asleep while _________ football.

   a. watching b. was he watching c. he watch d. was watching

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. What time __________ (you, meet) your friends at the mall tomorrow?
2. How do you__________ (gets) to school?

3. I enjoyed .... (speak) with you.

4. This is the boy .... (whose) won the gold medal.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Rania and Amany are talking about future arrangements

Rania : Hi, Amany. I'm meeting my friend Amira.

Amany : Really, 1 .... are you meeting her?

Rania : On Saturday at 5 pm.

Amany : 2 .... are you doing?

Rania : We are 3 .... the Egyptian Museum.

Amany : I hope you have 4 ....

Rania : Than you, Amany.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Planning for our future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 17

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Last week, I volunteered at the ....

a. museum b. charity c. school d. village

2. I love history and helping people, so I was ....

a. amazing b. bored c. excited d. useless

3. I helped make some museums ....

a. plays b. shows c. displays d. sports

B: Listen and complete:

4. I volunteered at the museum with my school history ....
5. We arrived at ...., before the museum opened.
6. I helped the kids draw pictures of their favorite ....

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. What .... does the train to Cairo leave from?

a. pavement b. bridge c. platform d. stations

2. It is good to take a\an .... when you are tired.

a. break b. project c. sleep d. ride

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

guidebooks - trip - landscape - presents - shuttlebus

Last year, my family and I decided to visit Aswan. It's famous for amazing (1) ...., beautiful buildings, and some monuments. My mom bought some (2) .... When we arrived in Aswan, we took a (3) .... from the airport to our hotel. It was lovely, with beautiful rooms, but we were all tired after the (4) .... We visited many places there. We were very happy.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

I'm Hassan. My family lives in Alexandria, but my dad doesn't work in Egypt. He works in England. He went to the airport on Sunday evening and caught the plane to England. He will come home next month. On Saturday, I don't go to school, and my brother doesn't go to school either. We play chess or go to the park. On Sunday mornings, we go swimming. My sister is three and she doesn't swim. She watches us. I hope to travel to England when I grow up. My father encourages me to do that.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**she**" refers to ....
   a. Hassan b. Hassan's father
   c. Hassan's sister d. Hassan's family
2. The underlined expression "**caught the plane**" is the same meaning as ....
   a. flew b. made c. had d. talked

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
4. Where does Hassan's father work?
   ....
5. When do they go to the park?
   ....
6. Why do you think Hassan hopes to travel to England?
   ....

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. That's the park .... we play tennis.
   a. where b. which c. when d. who
2. We........ dinner when we heard some noise outside.
   a. have b. has c. will have d. were having

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. I need .... (remember) to take my camera.
2. Samir .... (taking) the bus to school every day.

3. You are the person .... (which) always helps me.
4. More people live in cities now than .... (to) the countryside.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Eyad and Sami re talking about Mark Twain

Eyad : Do you know about Mark Twain?

Sami : Yes, he was an American ❶ ....

Eyad : When was he ❷ ....?

Sami : He was born ❸ .... 1835.

Eyad : What is the name of his first ❹ ....?

Sami : The Adventures of Tom Sawyer in 1876.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Changes in my city"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 18

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Amira lived in a small _________ in the city.
   a. attic b. palace c. villa d. apartment
2. There was noise of the construction of new apartment buildings and_________
   a. facilities b. houses c. factories d. roads
3. They wanted to_________their neighborhood.
   a. burn b. explore c. expert d. experience

B: Listen and complete:

4. Amira ___________ seeing what was.
5. Amira and Adam lived on the top ___________ of a tall building.
6. Outside in the city were the ___________ of cars.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Clean transportation _________ fewer carbon emissions.
   a. produces b. raise c. reduce d. interrupt
2. We are _________ of our school's sports team.
   a. pleased b. amazed c. proud d. interested

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

emissions - pollution - Streetcars - passengers - efficient

Trains, streetcars, and buses are much more eco-friendly than cars or planes, especially for longer distances. (1) ___________, which run on electricity, are a green and (2) ___________way to travel, especially in cities. Like buses and trains, streetcars can carry a lot of (3) ___________ at once, which greatly lowers the carbon emissions per person. For example, a full bus can replace up to 50 cars on the road which helps reduce both (4) ___________ and traffic.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

I'm Hazem. I had a **terrible** day at school yesterday. I played football with my friends in the school playground and I fell and hurt my foot. At first, I didn't feel much pain, but later it started hurting badly. I couldn't walk so my friends helped me. They took me to a hospital and stayed with me until my mom and dad arrived. The doctor said **it** was broken and I needed to rest at home for a month. We came home late at night and I am feeling better now. I don't know what I would do without my friends. I want to say I feel very happy to have such good friends.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**It**" refers to ________.
   a. Hazem's foot
   b. Hazem's school
   c. the playground
   d. the hospital
2. The underlined word " **terrible** " is similar to ________.
   a. creative b. amazing c. happy d. bad

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

   ----
4. What happened to Hazem at school yesterday?

   ----
5. How many days did he need to rest?

   ----
6. How do we know that Hazem has good friends?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Mariam is the girl ________ aunt is our doctor.
   a. whose b. who c. that d. which
2. Fareeda ________ Aunt Samira at the bus stop.
   a. see b. seeing c. was seen d. saw

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

3. I prefer cycling on a bike lane to cycling ________ (at) the city streets.
4. Did you enjoy ________ (have) a staycation this year?

5. While we .... (walk) in the park, it started to rain.
6. How did you travel to school two days .... (age)?

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Nada and her friend Donia are talking about Donia's new phone.

Nada : Is that your new phone?

Donia : Yes, it ❶ ....

Nada : When did you ❷ .... it?

Donia : I bought it last week.

Nada : What are its ❸ ....?

Donia : It looks very good and it has a better camera.

Nada : What about the ❹ ....?

Donia : It's very expensive and I spent more time looking at a screen.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"A short story you have read"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 19

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. The students volunteered at a ________.
   a. hospital b. community garden
   c. charity d. park
2. They volunteered ________ days a week for a month.
   a. two b. six c. four d. three
3. Last ________, a group of students from my class volunteered for a month.
   a. winter b. fall c. spring d. summer

B: Listen and complete:

4. The students looked after the vegetables and __________ trees.
5. They tidied the garden to keep the plants__________.
6. It was a hot summer so they watered the garden to keep the __________ wet.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. My cousin Samy has sent me a a friend ________ on Facebook.
   a. request b. service c. order d. question
2. One idea is to print on both sides of the paper to ________ waste.
   a. reduce b. increase c. damage d. include

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

airline - staycation - resort - guide - shuttlebus

Last summer, Mom and Dad planned a vacation for us in Florida but we had to have a tour instead. We were supposed to fly with an ❶ __________ to a beautiful ❷ __________ by the beach, but then Dad was sick and we had to cancel our flight. We were very disappointed, so Mom booked a local city ❸ __________ and asked a guide to show us around. We even took a ❹ __________ to visit a nearby nature park.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

If you want to **improve** your English, you should build up your vocabulary. You have to practice **it** a lot. There are many effective ways to do that. First of all, you should read a lot. You can read short stories, comics, newspapers, magazines etc. As you read, you can try to guess the meanings of unknown words. If you cannot, then look up the definition in a dictionary. Another way to build up vocabulary is to watch movies in English. This will also help with pronunciation. Keep a vocabulary notebook and write down a few words each day. Keep in mind that you have to revise them regularly.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**it**" refers to_________.

a. vocabulary b. newspaper c. reading d. English

2. The underlined word " **improve**" means_________.

a. hurt b. make worse c. damage d. make better

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What's the main idea of the passage?

----

4. What can we do to improve our English?

----

5. How can we know the meanings of unknown words?

----

6. Do you think Learning English is important? why \ why not?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was last summer_________I learned to swim.

a. where b. who c. when d. whose

2. Plants die if they_________enough water.

a. don't get b. get c. have got d. got

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. Amira was talking to her sister when her dad ___________ (get) home.
2. Mr. Adel is traveling to London ___________ (in) Thursday.

3. How long do you usually .... (studying)?

4. Yes, thanks. We were planning .... (visit) Jordan but we couldn't go.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Badr is at the train station

Clerk : How can I help you?

Badr : I want a train ❶ .... to Aswan.

Clerk : A single or return?

Badr : A single, please. How ❷ .... is it?

Clerk : It's 400 LE.

Badr : When does the train ❸ ....?

Clerk : In 30 minutes.

Badr : Which ❹ .... does it leave from?

Clerk : It leaves from Number10.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"How you spend your time"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Test 20

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Electric vehicles are ________ for the environment.
   a. bad b. terrible c. better d. cheap
2. We need more ________ stations in our town for the electric cars,
   a. charging b. fuel c. oil d. petrol
3. The charging station isn't in the ________ center.
   a. village b. city c. town d. down

B: Listen and complete:

4. Cars that use __________ fuel is bad for the planet.
5. At the moment, we only have __________ charging station.
6. The town should have __________ charging stations.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lots of online shops want you to have a\an________with them.
   a. account b. shop c. friend d. path
2. The sound of the dog was ________to the neighbors
   a. amazing b. interesting c. annoying d. enjoyable

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

busier - dark - weigh - fresh - amounts

I volunteered at a food stall in our local market. I helped my uncle. The market opened early, and we set up the stall while it was still (1) __________.My uncle showed me how to arrange fruit and vegetables at the front because they were on sale. We put the apples and oranges in tidy rows to make them look (2) _______. People came to buy small and large (3) __________.I had to (4) __________ everything carefully, making sure not to make any mistakes.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

Mustafa and Hani wanted to travel. They went in a small ship. They sailed from their town. There was a very strong wind. It blew the ship onto a strange island. The rough sea destroyed the ship, so they stayed on the island. They walked for three days. They didn't see any people. They heard the sounds of animals but they didn't see them. They saw some dangerous lizards and snakes. There were insects, too. They were **exhausted** and hungry. Mustafa cut down some small trees, then they made a small boat. They left **it**. Mustafa and Hani were on the boat for ten hours. Finally they saw a big ship and asked for help. The sailors saved them. They were safe.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word "**it** " refers to ---------.

a. the ship b. the animals c. the island d. the insect

2. The underlined word " **exhausted**" is the same meaning as --------.

a. surprised b. tired c. afraid d. thirsty

B. Answer the following questions:

3. Give a suitable title for the passage.

----

4. How did Mustafa and Hani travel?

----

5. What did they see on the island?

----

6. Do you think they are unlucky? why \ why not?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This is the blue scarf --------- Amina gave to her mother.

a. where b. when c. that d. who

2. If you --------- your password, you can't log in to your account.

a. forget b. forgets c. forgot d. forgetting

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. My dad suggested__________ (upload) the photos onto my social media page.
2. It is __________ (go) to rain.
3. Everyone will use more AI technology __________ (on) 2030.
4. Do you remember any words __________ (where) you learned before?

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Mona and Nada are talking about food.

Mona : What is your favourite food?

Nada : It's ❶ ____.

Mona : Koshari! Fantastic. What are its ❷ ________________________?

Nada : Tomatoes and pasta.

Mona : Is it ❸ ____?

Nada : Yes, it is.

Mona : What else do you like?

Nada : I enjoy ❹ ________________________ fish with rice. What about you?

Mona : I like Kofta very much.

Nada : Wonderful.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Spending time online"

____

____

____

____

____

____

____

____

Test 21

A: Listening

1 A: Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Green transportation is ________ for the environment.
   a. worse b. better c. cheap d. letter
2. ________ helps reduce carbon emissions.
   a. Cycling b. walking c. baking d. A & B
3. They are great for traveling________distances.
   a. long b. tall c. short d. shorts

B: Listen and complete:

4. Green __________ helps protect the planet.
5. Cycling and walking don't produce any carbon __________.
6. Traveling to work or school by bike or on foot helps reduce __________.

B: Language Functions

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Dad has just charged his car at ________.
   a. bus stop b. petrol station
   c. the charging station d. solar station
2. The painting ________ a beautiful landscape.
   a. represents b. grows c. expects d. draws

3 Read and complete the text with words from the list:

through - lanes - over - neighborhoods - vehicles

In the future, clean transportation will be very important. People will travel in electric cars, buses. These (1) __________ will drive quietly on the roads. There will be bike (2) __________ in every city. and people will ride bicycles in parks and (3) __________ Some cities will have trains that move quickly (4) __________the streets, using clean energy. At charging stations, cars will get power from solar panels.

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following text, then answer the questions

When I see children using technology, I get worried. My son Adel loves having a mobile phone in his little hands. He always uses it. This makes me wonder if it's right to use the developing technology of today. When I was a child, it was typical to go outside, get a little dirty, run around and have fun outside. Sadly, not all children are the same. The new technology is the future of these children's lives. With many children today being able to understand how to use the mobile phones, parents should worry about the harmful effects.

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The underlined word " **it** " refers to the ---------.

a. technology   b. hand   c. phone   d. internet

2. The underlined word "**harmful**" is the same meaning as---------.

a. dangerous   b. interesting   c. effective   d. worried

B. Answer the following questions:

3. What the best title for the passage?

----

4. What did the writer do when he was a child?

----

5. What is the future of these children's lives?

----

6. Do you think parents are right to worry about using technology? why\ why not?

D: Vocabulary and Structure

5 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This app --------- better if you update your software.

a. working   b. worked   c. will work   d. work

2. It is difficult to understand people --------- talk too fast.

a. who   b. when   c. which   d. whose

6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

1. We're playing a basketball match ----------- (on) the sports center tomorrow.

2. The coral reefs are amazing. Promise ---------- (send) me some photos.

3. The school ---------- (where) you go to now is one of the best in the area.

4. When you shop online, AI ---------- (remember) what you like to buy.

7 Complete the following dialogue:

Shorouk and Farida are talking about problems.

Shorouk : Hey, Farida! How's your new life in Europe?

Farida : Hi! It's ok, but I am quite sad.

Shorouk : ❶ -- are you sad?

Farida : There is nowhere to play basketball.

Shorouk : Oh, no! Here, we have a ❷ -------------------- problem.

Farida : ❸ -- is your problem?

Shorouk : The ❹ ------------------------------ is growing every year.

Farida : Mmm! Population is a very bad thing.

Shorouk : You are right.

8 Write a social media post of about EIGHTY (80) words on:

"Clean transportation"

Al Azhar 1 Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. I helped my .... at his fruit and vegetable stall.
   a. father b. uncle c. mother d. sister
2. The market opened ....
   a. nearly b. near c. late d. early

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Norseen is asking Hams about her school day.

Norseen : How was your school day?

Hams : ① ....

Norseen : Terrible! what happened?

Hams : ② ....

Norseen : ③ ....?

Hams : I broke it in the playground.

Norseen : Don't worry! we can fix it.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. While we were walking in the park, it .... to rain.
   a. start b. will starts c. starts d. started
2. My mom tries .... her sister every evening.
   a. phone b. to phone c. phoning d. phoned
3. I think eating .... food is very bad.
   a. healthy b. good c. junk d. suitable
4. The sea was .... so we saw lots of beautiful fish!
   a. polluted b. dirty c. clear d. dark
5. .... vehicles are good for the environment.
   a. Electric b. Electricity c. Electrical d. Normal

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

In the future, clean transportation will be very important. People will travel in electric cars and buses. These vehicles will drive quietly over the roads. There will be bike lanes in every city, and people will ride bicycles through parks and neighborhoods. Some cities will have trains that move quickly in the streets, using clean energy. At charging stations, cars will get power from **solar** panels. Many people will walk to work or school, going into buildings without using any fuel. This will make our cities quieter and the air cleans.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where will cars get power from solar panels?

----

2. How will clean transportation be important?

----

3. What do you think about cars that use dirty fuel?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**solar**" means to be connected with the ....

a. sky b. moon c. sun d. earth

5. There will be bike .... in every city.

a. lines b. lanes c. lions d. lakes

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Ashraf stopped eat junk food because it's unhealthy. (...............)
2. Rodina talk to her sister when her dad got home. (...............)
3. The next train leave at six o'clock. (...............)
4. We are meet at 3 o'clock. (...............)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"How to help your community"

Al Azhar 2 Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. There was the final of the .... tennis.
   a. chair b. cheer c. wheelchair d. whale
2. Today, I watched a paralympics sports ....
   a. ever b. event c. even d. egg

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Two students are talking about the last English lesson.

Arwa : Did you enjoy the last English lesson?

Rana : Sure (1) ....!

Arwa : What was it about?

Rana : (2) ....

Arwa : (3) ....?

Rana : We can help our community by planting trees and using clean transport.

Arwa : I should have attended.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Driving cars is very bad .... the environment.
   a. at b. in c. for d. about
2. This train is the express service and it .... in two hours.
   a. leave b. arrive c. don't arrive d. leaves
3. We decided .... a staycation instead.
   a. to has b. have c. to have d. having
4. I feel proud because. I made a ....
   a. different b. difference c. difficult d. differ
5. The old computer is ....
   a. outdated b. dates c. new d. recent

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The Eco-shop only sells things that are environmentally-friendly. Last week we talked to the owner, Mariam, about her new shop. She is going to sell local fruit, vegetables and other local things that don't damage the environment. People can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. Mariam decided to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. **It** is having an opening party at 1 pm in three day's time.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Where is the shop opening?

----

2. What is the name of the shop?

----

3. Why did Mariam decide to open her shop?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The shop sells things that --------- the environment.

a. damage b. protect c. kill d. carry

5. The underlined pronoun "it" refers to --------- .

a. the idea b. the party c. the shop d. recycling

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Farah **go** to the park and met her friends. (...............)
2. That's the park **when** we play tennis. (...............)
3. The train **arrive** at ten o'clock. (...............)
4. If it **be** hot, I won't go out. (...............)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Your city"

Al Azhar 3 Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. There is too much ________ .

a. population b. pollution c. popular d. shops

2. The town has ________ over the years.

a. charged b. changed c. chips d. chair

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Dina is asking Leile about her weekend in Alexandria.

Dina : Where did you spend your last weekend?

Leila : 1 ____!

Dina : 2 ____?

Leila : The weather was fantastic there.

Dina : What kind of food did you eat?

Leila : 3 ____

Dina : You are a lucky girl!

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. They were selling ________ Rolex watches on the market stall.

a. fake b. face c. fail d. fear

2. My older brother is a famous doctor. I feel ________ of him.

a. pride b. bride c. proud d. bread

3. This is the school I went to ________ I was at the primary age.

a. where b. when c. which d. who

4. What did you ________ yesterday?

a. does b. done c. did d. do

5. Mr. Ahmed has many ways to ________ the lesson.

a. expert b. explain c. expire d. delete

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Yesterday, I went with my brother Ahmed to the shopping centre. My mother asked us to do some shopping there. At the supermarket, I bought eggs, bread and butter. Then we went to a shoe shop to buy my brother Ahmed a new pair of shoes. His size is 38. He bought new black trousers, too. After that, we went to a café to have some drinks. I had some tea and my brother drank some juice. We went back home at 8 o'clock.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. When did they go to the shopping centre?

----

2. What colour are Ahmed's new trousers?

----

3. What size are Ahmed's shoes?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They bought eggs, bread and butter from the ....

a. shoe shop b. supermarket c. cafe d. fruit shop

5. They went back home at ....

a. 8 o'clock b. 5 o'clock c. 11 o'clock d. 10 o'clock

6. Ahmed bought a pair of ....

a. shirts b. socks c. shoes d. scissors

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. That is the boy <u>who</u> father is a teacher at the school. (..............)
2. While I <u>am reading</u> , I slept. (..............)
3. What time <u>did</u> you meet your friend tomorrow? (..............)
4. The film <u>start</u> at six o'clock. (..............)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"A story you read"

Al Azhar 4 Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. We can walk or --------- to help our planet.
   a. circle b. arrive c. cycle d. bicycle
2. It is --------- to think about the environment.
   a. bad b. terrible c. port d. important

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Ola and Aya are talking about AI.

Ola : Do you know much about AI?

Aya : Yes, I do.

Ola : 1 ---?

Aya : It is a type of technology that can helps.

Ola : Can I use it to solve my homework?

Aya : 2 ---

Ola : Is it a trusted resource?

Aya : 3 ------------------------------------ but we shouldn't use it too much.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. I --------- the most important words in a sentence so I can focus on them.
   a. delete b. eraser c. underline d. break
2. I plan to study for the next 20 minutes, then I'll --------- a break and relax.
   a. make b. take c. do d. sleep
3. A: --------- do you read books? B: In the library.
   a. where b. when c. which d. who
4. While I was walking along the road, I --------- an accident.
   a. was seeing b. saw c. see d. seen
5. Her coming back caused great --------- . We were very happy.
   a. sadness b. weakness c. excitement d. achievement

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

A famous scientist lived with his wife, his two sons and his daughter. He often forgot about his food when he was studying. His wife used to put some food for him to eat. One night he felt very hungry. He looked around the room. He saw some some eggs in a small basket. At once he decided to cook <u>them</u>. So he went to the kitchen. As he was thinking of his work and not of his food, he put his watch in the frying pan and took the eggs in his hands. When he came to eat, he found that the eggs are still in his hand.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. What did the scientist often forget about?

----

2. What does the underlined word **"them"** refer to?

----

3. Why did the scientist put the watch in the pan?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. They scientist went to the kitchen to .... the eggs.

a. sell   b. buy   c. cook   d. steal

5. The scientist saw the eggs in a small ....

a. nest   b. basket   c. hand   d. pan

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. Look at those dark clouds. It <u>rain</u> soon. (...............)
2. The bus to Cairo <u>leave</u> at six o'clock. (...............)
3. I enjoy <u>listen</u> to music at night. (...............)
4. If you <u>be</u> scared, tell someone older. (...............)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Helping the environment"

Al Azhar 5 Test

A: Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب

1. Teenagers spend much time ---------- videos.
   a. reading   b. writing   c. uploading   d. watching
2. They look at the camera and make ---------- faces.
   a. funny   b. fun   c. sun   d. sunny

B: Language Functions

2 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue:

Two friends are talking about birthday.

Eman : What are you doing?

Sarah : ❶ --.

Eman : ❷ --?

Sarah : I'm uploading these pictures because of my birthday.

Eman : Happy birthday. I'll post you a comment.

Sarah : ❸ --.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. If you ---------- online for long, your eyes hurt.
   a. staying   b. stayed   c. will stay   d. stay
2. What time ---------- the next train stop in Luxor?
   a. is   b. are   c. did   d. does
3. How often do you ---------- by train?
   a. sleep   b. read   c. write   d. travel
4. Carpooling can ---------- carbon emissions.
   a. increase   b. reduce   c. cause   d. make
5. The ---------- floated away down the river.
   a. raft   b. draft   c. car   d. train

C: Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage and answer the following questions:

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a

lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. <u>**These**</u> are bad for nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. As a result, it is not used for expensive luxury clothes which are usually made from cotton.

A. Answer the following questions:

1. Why is bamboo an important crop for China?

----

2. Mention two reasons that make bamboo not a perfect plant.

----

3. What is the material used for expensive luxury clothes?

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

4. The underlined word "**these**" refer to.........

a. bamboo b. people c. chemicals d. clothes

5. Bamboo is not a .... material to make expensive clothes.

a. hard b. plastic c. bad d. seft

5 Read and correct the underlined words:

1. When I <u>fall</u> asleep, I was reading a story. (................)
2. The next plane <u>take</u> off at six o'clock. (................)
3. We play football <u>in</u> friday. (................)
4. If it <u>be</u> hot, I'll stay at home. (................)

D: Writing

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences on:

"Effects of AI"

Listening Material

Units 7 - 8

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

"Your brain is the control center of your body. It helps you think, feel, and move. It is made up of billions of nerve cells called neurons. These neurons send messages to different parts of your body. Your brain also helps you remember things and solve problems. It is protected by your skull."

Unit 9

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Friendship is a journey, not a destination. It's about the experiences we share, the lessons we learn, and the memories we make along the way. Through thick and thin, friends stand by each other, offering support, encouragement, and understanding.

Friendship can change us for the better. It can teach us empathy, compassion, and the importance of loyalty. By spending time with our friends, we can learn new things, explore new ideas, and grow as individuals.

Units 9 - 10

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

Today, I spent the afternoon with Mona. She is my older sister who loves sport. So today, she was teaching me how to play table tennis. I was really excited because it looks fun and I wanted to learn. First, Mona showed me how to hold the bat in my right hand. Then, she showed me how to throw the ball into the air with my left hand and hit it with my bat. At first, I couldn't hit the ball. If I hit the ball, it went into the net. I was really upset but Mona told me to keep trying. She was very kind and she didn't get angry. She kept showing me what to do.

Units 11-12

1- Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

More and more town and cities now have bike lanes to make it easier for people to ride their bikes. If you really need to travel by car, try carpooling. Find a friend or relative who wants to go to the same place as you and ask if you can drive there with them. Carpooling can reduce the number of cars on the roads by about 20%, which help lower carbon emissions.

Test 1

I was in grade 7 last year and I really enjoyed it. From my experiences I have some suggestions to help you learn. When you read a text, it is useful to underline new words or highlight them. I find it easy to remember the meaning of the words, but I sometimes find it difficult to remember how to spell them.

Test 2

How can you change the way you travel to help reduce carbon emissions? For people who have to drive, hybrid or electric cars are greener than traditional cars. Hybrid cars use both electricity and fuel. For shorter trips, hybrid cars often don't need to use fuel and can run on electricity a lone. Electric cars are even cleaner but only if they're charged with renewable energy.

Test 3

Last month, I joined a weekend volunteer program to clean up our local beach.

Every Friday and Saturday, we spent a few hours picking up trash. We started early each morning. The team leaders gave us gloves, trash bags. and special grabbers to pick up the trash. some volunteers were students like me.

Test 4

Many people think that when we learn our brains make new brain cells. We create new connections between brain cells we have. One brain cell can connect with up to 10,000 others. In the past, people believed the brain "turn off" when we went to sleep. But with new technology, we now know that some parts of the brain stay active during sleep. Sleep is very important for learning because it helps us remember better.

Test 5

Last term, our class spent an amazing day volunteering at a national park. On Saturday, we left really early. The sun was still rising! we drove to the park in our school bus and met the park organizers. our first job was to clean up the hiking path. There was so much to do, we were still picking up trash at lunch time! At the mid of the day, the park organizers told us that our work helps protect the wildlife and the environment.

Test 6

Last week, I volunteered at a day care center for children where my aunt Ola works. I love children so I was exited. I arrived early in the morning and met the people who work there. I helped set up toys and games to play with the children. Then, we sang some songs and drew colorful pictures. At the end of the day, I read the children a story which they loved.

Test 7

You can still use clean transportation. Find out if you can travel by train, bus, or bike instead of by car and do that if you can. More and more town and cities now have bike lanes to make it easier for people to ride their bikes. If you really need to travel by car, try carpooling. carpooling can reduce the number of cars on the roads by about 20%, which help lower carbon emissions find a friend who goes to the same place as you.

Test 8

Last summer, a group of students from my class volunteered at a community garden. We volunteered three days a week for a month. We looked after the vegetables and fruit trees, and we tidied the garden to keep the plants healthy. It was a hot summer so we watered the garden to keep the soil wet. When the vegetables were ready to pick, we put them in boxes and took them to old people in the community.

Test 9

We visited Hurghada last year and we stayed in a fantastic resort on the beach. The sea was clear and warm, and we went swimming every day.

We saw lots of beautiful fish! It was our first time there and every body loved it, although my little brother didn't like some of the food. We really want to go again! The only problem is that I don't think the airline is going there next year, so we will have to fly with a different one.

Unit 10

This week at school, we're talking about digital habits. I thought about how, when, and how often I use digital technology and I realized that my digital habits are quite good. For example, I never watch video or look at my phone for long in the evening. I usually read a book in the hour before I got to bed instead to give my eyes a rest from looking at a screen.

Unit 11

Last week, I volunteered at the museum with my school history club. I love history and helping people, so I was excited! on Saturday, we arrived at 8:00 a.m. before the museum opened, and helped make some museum displays. Then the museum opened! I saw a group of younger kids who needed some help. I helped them draw pictures of their favorite artifacts. I loved helping others discover history.

Unit 12

Today I spent the afternoon with Donia. Donia is my older sister who loves sports. So today She was teaching me how to play table tennis. I was really excited because it looks fun and I wanted to learn. First, Donia showed me how to hold the bat in my right hand. Then, she showed me how to throw the ball into the air with my left hand and hit it with my bat. At first, I couldn't hit the ball so I was upset but Donia told me to keep trying.

Unit 13

Green transportation is a way of traveling that is better for the environment. It reduces carbon emissions, saves energy, and helps protect the planet. Cycling and walking are the cleanest forms of transportation. They don't produce any carbon emissions and they're great for traveling short distances. Traveling to work or school by bike or on foot helps reduce air pollution and traffic.

Unit 14

I was in Grade 7 last year and I really enjoyed it. From my experiences I have some suggestions to help you learn. When you read a text, it is useful to underline new words or highlight them. I find it easy to remember the meaning of the words, but I sometimes find it difficult to remember how to spell them. I read online that you can remind yourself of tricky spelling words by linking them to other words.

Unit 15

In the past, people believed the brain "turned off" when we went to sleep. But with new technology, we now know that some parts of the brain stay active during sleep. Sleep is very important for learning because it helps us remember things better. In fact, people who get enough sleep can remember about 20% more than those who do not.

Unit 16

Today, I spent the afternoon with my grandmother, who is from Giza. She showed me how to make a necklace from different colored beads. The beads were very small and I kept dropping them, which was annoying! I wanted to give up but my grandmother encouraged me to keep going, saying, "It takes time to make something very beautiful." Her words made me think about how I always want quick results and don't spend enough time trying to learn something new. As I continued, I enjoyed myself.

Unit 17

Last week, I volunteered at the museum with my school history club. I love history and helping people, so I was excited! We arrived at 8:00 a.m. before the museum opened, and helped make some museum displays. I saw a group of younger kids who needed some help. I helped them draw pictures of their favorite artifacts.

Unit 18

Adam and Amira lived in a small apartment on the top floor of a tall building. Outside in the city were the sounds of cars, and the noise of the construction of new apartment buildings and facilities. One sunny Saturday, Amira and Adam wanted to explore their neighborhood. Amira suggested seeing what was happening at the park.

Unit 19

Last summer, a group of students from my class volunteered at a community garden. We volunteered three days a week for a month. We looked after the vegetables and fruit trees, and we tidied the garden to keep the plants healthy. It was a hot summer so we watered the garden to keep the soil wet.

Unit 20

Electric vehicles are better for the environment than cars that use dirty fuel, but we need more charging stations in our town so it's easier for people to use them. At the moment, we only have one charging station and it isn't in the town center. The town should have ten charging stations.

Unit 21

Green transportation is a way of traveling that is better for the environment. It reduces carbon emissions, saves energy, and helps protect the planet. Cycling and walking are the cleanest forms of transportation. They don't produce any carbon emissions and they're great for traveling short distances. Traveling to work or school by bike or on foot helps reduce air pollution and traffic.

Azhar Test 1

Today, I volunteer at a food stall in our local market. I helped my uncle at his fruit and vegetable stall. The market opened early, and we set up the stall while it was still dark.

Azhar Test 2

Today, I watched a paralympics sports event. These are sports for people with a disability. There was the final of the wheelchair tennis and an Egyptian girl won. She was so fast!

Azhar Test 3

I started thinking about how much the town has changed over the years. We've built more houses and roads, but there is not enough countryside anymore. There's too much pollution and too many buildings.

Azhar Test 4

When we are learning, it is important to think about the environment. We should protect our planet. We can walk, cycle or ride public transport.

Azhar Test 5

There are teenagers I know who spend so much time making and uploading videos where they just look at the camera and make funny faces.